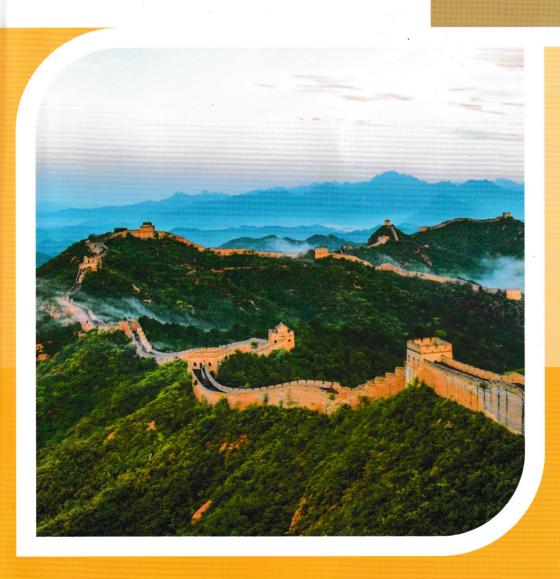
义务教育教科书

教师教学用书

人民教育出版社 课程教材研究所 编著

英语

七年级上册



人民教育的教社

义务教育教科书

教师教学用书

人民教育出版社 课程教材研究所 编著

英语

七年级 上册 主 编: 张献臣 陆锡钦

副主编: 辜翔宇 张琳琳本册主编: 罗之慧 熊金霞

编写人员: 李 欢 庄 力 李 锐 杨翠菊 周智忠 张秋霞

张 娟 郭 华 连哲彧 肖 菲 游晓霞 马小洁

王生军 张译峻 孙可欣

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

义务教育教科书教师教学用书.英语七年级上册/人民教育出版社课程教材研究所编著.--北京:人民教育出版社,2024.7.--ISBN 978-7-107-38542-1

I. G633

中国国家版本馆 CIP 数据核字第 202411CZ33 号

责任编辑: 肖 菲 责任设计: 胡白珂 责任校对: 褚 君

责任印制:王超邢红权

义务教育教科书教师教学用书 英语 七年级 上册

人民教育出版社 课程教材研究所 编著

出版发行 人人名利米州社

(北京市海淀区中关村南大街17号院1号楼 邮编:100081)

网 址 http://www.pep.com.cn

经 销 全国新华书店

印 刷 大厂益利印刷有限公司

版 次 2024年7月第1版

印 次 2024年8月第1次印刷

开 本 890 毫米×1240 毫米 1/16

印 张 22.75

字 数 745 千字

定 价 65.40元

版权所有·未经许可不得采用任何方式擅自复制或使用本产品任何部分·违者必究如发现印装质量问题,影响阅读,请与本社联系。电话: 400-810-5788

《义务教育教科书教师教学用书 英语》(七至九年级)(以下简称"教师用书")是由人民教育出版社课程教材研究所英语课程教材研究开发中心基于《义务教育教科书 英语》(七至九年级)的内容,为广大一线教师编写的教学参考用书。本套教师用书的编写队伍由专业的教材编者、富有教学经验的教研员和优秀的一线教师组成,目的是提高本套教师用书的实用性和适应性,帮助教师更好地理解和使用初中英语教材。

教师用书是教师实施课堂教学的重要资源,是课程资源的重要组成部分。在编写教师用书时, 我们主要考虑以下几个方面:

- 1. 全面介绍教材编写的<mark>理念、体系和特点</mark>,帮助教师认识和理解教材内容,把握教材<mark>逻辑</mark>结构,更好地组织教学。
 - 2. 深度解析每个单元及每个板块的教学内容,帮助教师深人理解教材编写的意图。
 - 3. 提供具体而有效的教学建议、教学步骤和教学指导,帮助教师设计自己的教学方案。
- 4. 提供英文的<mark>教学提示、教学活动设计</mark>、参考答案及表达示范,帮助教师提高使用英语进行教学的能力,拓宽教学设计思路。
 - 5. 提供课文译文和单元注释,帮助教师准确理解教材内容和语言。
- 6. 提供丰富的教师<mark>教学资源</mark>和专业发展资源,帮助教师在课堂上充分调动学生学习的兴趣,改进教学方法,提高教学效率。

我们希望本套教师用书能够为教师的日常教学提供切实的帮助,使得教师在培养和发展学生核心素养的同时,获得自身的专业发展,提升在教材解读、教学设计、教学实施和教学研究等方面的能力。

教材介绍	绍和教法建议	1
Starter	Unit 1 Hello!	13
Starter	Unit 2 Keep Tidy!	42
Starter	Unit 3 Welcome!	66
Unit 1	You and Me	 88
Unit 2	We're Family!	········· 125
Unit 3	My School	······· 164
Unit 4	My Favourite Subject	········ 197
Unit 5	Fun Clubs	······· 230
Unit 6	A Day in the Life	······· 264
Unit 7	Happy Birthday!	300
附录一:	视频教学建议	339
附录二:	单元参考译文	349

教材介绍和教法建议

《义务教育教科书 英语》(七至九年级)是依据《义务教育英语课程标准(2022年版)》(以 下简称"课程标准")的精神,为我国初中学生编写的一套英语教材。现针对本套教材编写的指导 思想、学生用书和教师用书的结构,以及教学方法建议作如下说明。

一、教材编写的指导思想

(一)坚持正确政治方向,德育为先,全面育人 政治方向--方向正确

本套教材坚持正确政治方向, 以习近平新时代中国特色社会主义思想为指导, 以习近平总书记 关于教育和教材工作的重要论述和指示精神为根本遵循,全面贯彻党的教育方针,落实立德树人根 本任务,以培养<mark>有理想、有本领、有担当</mark>的时代新人为目标,坚持<mark>德育</mark>为先,有机融人社会主义核 心<mark>价值观、中华优秀传统</mark>文化、<mark>革命</mark>文化和<mark>社会主义先进</mark>文化,结合英语学科特点充实德育要素, 提升教材全面育人功能,帮助学生树立<mark>国际视野</mark>,涵养<mark>家国情怀</mark>,坚定<mark>文化自</mark>信,形成正确的世界 观、人生观和价值观,为学生终身学习、适应未来社会发展奠定基础。

(二)紧扣时代脉搏,服务创新型人才培养 紧跟时代--不落后

本套教材紧密联系新时代经济社会发展实际,反映马克思主义中国化新成果、科学技术及应用 新进展、经济社会发展新成就,引导学生运用所学知识和方法分析和解决现实问题,加强社会责任 感。创新教材的内容体系和呈现方式,注重思维能力发展,突出语言实践能力培养,培养创新精神 和创新意识,服务国家创新型人才培养的需要。

(三)以课程标准为依据,促进学生核心素养发展 课标引领--专业性

本套教材以课程方案和课程标准为依据,落实中国学生发展核心素养体系的总要求,聚焦英语 课程要培养的学生核心素养,充分彰显英语学科独特育人价值,落实英语课程标准的理念、目标、 内容、学业质量标准以及关于教材编写的建议等各项要求、引导学生通过课程内容的学习,明确人 生发展方向,形成适应未来发展的正确价值观、必备品格和关键能力。

(四)遵循教育教学规律,关注学生未来发展 符合学科教育教学规律

本套教材遵循基础教育教学的规律,坚持学科逻辑与学生学习逻辑、生活逻辑相统一,确保教 材在体系结构上的逻辑连贯性和深度、难度的渐进性,结构合理,选材得当,表述准确,引导学生 学会学习。通过落实教育新理念,加强课程综合,注重跨学科学习,突出综合实践,整体提升教材 内容编排质量、促进育人方式变革、为学生未来的英语学习和终身学习打下良好的基础。

(五)坚持守正创新,在继承与发展中做好教材编写 继承与创新

本套教材充分考虑我国英语教学环境与教师实际情况,在广泛调研的基础上,教材编写继承了传统的、师生认可并行之有效的英语学科教学内容和教学方法,并根据时代需要,结合国家对人才建设的新要求,在板块设计、文本选择、活动设计、结构编排、呈现方式等方面大胆创新,做到继承、发展和创新有机统一。

二、学生用书结构

(一)整体编排

本套教材共六册,总计44个正式学习单元。七年级上册设有七个正式单元(另有三个过渡单元),七年级下册、八年级上册、八年级下册和九年级上册均为八个正式单元,九年级下册有五个单元(另附两个戏剧剧本)。七年级上、下册的每个正式单元共有八页,八年级上册至九年级下册的每个正式单元为十页。

教材单元设计以主题为主线,通过真实问题、现实情境和学习活动将教学目标、任务、情境、语言知识、语言技能、文本内容和评价反思进行"教一学一评"一体化设计。每个单元以问题和发展为导向,先通过开篇页的单元标题、大问题、学习内容导引以及围绕主题图的讨论帮助学生确立单元探究目标,明确学习任务,为单元学习作铺型;在单元中,以两个指向主题理解的引导性问题架构并统领 Section A和 Section B两大部分的学习过程,串联单元学习内容,通过循序渐进的"任务链"式活动设计构建单元主题内容逻辑和学科知识逻辑,避免知识点过于碎片化的教学倾向,从而引导学生积极思考,深入学习,获得理解,主动应用,指导实践,达成迁移,指向创新。

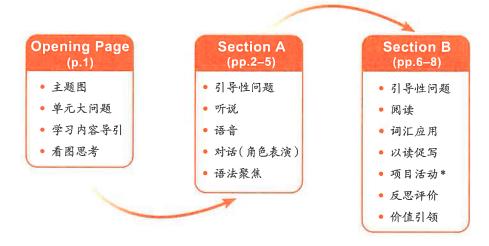
(二)结构体例

1. 单元结构

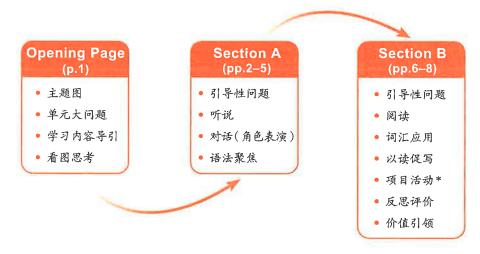
本套教材更加注重循序渐进、螺旋上升,分年级采用进阶式的单元结构。主单元整体分为 Opening Page. Section A 和 Section B 三部分。单元绝大部分为必学内容,Project(项目活动)为 选学内容;此外,每个正式学习单元所配的 Reading Plus(拓展阅读)和九年级下册的 Drama(戏剧)为选学内容。选学内容在教材中均用星号(*)标示。下面通过三个类型的单元结构流程图呈现教材单元的进阶关系。



(2)八年级上册单元结构(10页)



(3)八年级下册至九年级下册单元结构(10页)



2. 精心布局

- (1) 重视小初衔接过渡。七年级上册分为过渡单元(三个单元)和正式单元(七个单元),该 册书在主题内容选择、语言知识和语言技能训练要求、学习方法与策略培养等多方面都充分考虑了 如何呼应小学所学内容,并在原有基础上进行拓展,目的是帮助学生更好地适应从小学到初中的学 习阶段变化,以便教师做好小初衔接教学。
- (2) 系统编排语音学习内容。从七年级上册至八年级上册设有专门的语音学习板块,按照"音 素学习一由字母及字母组合到读音—由读音到拼写"三轮拼读规则训练与基本朗读技巧训练并行的 思路编排。
- (3) 关注语言知识积累。语法板块贯穿于全套教材;从八年级上册开始,每个单元增设单独的 词汇应用"板块。
- (4)循序渐进培养写作能力。七年级采用阅读语篇与模仿性写作任务相等合的设计,主要加强 基础性写作训练;随着学生语言能力的提高,从八年级上册开始,每个单元增设独立的 写"板块。
- (5) 坚持全方位评价。全套教材各单元均设有 Project (项目活动)、Reflecting (反思) 板块, 其中Project 综合考查学生的学习成效,反映学生解决真实和复杂问题的能力。

(三)教材特点

1. 以素养为目标, 促进学生的全面发展

2. 以主题为主线, 引导学生进行主题意义探究

3. 以问题为引导,帮助学生进行深度学习

每个正式单元首先通过一个"大问题"确立探究目标,引导学生在学习语言的同时探究主题意义,积极思考,提升思维品质;然后以两个指向主题理解的引导性问题架构并统领 Section A 和 Section B 两大部分的学习过程,串联单元学习内容,避免学科知识点过于碎片化的倾向。

4. 以活动为途径, 引导学生主动参与语言实践

教材中的学习活动和练习形式丰富多样,层次清晰,逻辑性严密; 既包括聚焦交际功能的 活动, 也有解决问题、 动物 动, 中的任务, 还有综合实践的项目活动等等。各项学习活动的设计以意义为导向, 体现协商和互动, 指向核心素养的发展。

5. 以 为中心, 促进学生对学习过程的参与

 发展学生的学习策略,以达成深度学习和理解,真正体现"在活动中, 在活动中, "。教材非常关 注中学阶段学生学习的特点和难点,通过合理布局教学内容,分散难点,突出重点,同时通过隐性 (活动及指示语融合)和显性(学习策略提示、学习目标导引、问题驱动、反思性评价)两种方式引 导教师指导学生开展学习,帮助学生养成良好的学习习惯,掌握有效的学习策略,为学习能力的发 展和终身学习打下良好的基础。

三、教师用书结构

教师用书是教师进行课堂教学的重要资源,是本套教材的重要组成部分。教师用书的主要功能 是帮助教师理解教材的设计理念、教学内容、编排体系、实施方法及呈现特点等,同时为教师提供 教学方法和建议,帮助教师更好地使用本套教材,促使他们更新教学观念、改进教学方法、促进专 业发展。此外,教师用书还为教师提供拓展性教学资源,以丰富教师的语言和文化知识,开阔教师 的视野, 提高教师教学技能和语言素养。

教师用书主要包括以下三个方面的内容。

- 1. 教材介绍和教法建议。本部分主要介绍教材编写的指导思想、教材特点、体系结构、教学方 法建议(包括如何使用教材,如何开展语音、词汇、语法、听力、口语、阅读和写作教学,以及如 何评价等)。
- 分,按照学生用书单元内容的顺序编写。各单元中文部分主要包括:(1)单元 本 部分以 呈现了本单元的主题内容框架,便于教师整体了解和把握单元的整体架构和内容逻 辑。(2)单元 和 和 和 和 单元 和 和 和 一 和 和 。 本 部 分 用 简 练 的 语 言 对 单 元 整 体 的 设 计 思 路 和 内 容 组 织 进 部分按照教材板块顺序逐一介绍相关内容。'🛑 计,并明确该板块的"学习目标"。"如此处"部分是针对每个教学活动或者任务链提供教学指 导和具体操作步骤,同时还补充了一些教学提示和拓展性的教学活动。(4)课文注释。本部分主要 对单元中一些语言现象进行解析,结合语言中的文化现象进行说明。英文部分主要提供单元概述、 教学提示、语言和文化注释、拓展活动建议、参考答案等。
 - 3. 附录。本部分包括补充视频的教学活动设计、课文参考译文等。 此外,教师用书还配备了丰富的数字化课程资源,请留意本书封底的使用说明。

四、教学方法建议

(一)关于语音教学

本套教材非常重视语音学习,在前三册教材单元中均设置了语音栏目,一方面归纳常见的拼读

规则,介绍本册重点朗读技巧;另一方面设计与各单元内容密切相关的语音练习。本套教材的拼读规则训练分三轮完成,第一轮学习44个音素,第二轮归纳字母与字母组合的读音,第三轮又回到音素,归纳发某个音的字母或字母组合。朗读技巧训练包括单词重读、语调、连读、句子重读、弱读、失去爆破、停顿、节奏等。语音学习的目的是让学生拥有两种能力:一是对于符合拼读规则的单词,能是一个方面。

1. 将音标教学和单词教学相结合

在学习英语单词时,教师应引导学生将音、形、义相结合,而不应死记单词的拼法。教师可以 先让学生听一个单词的读音,然后想一想这个单词是由哪几个字母组成的,每个字母的读音是什 么,进而思考单词读音和拼写的对应关系,逐渐掌握英语的拼读规则。在教学生词时,教师还可以 将单词写在黑板上,先让学生自己试着按音节去读,然后教师带读。在初中阶段,要努力使学生做 到"听音知形,见形知音",这是学生在英语学习中必备的基本功。

2. 多听录音进行模仿

语音学习的主要方法是模仿,因此应让学生多听录音,有条件的可以观看难度适宜的英语电影或视频节目,主要模仿发音和语调。在模仿时,可以采取对比的方式,即让学生先听录音并模仿,然后把自己的音录下来,与原始录音作对比,发现差距并改进。

3. 利用趣味性的活动进行语音训练

为了让语音训练变得生动有趣,提高语音训练的效果,可以采用一些比较有意义而且有意思的活动,比如试 式。诗歌朗诵有利于培养学生的节奏感和语感;绕口令能帮助学生锻炼口腔肌肉,提高发音的清晰度和流畅性;歌曲有利于培养学生的节奏感和辨音能力;课文朗读能培养学生的语调、节奏、停顿和情感;电影配音能激发学生模仿纯正语音、语调的兴趣和热情。

(二)关于词汇教学

本套教材词汇的编排主要依据《义务教育英语课程标准(2022年版)》的要求。在编写过程中,特别注意平衡各册、各单元的词汇量,控制生词总量,全面覆盖课程标准要求掌握的词汇,并通过不同形式增加这些词汇的复现率,将词汇学习融于语境,关注词汇在不同语境的含义和使用特征,重视 的学习。为了提高词汇教学效率,教师应注意以下四个方面。

1. 结合语境教学词汇

在词汇教学中,教师应尽可能利用实物、图片、简笔画、视频、动作等创设语境,让学生直观 地理解单词的意思,通过建立语境与语义之间的关系,促进理解、加深记忆。在教学中,应尽量避 免让学生直接读词汇表或孤立地理解和记忆词汇,应尽量减少学生对中文的依赖,注意培养学生用 英语分析理解的能力。

2. 利用语篇教学词汇

词汇教学既不能停留在对单词意义和用法的解释和辨析上,也不应让学生停留在对单个词的记忆上,

而应采用" 的教学模式,让学生将单词运用到句子和语篇中,做到词不离句,句不离篇。

3. 培养词汇学习策略

词汇学习策略有很多种,不同学生适用的策略也不同。总体来讲,有一些具有普遍意义的词 汇学习策略需要教师重点关注:(1)在语境中猜测词汇的意义;(2)根据构词法记忆单词的结构; (3)根据读音拼写单词;(4)根据语义系统记忆单词;(5)查词典;(6)关注词的搭配;(7)使 用对比、分类、联想等方法学习词汇。此外,应加强对"语块"的学习,包括固定词组、常用搭 配、约定俗成的表达法和句型框架等。

4. 分层次、分阶段处理生词

生词不宜集中呈现和教学,也不宜一次性深度挖掘,而应根据学生学习的需要分层次、分阶段 教学。以听力和阅读教学为例:在听前和读前可先处理那些会造成严重理解障碍,而且无法通过语 境来猜测的词汇。在处理时不宜深度拓展,让学生知道词汇在文中的意思,能听懂或读懂即可。在 听中和读中环节,可以让学生通过上下文来猜测一些生词。在听后和读后再对一些内涵丰富、搭配 能力强的词汇进行讲解,并让学生通过练习巩固和运用这些词汇。

(三)关于语法教学

教材每个单元的语法结构服务于单元内容和意义的表达,语法学习的目的是语言运用,教材的 语法内容是按照"感知、发现、总结、练习、运用"的顺序来编排的。各单元语法页包括语言结构 总结和语法运用练习两个部分。语言结构总结是在前面听说训练的基础上进行归纳,并以表格的形 式对比呈现。语法练习分层次设计,从控制性、半控制性练习过渡到开放性练习。在语法教学中, 教师需要注意以下四个方面。

1. 关注语法的表意功能

课程标准对语法知识的要求是从语言运用的角度出发,而不是从语言知识的特征出发。这就要 求教师在进行语法教学时不仅要重视语法的结构形式,更要关注语法结构所表达的意义和所使用的 语言环境特征。语法教学的内容应该包括三个方面,即语言形式、意义和使用。"形式"是指语言 的结构及其特征;"意义"包括语法形式的语法意义和内容意义;"使用"是指语言在一定语境中的 表意功能。因此,语法教学不能停留在学生对语法知识的理解和记忆层面,还要帮助学生创设具体 的生活语境,让他们尝试在语境中理解和表达意义,体会语法结构的使用特点和规律。

2. 在语境中教学语法

语法教学最好结合语境开展,尽量避免使用孤立的、缺乏语境的句子讲解语法。通过语境教英 语语法,就是要引导学生从语义和语用的角度理解语法内容,即将语法的形式、意义、使用三者结 合起来。如果学生仅仅关注语法形式,忽略语法在具体语境中的意义和语用功能,往往无法准确理 解和使用语言。以学习被动语态为例,学生若只关注主动语态和被动语态的形式转换规则,而不关 注两者在表意功能、适用文体类型等方面的区别,就很难把握什么情况下该使用被动语态。

3. 重视学生在语法学习过程中的参与

在传统的语法教学中,教师的主导性较强,学生往往被动地听讲和机械地记忆,思维没有得到

充分的激活和调动,因此语法学习的效率较低。想要提高语法教学的效率,教师就应当充分重视学生在语法学习过程中的参与。本套教材十分重视语法教学,语法内容不仅系统全面,各单元的语法编排逻辑严谨、浑然一体,具体体现在:首先,让学生通过一定的语境(包括听力输入、口语范例等)感知新语法项目,建立对"新朋友"的初步印象;其次,通过表格集中呈现含有新语法结构的句子,引导学生发现其结构特征,并尝试总结语言规律;然后,通过不同层次的练习和活动训练学生在语境中使用语法项目;最后,让学生在新的语境中灵活运用该语法项目或解决新的问题。教材通过"先感性,后理性"的方式,引导学生积极参与语法学习的过程。因此,教师需要根据教材语法编排的特点,合理把握单元的语法教学逻辑,根据不同板块的要求设定具体的语法教学目标,为学生提供充分的感知、发现、归纳、总结、练习、运用的空间。

4. 精讲多练

在学生对某一语法现象有一定的感性认识之后,教师需要指导学生归纳语法结构的意义和用法。教师需要注意课堂上讲解语法的时间不宜过长,内容也不宜过多。教师既要了解英语的语法体系和重点,又要熟悉学生学习语法的难点。教师应针对语法重点或难点精讲规则,让学生多练,培养他们的语法意识,让他们在用中学,在用中巩固。关于语法教学,教师需要树立正确的认识,即大多数语法项目并非一节课、一个单元的教学就能为学生所掌握,而是需要学生在语境中通过听、说、读、写的大量实践,才能达到熟练掌握的目的。

(四)关于听力教学

本套教材非常重视学生听说能力的培养,并在听说训练的基础上培养读写能力,帮助学生达到 多种语言技能的平衡发展。在听力教学中,教师除了要注意教材听力教学设计的特点,还应注意以 下三个方面。

1. 关注听力策略和技能的培养

听力教学应加强对听力策略和技能的培养。听力策略主要包括: 预测 (predicting)、推理 (inferencing)、选择注意力 (selective attention)、监控 (monitoring)、评价 (evaluating)等。除听力策略外,教师还应注意培养学生的听力微技能,包括:语音辨别 (sound discrimination)、大意理解 (listening for gist)、细节理解 (listening for details)、意义推测 (drawing inference)、词义猜测 (guessing new words)、记笔记 (note taking)等。

2. 加强听力的基础性训练

从日常听力教学来看,不少教师按照考试的模式来训练学生的听力技能,听后活动或练习基本上都是考试的题型,比如多项选择、判断正误等。日常教学应当把听力考试和听力训练区分开来。 考试是对听力能力的检测,是结果性的;日常听力教学是过程性的,应培养学生基本的听力技能, 其训练形式应该丰富多样,并且应当从基础抓起。

3. 坚持精听与泛听相结合

学生听力能力的培养不能仅仅依赖于教材中有限的听力材料,教师应当通过各种渠道帮助学生 拓展听力资源,比如让学生看英语电影、听英语故事、听英语广播、看英语电视节目等,充分利用 适合学生听力发展水平的优质有声资料来提高学生的听力能力。

(五)关于口语教学

教材口语活动的设计往往与听力相结合,采用先输入后输出的模式,实现听和说的有机结合。 本套教材在修订时特别设计了"示范对话"的完整教学过程,搭设支架,引导学生完成模仿输出、 分角色表演、创编对话等活动。在口语教学中,教师应注意以下三个方面。

1. 加强朗读训练,鼓励学生大胆交流

在日常教学中,教师可引导学生大声朗读对话和课文。朗读不仅有助于练习发音,还有助于形成 语感,并能培养学生开口说英语的勇气和自信。教师还应鼓励学生积极参与口语对话活动,告诉他们 表达时不要怕犯错误,要让学生意识到犯错误是英语学习的正常现象,并引导学生在犯错误、发现错 误、改正错误的过程中学习语言。教师对待学生的口语错误也不应急躁,不要有错必纠,尤其不要在 学生表达时突然打断纠错,更不要挖苦、批评学生,而应保护其积极性,让他们建立说英语的信心。

2. 坚持"准确性"和"流利性"并重的原则

在口语教学中, 教师往往重视学生语言结构和语音语调的准确性(accuracy)。为了提高准 确性,教师一方面应帮助学生扩大词汇量,尤其要让他们多储备一些"语块",以便在表达时 能够脱口而出,减少犯错误的概率;另一方面应鼓励他们多听录音,模仿录音,先听后说,听 准了再说。除训练学生语言的"准确性", 教师还应注意训练学生语言的"流利性"(fluency)。 教师应当鼓励学生积极主动地表达自己的思想,在用英语表达时,不要把精力过分集中在语言 结构上,而应关注要表达的内容;不要仅关注语法的准确性,更要关注语义表达的真实性、丰 富性和流畅性。此外,随着学生语言能力的提高,还应引导学生关注自己语言表达的复杂度 (complexity),教师可引导学生用一些复合句和从句来表达思想,不要一味地用简单句表达。当 然,在口语表达方面,教师应注意为学生设计比较真实的口语表达语境,以增强学生的代人感和 交际的目的性。

3. 培养学生的口语交际策略

一段有意义的完整对话一般会包含对话策略,教师可以利用听力和口语部分的对话,引导学生 关注对话双方如何开启对话、如何使对话进行下去、如何结束对话、如何转移话题、如何委婉表 达,等等。比如,学生需要学习如何接话的策略,这就意味着学生不仅要能够回答对方提出的问 题,还应当学习如何回应对方的话(比如:礼貌地回应对方的邀请、赞扬,回应对方的建议,对别 人的行为或话语表达自己的看法,等等)。此外,教师需要引导学生关注口语中比较地道的表达, 并在课堂上多给学生口语表达的机会、让学生多说多练、熟练掌握一些交际策略。

(六)关于阅读教学

本套教材阅读材料的编写坚持"贴近时代、贴近生活、贴近学生"的原则,渗透了丰富的文化 内容和情感教育内容,力求实现英语学习工具性和人文性的统一。关于阅读教学,除了要把握教材 中阅读活动设计的特点,教师还需关注以下三个方面,帮助学生通过阅读有效获取信息,形成篇章 结构意识,提高语言能力。

1. 重视培养学生的阅读技能

阅读教学要培养学生的阅读能力,而阅读能力是由各种阅读微技能构成。教师应把握好阅读技能培养和语言学习的平衡,不能把阅读篇章的功能仅仅定位为语言知识的学习。教师可以根据每篇文章的文体特征和语言特点,有针对性地设计阅读技能训练活动。

2. 重视阅读与写作的结合

阅读和写作在语言特征和语篇特征上有很强的共性,阅读有助于写作。实际上,学生写作能力的发展在很大程度上有赖于阅读能力的发展。因此,在日常教学中,教师应当把阅读和写作结合起来,在引导学生通过阅读获取信息和处理信息的同时,还要帮助学生分析语篇结构,通过语篇分析来学习语篇的结构特点以及信息和思想的表现手法。

3. 重视精读和泛读相结合

学生阅读能力的提高不能仅仅依赖于教材中有限的课文资源,教师还应指导学生选择更多的阅读材料以增加阅读量。丰富的同步阅读材料、分级读物、英语学习类的报纸杂志和网络资源能够拓宽学生的阅读视野,有效提高学生的阅读能力,发展学生的阅读素养。

(七)关于写作教学

写作是一种难度较高的语言输出活动。为了帮助学生学习英语写作,本套教材的写作编排采用了过程性写作模式,并与阅读教学相结合,形成以读促写、读写联动的效应。这不仅有助于学生用英语构思,从而形成合理的写作思路,顺利完成写作任务,并养成良好的写作习惯,还有利于教师为学生提供必要的写作"支架",通过分解写作过程来降低写作任务的难度,减少学生在写作过程中的焦虑感,培养学生用英语写作的自信心。教材重视学生在写作过程中的参与和写作技巧的训练,还渗透了写作策略的培养。教师在写作教学中应注意以下三个方面。

1. 加强基础性写作训练

在初中起始阶段,教师应加强基础性写作训练,为学生后续写作能力的发展打下坚实的基础。 在日常教学中,教师布置的写作任务不应局限于考试的形式,而应将写作教学整体布局,设计不 同层次的写作活动。在低年级阶段,教师应特别加强学生组词成句、组句成段的训练,引导学生从 "词"到"句",从"句"到"段"再到"篇",循序渐进地输出语言。在起始阶段,教师还应引导 学生建立良好的写作规范,养成良好的写作习惯,如让学生关注句子中的大小写、标点的正确使 用,关注书写的规范和整洁等。

2. 加强写作任务的过程性指导

教师应对学生写作的全过程进行跟踪,在各个阶段给予有针对性的指导,帮助学生建立自信,一步步顺利完成写作任务。在写作前,教师应当加强对写作语境的设置。这有助于激发学生的写作目的和动机,让学生知道对谁写、为什么写、写什么,然后才考虑如何去写。教师可让学生通过各种活动进行写作构思,如就某一写作主题进行"头脑风暴"、阅读范文并分析其文体结构、讨论写作主题、回答问题、做全班调查等,从而激活背景知识,收集写作信息,厘清写作思路。在写作中,学生拟定提纲、起草初稿、校对并修改初稿。在此步骤,教师应引导学生关注篇章结构和语篇

标记词汇,正确使用复杂句式,同时鼓励学生创新思维,丰富写作内涵。在写作后,教师可引导学 生对照写作要求反思自己的作品,并进行修改、定稿,也可以让同伴互评并给予评价和改进建议, 最后根据教师或同伴的意见进行修改,誊清定稿。

3. 全面评价学生的写作成果

教师应对学生的作品及时作出反馈。在低年级阶段, 教师可着重关注学生习作中语言表达的规 范性。随着学生语言水平的不断提高,教师在评价时不应只关注语言,还应关注学生思想表达是否 充分、丰富,是否有真情流露,段落结构安排是否合理。在批改学生作文时,教师应该带着欣赏的 眼光, 努力发现其中的"闪光点", 帮助学生建立自信。教师可让学生在全班朗读作品, 并与学生 共同点评,学习某一作品的优点,提醒关注并纠正某些共性的缺点。教师还可以将优秀作品展示出 来,并让学生投票选出最佳作品,以鼓励学生写作的积极性。

(八)关于教学评价

根据英语课程的评价理念,教学评价应对教学过程和教学结果进行监控和反馈,既反映学生学 的结果、也反映教师教的结果、通过评价帮助学生提高学习能力、帮助教师改进教学策略。教学评 价的主要目的不是将学生按分数排队,而是为了促进学生全面、健康而有个性的发展,激发学生的 学习兴趣和积极性。因此,教学评价应形成终结性评价和形成性评价相结合的多元评价方式,教师 不仅要关注学生的试卷成绩,更要关注学生平时参与教学活动的表现。教师在对学生进行评价时应 注意以下五个方面。

1. 全方位评价学生

教师不应仅通过试卷单一地评价学生的学习状况,而应结合学生的课堂表现、合作能力、学习 态度、学习习惯、作业情况等来综合评价学生,并通过评价跟踪学生的学习进展,不断给予学生 鼓励。

2. 体现评价主体的多元化

评价主体不应局限于教师一方,对学生的评价首先应体现学生的主体地位。在教学中,可以让 学生自我评价, 通过自评肯定学习中的进步, 反思学习中的问题。教师可以让学生建立学习档案袋 (portfolio),把自己的作品,例如试卷、作业、作文、学习笔记、日记、获奖材料等分类装入档案 袋,定期翻阅并反思自己的学习情况,通过这种形式进行自我评价。另外,让学生建立错题本也是 一个有效的办法。除学生自评外,也可以让学生进行互评。教师还可以让家长评价学生,把课内评 价和课外评价结合起来。

3. 避免重知识、轻能力的考查

对学生语言能力的评价应侧重于语言运用,考查学生听、说、读、写等能力,采用口试、笔试 相结合的形式,在重视基础知识考查的同时,侧重语言运用能力的考查。

4. 避免以考代练

考试是对学生学习结果进行评价的一种常用手段,为了判分的可操作性和简便性,多采用客观 选择的形式,而较少使用主观表达和互动交流的方式,但是客观选择的形式毕竟不太有利于学生实 际语言运用能力的培养和发展,甚至在一定程度上会限制学生语言运用能力的发展。因此、教师应 把语言的训练形式和考试形式区别开来,避免"以考代练"。日常语言练习不应仅仅局限于常规的 考试形式,而应丰富多样,坚持由易到难、由浅人深的学习原则,通过不同的任务和活动帮助学生 把语言知识转化为语言运用能力。

5. 坚持"教一学一评"一体化设计

课标标准指出,教师要准确把握教、学、评在育人过程中的不同功能,树立"教一学一评"整 体育人观念。首先,教师应根据教材内容和学生学习需求,基于单元整体教学的理念,设计单元教 学的整体目标。其次,在单元教学目标的引领下,根据教材不同板块的内容,切分为不同的课时教 学内容并设计课时教学目标, 让课堂教学依据目标来逐步推进, 让学生在实现不同的教学目标的过 程中不断得到发展。最后,依据教学目标来评价学生的学习效果,不仅包括学生已经理解了什么, 更要包括他们能够用所学的语言知识和语言技能表达什么、会做什么,以及是否形成了正确的价值 观;即时诊断学生在学习过程中的问题,根据需要提供必要帮助,从而实现以评促学,以评促教的 目的。

STARTER UNIT 1 HELLO!

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本教材的过渡单元旨在搭建小学与初中英语学习的桥梁,帮助学生顺利进入正式单元的学习。本 单元是过渡部分的第一单元,主要教学内容是复习小学已经学过的打招呼的用语,以及26个英文字母 的读音及其拼写。本单元围绕"打招呼"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与社会"主题范畴 中"良好的人际关系与人际交往""跨文化沟通与交流"两个子话题密切相关,通过两个引导性问题 搭建Section A和Section B的内容逻辑。Section A聚焦打招呼的方式,探究问题是"How do you greet people?",此部分展示了两个场景:一是在开学第一天的早晨,学生在新学校门口互相打招呼;二是 在课堂上英语教师 Ms Gao 引导学生互相问好、互相认识,这两个场景呈现了常见的问候语以及询问 姓名的表达法。Section B 以问题 "How do you start a conversation?" 为引领,在 Section A 的基础上进 一步拓展,巩固运用打招呼、询问名字,以及告别的功能表达,不仅要求学生灵活使用不同的问候语 开启对话,还让学生尝试与新同学和老朋友开展完整对话。本单元不仅要求学生掌握与打招呼、认识 新朋友相关的交际用语,还鼓励他们主动交朋友,学会礼貌地问候、询问名字、告别,增进与新同学 和老师的了解,积极融入初中生活,建立良好的人际关系。

本单元和后面两个过渡单元还承担着铺设本套教材主线人物的作用,这三个单元里出现的主线 人物包括Peter、Fu Xing、Teng Fei、Wang Yaming、Emma、Ella、Helen、Ms Gao等。本单元还通过 Section A中书写主线人物名字的活动、语音板块的认读字母和专有名词的字母缩写,以及听、唱歌谣 等活动,帮助学生复习26个英文字母。单元末尾的项目活动(*Project)中的查词典活动,是英文字母 顺序在实际生活中运用的实例。这个活动可以帮助学生巩固和掌握26个英文字母及其顺序,同时也帮 助他们学会查词典,从而能扩展学习资源,拓展语言运用意识,提升自主学习能力。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

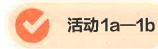
- ➤ 初步认识本套教材的主线人物、熟悉他们的外貌特征,并正确说出他们的名字;
- ▶ 听辨、认读并规范书写26个英文字母,理解一些常见字母缩略语的含义(如国家、 组织机构等),并能理解英文字母排序在日常生活中的实际运用;

- ▶ 学会切分26个字母的发音,并听辨出每个字母由哪些音素组成;提高学生对音素的 敏感性,并初步理解音素意识对听力、口语等技能的重要性;
- 分辨各种打招呼、询问名字、道别的交际用语所适用的场合与对象,并得体地与老师、同学以及朋友打招呼,询问别人的名字或介绍自己的名字,友好结束对话;
- ➢ 初步意识到在人际交往中主动打招呼、礼貌展开对话的重要性;并能主动认识新朋友,积极融入初中生活,通过主动交流提高自己的语言交际能力。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Section A

How do you greet people?



② 内容分析

本单元首页为单元导入页,具有语境创设和话题导入的功能。该页的图片为本单元 Section A 部分提供了一个主题情境:一天早晨一群中学生在校门口相遇并互相打招呼。该部分只呈现了几种最基本的打招呼用语,学生在小学已学过这几种问候方式,这样可以激活学生的语言储备。后面的正式单元将介绍更多更丰富的打招呼用语。图片中的学生是本套教材的几位主线人物,他们分别是中国学生 Fu Xing、Teng Fei和 Wang Yaming,以及在同一所学校上学的英国留学生 Peter和他的姐姐 Helen,以及美国留学生、双胞胎姐妹 Emma 和 Ella。除了 Helen 年龄稍长,其他学生都是刚进初一的新生。随着学习的推进和深入,学生们还将认识其他人物,会了解这些学生的更多故事,和他们一起成长。教材这样设计有两个目的:一是帮助学生认识本套教材的主线人物,二是通过不同人名的认读与拼写来学习 26 个英文字母并感受其在生活中的运用。

活动1a中的图片呈现了三组人物的对话,学生通过观察气泡图中的对话信息和图片中人物的姿态和动作,可以推断几位主线人物的姓名,将名字与人物头像进行匹配。这个活动不仅关注学生文字阅读(Reading)能力的培养,也训练学生从图片中获取非文字信息(Viewing)的能力。活动1a除了呈现主线人物的形象和姓名,还呈现了打招呼的关键句型,如"Hello!/Hi!""Good morning!"等,主要为后续的听力活动作好语言上的铺垫。活动1b是一个语言模仿输出活动,要求学生使用活动1a中的打招呼用语与同伴对话,巩固所学语言,并增进与同学之间的了解。

学习目标

- 📂 能够正确读、写这几个主线人物的名字: Teng Fei、Fu Xing、Yaming、Emma、 Ella, Peter, Helen,
- 能够通过观察图片识别本书主线人物的形象特征。
- 📂 能够熟练使用"Hello""Hi""Good morning"等表达问候或回应他人的问候。

教学建议

1. 破冰活动

作为新生第一节英语课,教师可通过简单易懂的自我介绍来实现破冰,还可以通过图文并茂的自 我展示拉近与学生的距离,以便创设一个自然、和谐的英语学习环境。

2. 看图理解

- (1) 引入话题。教师可展示学校的照片,通过问题引导学生说出 school、school gate、classroom、 student等单词, 自然引入单元主题情境。接着, 教师通过提问引导学生关注 1a 图片展现的场景, 即早 晨学生在学校门口相遇并互致问候的情境。如:
 - What can you see in the picture?
 - Where are the students?
 - 6 Look at this student. What is he saying?
- (2)完成 la 匹配任务。教师引导学生仔细观察 la 图片中的三组人物,并带读三组对话。教师可 要求学生圈出对话中的七个名字,根据图中细节和对话内容分辨出男名和女名。学生独立完成匹配任 务后,全班核对答案。教师可提醒学生注意人物名字的拼写、字母大小写和空格是否正确。教师还可 以引导学生观察Ella和Emma的外貌,猜测两人之间的关系。
- (3)熟悉人物名字发音。教师带读七个人物的名字,让学生熟悉名字的发音。随后,教师可以逐 一展示人物头像,让学生用抢答的方式说出人物的名字。

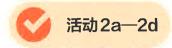
3. 口语表达

- (1)聚焦打招呼用语。教师引导学生先读1b指示语,并适当解释greet的意思,再让他们在图片 中找出三组人物打招呼的用语(Hi!/Hello!/Good morning!)。教师用课程呈现 1b的打招呼用语,然 后让学生读本部分引导性问题 "How do you greet people?",说明 Section A 的主要内容就是学会跟人 打招呼。
- (2) 朗读练习。教师邀请一名学生和自己一起示范朗读 la 中的对话,注意提醒学生体会打招呼时 的表情和语气。学生两人或三人一组练习朗读 1a 中的对话。
 - (3)分角色表演。教师邀请几组学生表演1a图片中的情景对话,并适当给予点评。
- (4)与同学打招呼。教师让全体学生起立,允许他们在教室里自由走动,运用所学问候语与班上 的同学打招呼。如:

- A: Hello, Li Xin!
- B: Hello, Tian Hua! Good morning, Maomao!
- C: Good morning, Li Xin! Good morning, Wang Peng!

在此活动过程中, 教师可鼓励学生大胆开口练习, 多认识几位新同学。

教学提示: 教师可让学生在课前把写有名字的卡片摆在桌上,鼓励学生在课堂上用英文名字互致问候。教师还可提前准备一些英文名字,帮助有意愿的学生选取英文名字,创设英语学习环境。



《 内容分析

文本分析:该部分听力文本包括三段小对话,分别呈现了课堂上教师与全体学生之间、教师与新学生之间、新朋友之间互致问候的情境。这三个对话具有情节连贯性。首先,英语教师Ms Gao 向全班问好,这展示了我国中小学课堂典型的问候场面,能够引起学生的共鸣(教师可以借此提醒学生,英语中称呼老师不说 Teacher Gao,而说 Ms Gao)。由于学生刚刚进人初中课堂,彼此不熟悉,因此第二个对话是教师与外国学生 Peter 互致问候,以此作为示范,鼓励学生互相打招呼(Please say hi to each other),从而达到破冰效果。第三个对话是 Emma 和 Fu Xing 在 Ms Gao 的鼓励和号召下互相打招呼的情景,对话中还包括对名字的问答,最后以"Nice to meet you."结束。

活动设计:这里的听说板块共设有四个活动。活动 2a 首先让学生听字母录音并跟读,同时呈现了 26个英文字母大小写的手写体形式,目的是让学生复习 26个英文字母的读音和书写,并让他们意识 到准确读音和规范书写的重要性。活动 2b 让学生听录音并圈出所听字母,检测学生对 26个字母的听辨能力。在第一个过渡单元复习 26个字母,包括字母读音、字母顺序、字母辨认、字母书写等方面,主要为了巩固小学所学内容,以便衔接初中阶段的学习。2c 是听力理解活动,让学生通过听获取细节信息并完成对话。教材提供选项,显性呈现听力对话中的句子,有利于初中学生过渡阶段的学习,能降低焦虑,使他们体验到学习的成就感。这种设计也有利于学生在听前作准备,了解输入的目标语言,另一方面便于学生听后模仿。2d 是听后的口语输出活动。教材提供了语言支架以及半开放和完全开放的句式,为学生的自主表达提供了发挥空间。

学习目标

- 能够听辨26个英文字母的发音,并准确读出26个字母的发音。
- 能够规范书写26个英文字母(包括大小写)。
- ▶ 能够主动打招呼结识朋友,包括能主动介绍自己的名字,并询问对方姓名等。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)观察26个英文字母大、小写手写体。教师课前打印手写体,或用卡片在四线三格中书写 Ella、Emma、Fu Xing、Helen、Peter、Teng Fei、Yaming等七个名字。每个名字的首字母用不同颜色 突出显示。课上教师按照字母表的顺序将卡片贴在黑板上,让学生体会字母对构成单词的意义。
- (2)试读字母表。教师引导学生观察活动2a中的字母表,让学生按顺序试读字母表中的26个字 母,并在必要时纠正发音。

2. 听音模仿

(1)跟读模仿。教师播放2a录音,在每个字母后按暂停键,让学生跟读模仿。教师可适时纠正学 生发音,也可以结合语音板块(Pronunciation)活动2中的字母发音总结表来巩固26个字母的发音。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生常发错有些字母的音。例如:学生容易将字母C的发音/si:/读成/seɪ/,将字母F的发 音/ef/读成/eɪf/,将字母H的发音/eɪtʃ/读成/etʃ/,将字母M的发音/em/读成/eɪm/,将字母N的发 音/en/读成/ən/,将字母V读成汉字"乌"。因此,在课堂教学过程中,若发现学生存在类似问题, 教师应及时示范或纠正。

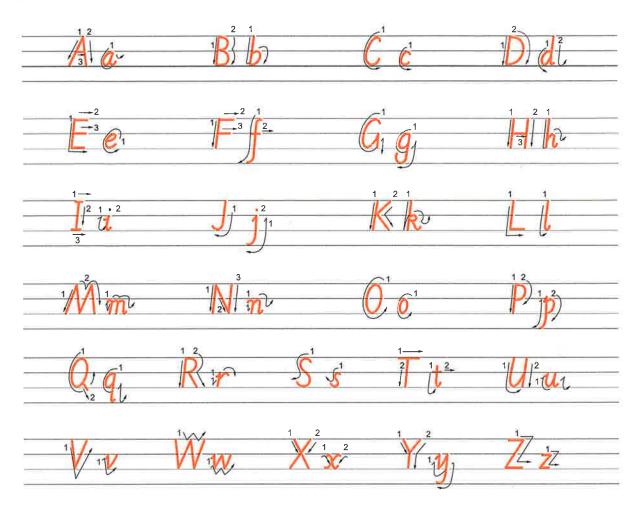
- (2)听音圈字母。学生阅读活动2b指示语,教师解释circle的意思,让学生明确活动要求。教师 播放 2b 录音, 学生在 2a 字母表中圈出所听到的字母。录音结束后, 全班核对答案。
- (3) 听辨音游戏。游戏1: 为字母找邻居。教师说出一个字母,让学生快速说出其前后邻居,如 教师问"What letters are the neighbours of 'C'?",学生问答"B and D."。游戏2:字母接龙。一位学 生说出某个字母,后面的学生按字母表的顺序依次说出后续三个字母。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生虽然在小学学过 26 个字母,但掌握程度不同。在初中学习的起始阶段,学生需要读 准每一个字母的发音。学生还需要熟记每个字母在字母表中的顺序。字母表顺序在日常生活中比较 常用,如词典中单词的排序、图书馆图书目录、图书内容目录、书后索引、电话簿等一般都按照字 母顺序排列。考虑到字母的重要性,教师可以设计不同游戏来帮助学生掌握字母的发音和字母排列 顺序, 让学生在轻松愉快的气氛中学习英语。

3. 书写模仿

(1) 感知英文字母手写体大、小写的区别。教师让学生观察所有字母在四线三格中的占格情况, 然后总结规律,如字母Cc、Ss、Ww、Vv、Zz的大小写基本相同,但占格不同。教师还要让学生注意 印刷体和手写体的区别。印刷体和手写体有很多种,不同字体有不同的特点,有些字母在不同字体中 占格会有不同,写法也有所区别。学生有必要接触不同的印刷体,这对他们日后的阅读很有帮助。另 外,英文字母手写体有多种形式,教材呈现的手写体只是其中一种,学生模仿起来较容易,教学中教 师不必太在意学生书写与教材示范的差别,只要工整规范即可;对于笔顺也不必过于纠结,更不必作 为考查内容。

(2) 仿写活动。教师展示教材中26个字母手写体笔顺图,逐一示范每个字母的写法,学生在练 习本上模仿图示练习书写。学生两人一组相互检查,点评同伴书写得是否规范,教师巡查,适时给予 帮助。



(3)字母书写游戏。教师可让学生两人一组开展"你画我猜"的游戏,一名学生在同伴后背上用 手指书写字母,同伴猜是什么字母。

教学提示: 26个英文字母的规范书写是学好英语的第一步。教师可以通过各种教学活动和游戏激发 学生的学习兴趣,帮助学生感知、模仿,并反复练习,养成良好的书写习惯。教师还可以利用多媒 体工具或视频资源对学生进行引导, 寓教于乐。

4. 听力理解

(1) 听前预测。教师让学生观察2c中的图片,并谈论图片的场景。教师可通过提问进行引导,如 "What can you see?" "Who are they?" "Where are they?"。接着,教师让学生阅读2c活动指示语和三段 不完整的对话以及四个选项,引导他们根据图文预测即将听到的对话内容, 教师可继续问"What are they doing?".

<mark>教学提示:</mark> 预测是听力理解中的一项重要技能。有效的预测能提高学生的专注力,让学生更快掌握 听力材料的大意,更准确地获取信息。培养学生通过图文预测的能力是提高学生听力水平的一项重 要策略。

- (2) 听录音并补全对话。教师第一遍播放 2c录音,每播放一段对话后暂停,学生选择正确的句 子,然后将句子完整地抄写到三段对话中相应的位置。
- (3) 师生核对活动2c答案。教师通过提问引导学生理解对话内容,并核查答案,如 "Look at Conversation 1. How does Ms Gao greet the class?"。得到学生回答后,教师追问"What does the class say to Ms Gao?"。这样做可让学生关注不同问候语对应的答语,为后面的活动作铺垫。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>教师可适当补充一些中外文化差异的内容,比如,教师可告诉学生,对于高老师的问 候"Good morning, class!"的回答,学生可以用"Good morning, Ms Gao!", 但是不能用"Good morning, teacher!"或者 "Good morning, Teacher Gao!"。因为英语国家的人们不使用teacher 来称呼对方。如果对方是男性,可以用"Mr+姓",比如Mr Brown。如果对方是女性,还要根据对 方的婚姻状况来定,已婚的可用"Mrs+夫姓"(但也可能保留原姓氏),比如Mrs Brown;未婚的可 用 "Miss+姓", 比如 Miss Brown; 婚姻状况不详的可用 "Ms+姓", 比如 Ms Brown。

- (4)对话内容理解。教师可启发学生梳理三个对话中的人物言行,并将人物的互动过程写在黑板 上, 如 "Ms Gao greets the class. → Ms Gao greets Peter. → Ms Gao asks Peter to greet the class. → Peter greets the class. → Ms Gao asks the students to greet each other. "。然后, 教师可根据这个过程图提问, 启发学生深入思考其中的细节并进行问答。例如:
 - When does Conversation 1 happen?
 - Is Peter new in this class?
 - What does Ms Gao ask Peter to do?
 - How does Peter greet his classmates? What does he say?
 - Does Emma know Fu Xing? How do you know?

<mark>教学提示:</mark>课堂上教师可以多用英语提问题,这样做有两个好处:一是可以帮助学生关注主要内 容; 二是教师的问句也是语言输入的一种形式, 丰富的语言输入有助于语言学习。提问时教师需注 意问题难度,对于基础较好的学生,可以多使用一些特殊疑问句;对于基础一般的学生,可以用一 般疑问句或者选择疑问句,让学生能够简单回答,从而提高他们学习英语的自信心和兴趣。

- (5)听录音并跟读对话。教师用课件展示三段对话的文稿,第二遍播放录音,并在每句话后暂 停, 学生跟读模仿。
- (6) 朗读练习。学生两人一组练习朗读三段对话。教师提醒学生注意模仿录音中人物的语气和语 调,体会人物说话时的情绪。学生练习时,教师巡视全班,获取反馈,并轻声纠正学生的发音。在学

生充分练习一段时间后, 教师邀请几组学生在全班展示。

(7) 总结问候语和答语。学生阅读三段对话的文稿,并分小组讨论,总结对话中不同问候语或问 句的应答语。具体如下:

Greeting / Question	Response
Good morning,!	Good morning,!
Hello,!	Hello,!
Hi,!	Hi,
Nice to meet you,	Nice to meet you too!
What's your name?	My name is / I'm

教学提示: 英语口语中日常打招呼和回应的表达还有很多。此处为七年级的起始单元, 不建议拓 展,以免给学生造成负担。如果学生主动进行补充,教师应给予肯定。

5. 口语表达

- (1) 学生阅读活动2d指示语,明确口语表达任务要求。学生两人一组根据2d活动中的语言支架 互致问候、相互介绍,然后根据两人交流情况将2d 对话补充完整,同时注意书写规范。
- (2)教师邀请几组学生表演对话,并提醒学生模仿2c录音中的语音、语调。学生表演完毕后,教 师适当给予评价。



🔘 内容分析

作为小初衔接的第一个过渡单元,本单元语音板块重点关注26个英文字母的发音。活动1体现的 是英文字母在真实生活场景中的运用,让学生通过边听边观察图片来快速定位电脑键盘上26个英文字 母的位置。这个活动主要帮助学生复习字母的顺序和发音,练习认读26个字母。活动2将26个字母 中含有相同元音音素的字母归类,目的是训练学生对字母音的切分,并让学生通过听和朗读尝试总结 字母的发音规律。这个活动还复现了字母的大小写形式,以便学生尽快熟悉26个字母在本套教材中 最常见的印刷体形式。活动3呈现了由单词字母组成的专有名称缩略词,让学生进行图文匹配活动。 这些缩略词不仅包括学生熟悉的中国文化元素(如PRC、PLA),还包括具有国际影响力的组织(如 WHO、UN)。这个活动一方面让学生体会和感知英文字母在生活中的实际运用,另一方面开阔学生 视野,丰富学生的文化知识积累,培养文化意识。活动4让学生学唱或重温经典的字母歌,帮助学生 巩固并掌握这26个字母的发音,在欢快的旋律中完成学习,营造出愉悦的课堂学习氛围。

🚺 语音知识

语音是语言学习的基础。对于外语学习者来说,系统地学习语音至关重要。系统的语音训练不仅 能帮助学生准确发音,让他们能说一口漂亮的英语,提升口头表达的自信心,还能帮助学生更高效地 记忆单词,且能提升他们的听力理解能力。

本套英语教材的语音活动主要包括音素、拼读规则和语流中的朗读技巧这三方面内容。音素是最小 的语音单位,英语有44个音素。英语是拼音文字,有26个字母。英语字母和音素虽不一一对应,但大 多数英语单词中字母和音的对应有规律可循。学习它们之间的对应规律是语音学习的重要内容之一。要 弄清楚它们之间的对应规律, 首先要了解字母本音。

1. 字母本音(Letter Name)

字母本音指单独读某个字母的时候的发音,如单独读字母A时发音为/eI/,/eI/就是字母A的本 音。字母发音是指字母在单词中的发音。字母在单词中的发音虽与字母本音不同,但与字母本音有 关。字母本音是字母发音的基础,也是本单元语音学习的重点,26个字母的字母本音见下表。

字母	字母本音	字母	字母本音	字母	字母本音	字母	字母本音
Aa	/eɪ/	Hh	/eɪtʃ/	Oo	/೨೮/	Uu	/ju:/
Bb	/bi:/	Ii	/aɪ/	Pp	/pi:/	Vv	/vi:/
Ce	/si:/	Jj	/dʒeɪ/	Qq	/kju:/	Ww	/'dʌbljuː/
Dd	/di:/	Kk	/keɪ/	Rr	/a:/	Xx	/eks/
Ee	/i:/	Ll	/el/	Ss	/es/	Yy	/waɪ/
Ff	/ef/	Mm	/em/	Tt	/ti:/	- 18 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1	/zed/
Gg	/dʒi:/	Nn	/en/			Zz	/zi:/

学生需要掌握切分每一个字母本音的能力,即确定每个字母本音由几个音素组成,由哪些音素 组成。例如,字母B的本音由两个音素组成,分别是/b/和/i:/。切分字母本音是切分单词发音的基础, 也是建立字母与发音的对应关系的基础。

2. 字母发音(Letter Sound)

26个英语字母中,有5个元音字母,21个辅音字母。元音字母的发音规律稍复杂些,是以后学习 的重点。辅音字母在单词中的发音规律比较简单, 主要有以下几种:

- 掐头法。字母F、L、M、N、S、X在单词中的发音是去掉字母本音的首音/e/,分别发/f/、/l/、 /m/、/n/、/s/、/ks/,如单词five、life、moon、night、class、box等。
- 去尾法。字母B、D、G、J、K、P、T、V、Z在单词中的发音一般是去掉其字母本音的尾音 /i:/或/eɪ/, 分别发/b/、/d/、/g/、/dʒ/、/k/、/p/、/t/、/v/、/z/, 如单词bee、dog、game、jacket、keep、 pink、tea、five、zero等。
 - ●字母C的发音有点特殊,一般发/k/,如cat,有时发/s/,如nice。
- ♥ 两个半元音字母W和Y在元音前具有辅音的特点,分别发/w/和/i/,如work、yes; 它们和元 音字母一起可以发元音,如draw、day。另外,Y还相当于I的发音,如sky、fly等。

• 剩下的辅音字母只有H、Q、R,它们的发音也有规律,其中H发/h/,如hat。Q一般不单独发音,而是和U组合发/kw/,如queen。R发/r/,如right。

教师需要了解字母发音规律的全貌,并在平时教学中渗透字母发音规律的讲授。

学习目标

- 能够切分26个英文字母的发音,并按照字母所包含的元音音素归纳字母的读音。
- 能够认读常见的缩略词,并理解其含义。
- ▶ 能够流利地唱诵字母歌,并充分利用多媒体工具,探索利用多感官学习英语的途径。

@ 教学建议

1. 听音找字母

- (1) 学生浏览活动1,了解键盘功能分区。教师可引导学生先找出键盘上的字母操作区、数字区,根据学生接受能力,还可关注键盘上的功能操作区,并示范如tab、caps lock、ctrl、enter等按钮的作用。
 - (2) 教师播放录音, 学生在活动1的键盘图片中找出所听字母。
- (3)教师可用课件展示键盘图,请几个学生轮流上讲台演示找字母的过程,教师可随机补充提问。如:
 - T: Where is "A"? Big letter "A".(教师可说明字母大小写的英文常见说法有 big letter和 capital letter。)
 - S: A is here.
- (4)学生两人一组练习找字母。一个学生随机询问一个字母,另一个学生在键盘图片中找出字母位置并回答,然后两人交换角色。如:
 - S1: Where is "C"?
 - S2: "C" is here. Where is "G"?
 - S1: "G" is here ...

2. 听音找规律

- (1) 听辨字母中包含的音。教师先向学生简单介绍音素,并举例说明字母的发音构成,如:字母A由一个双元音/ei/组成,字母B由两个音/b/和/i:/组成。接着教师引导学生说出其他字母包含的音,并将其写在黑板上。如:
 - T: How many sounds does the letter "C" have?
 - S1: It has two sounds.
 - T: What sounds does it have?
 - S1: It has /s/ and /i:/.
 - 值得注意的是,字母W包含的音素最多,有六个,分别是/d/、/n/、/b/、/l/、/j/、/u:/。
 - (2) 示范元音发音。教师在黑板上写下活动2中列出的元音音标,带领学生通过齐读、分组读、
- 24 | 义务教育教科书教师教学用书 英语 七年级 上册 |

单人读等方式反复认读这些元音。教师需强调/eɪ/、/aɪ/、/əʊ/三个双元音的特点,即双元音由两个元 音组成,发音时由一个元音向另一个元音滑动。

- (3)字母发音归类。教师课前准备好26个英文字母卡片(含两张字母Z卡片),通过闪卡游戏 (flash card)帮助学生熟练掌握字母发音。在活动中,教师随机抽出一张字母卡片,让学生读出字母 的发音,同时通过对比黑板上的元音音标,辨别出该字母包含的元音音素。一个字母辨认结束后,教 师将字母卡片粘在相应的元音音标后。
- (4)教师播放活动2的录音,学生跟读模仿。教师可请一位学生走到黑板前面,根据录音调整每 个音标后的字母顺序。
- (5)体会对比字母Z的两种发音。教师让学生关注黑板上的两张字母Z卡片,带领学生再次朗读 字母Z的两种发音,其中/zi:/是美式英语发音,/zed/是英式英语发音。
- (6)字母朗读操练。学生两人一组,按照活动2中元音音标的分组,轮流大声朗读每组中的字母。 教师巡查全班, 在必要时进行单独纠音。
- (7) 听辨音游戏。教师把学生分为两个大组,先向一组学生提问"Which letters have the sound /e/?" 或 "Which letters have the same sound as the letter 'J'?", 该组学生回答, 回答对一个字母加一分。 然后教师向另一组提问,这组学生回答。如此轮流反复,最后看哪组得分更多。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>培养学生的音素意识非常重要,因为它是学生学习语音、记忆单词的基础。教师在教学 字母或单词时, 可以经常提醒学生字母或单词包含哪些音, 首音是什么, 尾音是什么, 第一个元音 是什么等,还可以通过各种游戏来巩固学生的音素意识。

3. 听录音, 找缩略词

- (1) 学生观察活动3的图片,并试着在小组内讨论这些图片的意义。教师播放录音,学生将听到 的缩略词与图片配对。
- (2)教师在全班检查学生完成的情况,并鼓励学生说出这些字母构成的缩略词的中文含义。教师 可适当补充相关的文化背景知识,以增长学生见识。
 - (3)学生朗读这些缩略词,教师提醒学生要读准每一个字母的发音。
 - 4. 听录音, 学唱字母歌

教师播放活动4的录音,带领学生学唱字母歌,并提醒学生注意26个字母的准确发音。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>教师可使用全身反应教学法,使用课前准备的合适的视频,带领学生边唱边模仿视频中 的动作,强化学生对于字母音与形的记忆,寓教于乐。



🥝 内容分析

文本分析: Section B主要聚焦如何开启谈话并进行进一步的交谈。该板块的阅读文本是两段对 话。第一个对话发生在两个新认识的同学 Teng Fei和 Emma 之间,出于礼貌,他们使用的都是较为正 式的表达。Teng Fei 询问对方姓名时,使用了比"What's your name?" 更为礼貌和正式的表达"May I have your name?"。询问对方的姓名是陌生人之间开启交谈的一种常见方式。而 Emma 在回答自己 的姓名后,让对方仅称呼自己的名字,这是人际交往中表示亲近的一种方法。在交谈结束时,Teng Fei 使用的也是较为正式的表达 "Nice to meet you."。这些都符合两人初次交流的语境。而在第二 个对话中, Helen和 Yaming 已经认识,他们碰面时使用的是"Hello."和"Hi."这样简单的问候语, 并通过"How are you?""And you?"这样的问句,询问对方近况,展开交流。最后,因为时间关 系,双方用 "Goodbye. / Bye." 匆忙结束了对话。这些都是老朋友之间互相问候或告别时经常使用 的表达。教材创设这两种情境,是为了引导学生关注不同情境下应使用的交际用语。由此可以看出, Section B在 Section A的基础上,呈现了更加丰富的表达。除了复现开启谈话的招呼用语,如"Good morning." "Hello. / Hi." "How are you?" 等, 还呈现了谈话结束时使用的表达, 如 "Nice to meet you." "Goodbye. / Bye." 等。这种语言结构不断反复、螺旋上升的设计,有利于学生在已学知识的基 础上稳步上升,巩固和提高语言表达能力。

活动设计: Section B 板块融合了读、写、说等多项技能训练。阅读部分有完整的读前、读中、读 后的活动设计。活动1a是读前环节,此处列举了六个日常交际用语,让学生分辨哪些是开启谈话的 表达,同时为后面的阅读作语言上的铺垫。lb和lc作为阅读理解活动,旨在引导学生聚焦关键句型, 同时注重语用。活动1b让学生找出两个对话中开启谈话的不同方式。活动1c要求学生根据所读对话 找出与核心交际用语对应的答语,既考查学生对细节信息的获取,又为后面的输出活动作铺垫。活动 1d是写与说结合的读后环节,这里呈现了两个对话支架,要求学生用自己的信息补全对话。该活动呈 现了 Section B 的关键语言表达,如 "May I have your name?" "How do you spell your name?" "How are you?"等。学生先补全对话再与同伴演练对话。这种先写后说的设计有效地降低了活动的难度,能增 强学生进行口头表达的自信心。另外,这一读后活动不仅能让学生运用所学语言与他人互致问候,提 高他们的表达性技能,而且还能让学生掌握在不同交际情境下打招呼时应使用的得体语言,增强他们 的语用意识和交际能力。

学习目标

- 能够准确得体地使用打招呼、询问名字、告别等句式,与他人互致问候并简单交流。
- 能够掌握英语姓名构成的方式,并能与中文姓名构成作适当比较。
- 能够根据不同的交流对象,如陌生人和熟人等,得体地表达问候并应答。
- 能够规范书写简单的日常用话,补全与陌生人和熟人打招呼的对话。

教学建议

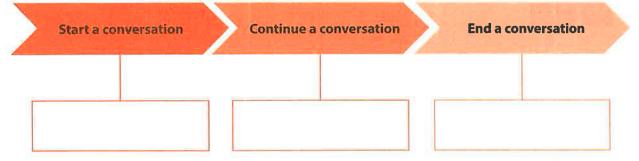
1. 读前活动

- (1) 学生读 Section B的引导性问题, 教师解释 "start a conversation" 的意思, 以使学生明确学习 目标。
- (2)教师课前可准备有关见面打招呼并简单交谈的英文视频或动画片片段,在课堂上播放,提醒 学生关注并说出视频中人物见面打招呼时使用的表达。
- (3)学生阅读1a的活动指示语,教师可使用中文帮助学生理解指示语中的生词。学生独立完成活 动1a, 教师在全班核查答案。

教学提示: 在必要的时候,尤其在外语学习的起始阶段,教师可适当使用中文帮助学生理解活动要 求和难点词汇,以便他们更好地参与课堂活动,积极投入语言学习。

2. 对话理解

- (1) 学生阅读 1b 活动指示语,明确活动要求。教师通过提问引导学生观察第一幅图片,尤其关注 人物身份和对话发生的场景,还可让学生预测将读到的内容。例如:
 - T: Look at the picture in Conversation 1. Who are they?
 - Ss: Teng Fei and Emma.
 - T: Where are they?
 - Ss: ...
 - T: Does Teng Fei know Emma?
 - Ss: ...
- (2) 教师让学生两人一组阅读对话1,并在问候语、问句和告别语等下面画线。学生阅读结束, 教师可用课件或学案展示下图, 让学生将画线的句子填入相应的方框中。



- (3) 教师再次询问学生"Do they know each other?",要求学生回答并说出理由。教师可继续追问"What's the girl's name? How do you spell Emma Miller?",引导学生通过上下文和常识理解生词 spell 的含义。教师还可以引导学生关注 Emma Miller和 Teng Fei 的姓名,了解英文姓名和中文姓名的区别,即在英语中,Emma 为名,Miller为姓;在中文名字中,姓在前名在后。
- (4) 学生两人一组分角色演练对话1。教师可邀请几组学生在全班展示。待学生熟悉后随机挑选两人,让他们仿照对话使用真实姓名展开交谈。

<mark>教学提示:</mark> 教师在教学过程中应通过各种活动形式了解学生的学习情况以及对所学内容的理解程 度,根据学生的反馈进行形成性评价,并决定是否需要调整下一个教学活动。

- (5) 学生观察第二幅图片, 教师可通过提问引导学生了解对话发生的场景。如:
- Look at this picture. Who are they? (Helen and Yaming.)
- Are they in a classroom too? (No. / No, they aren't.)
- What sound does the loudspeaker on the wall make? (It's a bell sound.)
- What does it mean when the loudspeaker makes the ringing sound? (It's time for class.)
- (6)学生两人一组阅读对话2,并在问候语、问句和告别语等下面画线。学生阅读完毕,教师可再次展示步骤三的流程图,让学生将画线的句子填入相应的方框中。教师可询问学生"Does Helen know Yaming?",并让学生说出理由。教师再让学生关注对话中的"Oh, that's the bell.",要求他们结合上下文及图片细节猜测这句话的含义。教师还可以补充这个词的释义。
 - (7) 学生两人一组分角色演练对话2。教师可邀请几组学生在全班展示。
 - (8) 教师用课件展示以下表格:

Conversation	Start a conversation	Continue a conversation	End a conversation	
1	Good morning.	May I have your name?	Nice to meet you.	
		How do you spell your name?		
2	Hello,	How are you'?	Goodbye! / Bye!	

教师让学生对比这两段对话的异同:两段对话的相同点是都以问候语开始对话。初次见面时,还可以进行自我介绍,并礼貌询问对方姓名;与已经认识的朋友见面时可互相问近况。需要注意的是,"How are you?"既可以是延续对话的表达,也可用来开启对话,一般用于熟人或朋友之间。当结束交

谈时,与初次见面的朋友可用"Nice to meet you!"道别,而熟识的朋友之间可以说"Goodbye!"或 "Bye!"来道别。

<mark>教学提示:</mark> 学生在学习语言的过程中不仅要学习如何表达,还应理解在不同情景下和不同对象交谈 时应使用恰当的表达方式,同时学会通过语调表达语气及情绪,即注重语用得体性。例如,同样是 问名字,"May I have your name?"就比"What's your name?"正式、礼貌。教师可提醒学生感受 两种问句的语气是否有区别。

3. 读后活动

- (1) 巩固对话内容。教师按照学生能力混合分组,课前打印或在卡片上写下对话中出现的句子, 打乱顺序后把卡片分发给小组。学生小组合作,将卡片按顺序摆放好后分角色大声朗读对话。在学生 练习过程中,教师可在教室中走动,尽可能关注到每组的练习情况,并在必要时轻声纠音。
- (2)完成活动1c。教师引导学生阅读1c的活动指示语,明确活动要求。然后学生阅读方框中的句 子并完成活动1c。教师可提醒学生先将自己能够完成的部分书写在相应的横线上,再借助1b中的对 话思考未完成的句子的答语。在书写的过程中,教师应提醒学生注意英语大小写字母的书写规范。

4. 写作活动

(1) 写前准备。教师用课件展示以下表格:

Conversation		Start a conversation Continue a conversation		End a conversation	
1	A: Good morning.		May I have your name? How do you spell your name?	Nice to meet you.	
	В:				
2	A:	Hello,	How are you?	Goodbye!	
	B:				

学生两人一组根据表格提示,用自己的真实信息进行对话练习。学生练习时,教师巡查全班,适 当给予学生鼓励和表扬,或及时纠正学生发音。学生充分练习后,教师邀请几组学生在全班展示。

教学提示: 教师在设计姓名卡片时, 可选取常见的英文姓名或中文姓名, 尽量让姓名的字母更多样 些,以帮助学生复习26个字母的读音。

(2)书写练习。教师让学生基于对话练习内容补全1d对话。教师可以提示学生,1d中提供的语 言支架分别从1b的两个对话中抽取,前面的对话即是示范。教师巡查全班,观察学生的书写情况,给 予必要的帮助和指导。在巡查过程中,教师可选择书写规范且正确的作业,征得学生同意后在全班展 示,同时教师可邀请其他学生从书写规范、语言运用等角度对该同学的练习进行点评。学生完成对话 写作任务后,教师可让他们两人一组演练对话。

教学提示: 教师需要提醒学生在书写中文姓名时应注意在姓和名之间空一格, 姓和名的第一个字 母要大写。若名有两个或两个以上汉字,则连在一起写,如Wang Yaming、Song Meimei、Wu Binbin等。



🔘 内容分析

本单元的项目活动旨在让学生学会根据字母顺序查英文词典。英文词典是英语学习者的重要工具 和信息来源,查词典是每位学生在英语学习中应该发展的学习技能。掌握这一技能有助于发展学生自 主学习的能力。

活动1的图片呈现了英文词典的两张页面,即以字母A开始的单词的最后一页和以字母B开始的 单词的第一页。这是一本给低龄学习者使用的词典,页面附有插图作为对词义的补充展示,每个词条 提供释义或例句,个别词还列有屈折变化形式,但没有标注音标和词性,设计符合低龄学生的认知水 平。此处展示词典页面主要是让学生理解英语词典中单词排列的规律,即主要依据是26个字母的顺 序,这是英文字母运用于实际生活的另一个例子。

活动2训练学生按字母顺序排列词汇的能力,同时也复现单元重要词汇。此处列举的词汇涉及更 加复杂的排序情况,如首字母或前面若干字母相同的单词,应该怎么排序。活动3通过比赛活动,激 发学生查词典的兴趣,同时训练学生提高查找单词的速度。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够熟悉英文词典中的单词排列的基本规律,并理解词典是学习英语的重要工具。
- 能够按照英文的字母顺序在词典中查找单词,并找到单词的解释、例句等信息。
- 能够根据英文字母顺序排列词汇。

教学建议

- 1. 明确项目活动的目标要求。教师呈现项目活动的小标题 "Learn how to use a dictionary",向全 班学生介绍学习使用英文词典的重要性以及本单元项目活动的目的和要求。
 - 2. 分享查词典经历。学生两人一组互相交流使用词典的经历,教师可通过问题来进行引导。如:
 - What dictionaries do you know?
 - Do you know how to use a dictionary?

小组交流完毕,教师邀请几名学生在全班分享各自使用词典的经历。教师可以通过多媒体或实物 展示介绍英语词典的种类,如英英词典、英汉词典等。教师也可以展示自己常用的词典,并与学生分 享自己使用词典学习英语的经历和感受。根据学生情况,教师可选取英英词典、英汉词典或英文图画 词典,介绍词典的基本组成部分,如词条、音标、词性、定义、例句和图例等,帮助学生初步了解英 语词典的特点。

- 3. 观察并讨论词典页面。教师让学生观察 2a 中的图片, 要求他们完成以下任务:
- 圈出图片中蓝色的单词;
- 讨论单词以什么顺序排列;
- 思考以字母a开头的九个单词以什么顺序排列:
- 🍳 讨论图片中哪些是单词的解释,哪些是例句,哪些是图例。

教师可以组织学生进行小组讨论,邀请几名学生分享小组讨论的结果,然后师生一起总结词典中 单词排列的规律:单词按照26个字母的顺序排列,其具体位置需先看单词的第一个字母,第一个字母 在26个字母表中位置在前的,这个单词就排在前面。同一个首字母下的不同单词顺序,需看单词的第 二个字母。第二个字母在字母表中位置靠前的,这个单词就排在前面。照此类推,其他各字母排法与 以上规则相同。

教师还可以让学生思考活动1展示的词典主要面向哪一类学习者,即初级 (beginner)、中级 (intermediate) 还是高级学习者 (advanced)。教师可提醒学生关注这本词典的释义和例句中用词的难 易程度,与常见英文词典的区别(没有给音标和词性,图片活泼可爱),从这些特征可以判断这本词 典适合低幼初学者。另外,教师可就本班学生应该使用哪类英文词典给予建议,如词典需要适合自己 英语水平,释义和例句需要清晰准确等等。

- 4. 单词排序小游戏。在游戏开始前,教师可以让学生复习26个字母的顺序,如让学生轮流大声 地说出A、B、C、D、E、F ·····。接下来,教师引导学生阅读活动2b的指示语,解释单词在词典中 出现的顺序,即按照字母顺序(alphabetical order)排列,以帮助学生理解活动2b指示语。教师可在 黑板上写下几个单词,如student、conversation、dictionary、circle、convenient等,让学生按照单词在 词典中出现的顺序将单词排序,最先完成的学生将自己的答案写在黑板上,看谁能最先正确地完成 排序。
- 5. 查词典比赛。教师组织学生以小组为单位完成活动2c,比一比哪一组能最快在词典中找到全部 的单词。教师也可举行全班查词典比赛,看谁查词典又快又准。

🥵 拓展活动:编写英文单词词条

为了让学生更深刻地理解词典的功能和作用,教师可以在活动2c的基础上进行拓展,如让学生分 组, 仿照活动2a中的词典页面内容, 或按照组内共同选择的一本英文词典, 为活动2c 所列的单词编 写字典词条,每个词条都应包含词形、词性、词义、例句等,提醒学生可以配图补充释义,加强释义 的趣味性和可读性。最后各组在班上展示组内学生根据词典编写词条的成果。

三、课文注释

1. a cap和an eraser

英语中不定冠词a和an用在名词的前面,泛指"一个"。名词前的冠词用a还是an取决于这个名 词开头的发音,如果以辅音(音素)开头,用a。例如:a key(一把钥匙)、a ruler(一把尺子)等。如 果名词发音以元音开头, 需用 an。例如: an apple(一个苹果)、an egg(一个鸡蛋)、an hour(一个小 时)等。

2. How do you spell your name? 你的名字怎么拼写?

这是疑问副词how引导的一个特殊疑问句。how在本句中意为"怎样;如何",用来询问方式或 手段, how还可以用来询问状况,表示"怎么样"。例如:

How is the work? 工作怎么样?

How is your father? 你父亲怎么样?

how还可以与其他形容词或副词搭配使用,构成新的特殊疑问词组,如how old(询问年龄)、 how long(询问长度)、how much(询问价格)等。

3. How are you? 你好吗?

这是英语口语中经常使用的打招呼用语,回应打招呼的常见表达有:

I'm fine, thank you. And you? 我很好。谢谢你。你呢?

Good. / Fine. 很好。

Not bad. / So-so. 还不错(还可以)。

4. Let's go to class. 让我们去上课吧。

(1) 旬中Let's 是Let us 的缩写。动词let常引导祈使句,构成"let+sb+动词原形"的结构,表示 "让某人做某事"。例如:

Let it go. 随它去吧。

Let me see. 让我看看。

(2) class 在句中意为"课;上课", go to class 表示"去上课"。例如:

She works hard in class. 她在课堂上用功学习。

See me after class. 下课后来见我。

Starter Unit 1 Hello!

This unit is about greetings. As the first starter unit, it aims to give students an introduction to English with simple greetings and conversations. Getting to know the alphabet also provides a good foundation to build on over the course of the book. Students will conclude by learning and practising how to use dictionaries.

Section A

ow many English names do you know?
sk students to list all the English first / given names that they know. Write the names the board. You can try and match names to each letter of the alphabet too. Ask adents whether the names are male or female. Which English name would they oose for themselves and why?
reetings Hello" or "Hi" are the most common words that people use to greet each other. Tople can also refer to the time of day by saying "Good morning / afternoon / ening."
Teng Fei Fu Xing Yaming Ella and Emma Peter Helen
r H

1b	
Teaching Tip	Greetings Warm Up Put students into two groups. Have students stand and walk around the classroom. Make each group walk in different directions to help students mingle and mix. While students mix, play some happy calming music. When you stop the music, students must greet the nearest student to them with any of the target language (Hi / Hello / Good morning). Start the music again and repeat. This is a good way to start this unit, but also a good way for students to mingle at the start of any lesson, with any target language.
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

Back Writing

Play a fun letter guessing game with students. In pairs, ask one student to turn their back to their partner. The other student then uses their index finger to write a letter on their partner's back. The student guesses what letter it is and whether it is upper or lower case. Then they swap roles. Students can also write short words too. This game will help students to think about stroke order and letter forms.

Upper and Lower Case Letters

Review the letters A–Z in upper and lower case on the board:

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh ...

Hand out a small piece of paper to each student. Ask half of the students to write one of the letters in lower case on the paper, and the other half to write one of the letters in upper case on their piece of paper. Then ask students to stand up and mingle to find other students with matching letters. Then get students to form groups according to their letters (i.e. all "Aa" together, etc.) How many are there in each group?

Fill the Grid

Teaching Tip

Prepare students for this activity by going through the alphabet in order letter by letter, slowly writing lower and upper case forms of each on the board. Draw students' attention to the stroke order while students copy to practise the form.

Make two sets of 26 flashcards, one for each letter of the alphabet and shuffle each pile. Put students into two teams who stand in a line on each side of the classroom facing the board. Put one pile of shuffled flashcards in front of each line and give the first student in each line a marker pen. Divide the board into two sides, with a grid of 26 squares (or lines) on each side, one for each team.

Once the game starts, students must look at the top flashcard on their pile, then write the letter on their grid in its correct alphabetical position, writing both upper and lower case forms correctly. Then they pass the pen to the next person who looks for the next letter to write. The team who finishes their grid first wins.

Flashcards

Flashcards are a great teaching resource for the classroom that have multiple uses. Once made, they can be used again and again for different activities. Letters, words, or pictures can be printed on paper, and then placed in plastic wallets or laminated.

Alphabet

Culture Note

An alphabet is a set of letters or symbols in a fixed order used for writing a language. Many different ones exist and have existed. The English alphabet is a standardized set of 26 letters that represent particular sounds in the language. The shapes of the letters originate from Latin script, otherwise known as Roman script, developed by the ancient Romans.

2b	
	Letter Name vs Letter Sound
	Each letter in the English alphabet has a "name", which is what we sing in the
-	famous Alphabet Song (A, B, C, D, E, F, G,) However, the letters also represent
	sounds (phonemes) in English, and there are actually more sounds than the letters in
	the English alphabet. This is why, despite there being only 26 letters in the English
	alphabet, there are 44 phonemes. At this stage students do not need to know this in
Teaching Tip	great detail, but, to avoid any confusion moving forward, it is a good idea to introduce
reaching rip	at this point that the alphabet letter "names" are different from the sounds that letters
	make when used in words.
	Write the alphabet as in 2a on the board. Point at the letters and say out loud with the
	students: "A" /eɪ/, "B" /biː/, "C" /siː/, etc.
	Then repeat but elicit from students the phonetic sound of each letter and a word to
	match: "A" /æ/ "apple" / 'æpl/, etc.
Answers	Bh. Cc. Gg. Hh. Ji. Ll. Nn. Og. Rr. Vy. Xx. Zz

2	4	(9
		ì	

Starting Conversations

Conversations can happen in many different places. We might have several short conversations throughout the day, for example, at a station, in the park, or supermarket.

Starting a conversation can sometimes feel uncomfortable, but there are some things that people, particularly if they don't know each other, use to "break the ice". Perhaps the most famous in English is talking about the weather. For example:

Teaching Tip

- Lovely day today, isn't it?
- Oh, what a horrible day out there!
- Oh yes, I got soaking wet this morning.
- It's raining cats and dogs!

The topic is not really important, but just a simple way to talk about something both people obviously have in common, i.e. the weather everyone is currently experiencing. At a station or waiting for a bus, we might do the same by asking about a train, or asking for the time, just to get the conversation started.

	大 私
	Asking for Someone's Name Politely
	When we want to know someone's name, it is polite and friendly to give our name
	first: "Hi, I'm Tom. What's your name?" Otherwise, to ask politely, we might say:
 	"May I know your name, please?"
	Mr and Mrs (and Miss / Ms)
	Personal titles are sometimes used in English in formal situations as a mark or
	respect. They are usually used before a person's surname. They can be written with or
	without a full stop.
Culture Note	• "Mr" (/ˈmɪstə(r)/) can be used for adult males whether they are married or not.
	• "Mrs" (/'mɪsɪz/) is generally used for females who are married.
	• "Miss" (/mis/) is used for younger females or females who aren't married. It can
	also be used by itself, for example in a restaurant: "Excuse me, Miss. Can we have
	a menu please?"
	In the US, "ma'am" (/mæm/) is also used for this purpose.
	• "Ms" (/mɪz/ or /məz/) is used for women when we don't know if they are married.
	Other titles:
	• "Dr" or "Doctor" is used for qualified doctors.
Answers	1. D 2. A 3. B, C

2d	
Teaching Tip	 My English Name Ask students to choose an English name for themselves. It can be one they have seen before, or one that sounds like their Chinese name, e.g. Mary. IIave them complete the activity with their new chosen names. Some common names in UK / US: Boys: George, Oliver, Jack, Harry, Charlie, Thomas, James, William, Noah, Liam Girls: Emily, Isla, Ava, Amelia, Olivia, Sophie, Jessica, Lily, Mia, Emma
Culture Note	Shortened Names in English Many people use shortened forms of their given names which may be different from the names they were given at birth. For example: Thomas: Tom, Tommy Robert: Rob, Robbie, Bob, Bobby However, we can't assume someone's full name, as some people are given the shortened name at birth.
Sample Conversation	A: Good morning. My name is Sally. B: Hi, Sally. A: So what's your name? B: I'm Ben. Nice to meet you. A: Nice to meet you too, Ben.



1	
Optional Approach	Human Alphabet Have each student write their English name on a piece of paper. Then ask students to stand and put themselves in alphabetical order. Help students by explaining they should do it as they would look for a word in a dictionary, i.e. go with the first letter, and if two or more people have the same first letter, they should go with the second, third, and so on.
Culture Note	The QWERTY Keyboard The computer keyboard shown in Activity 1 is known as the "QWERTY" (Q, W, E, R, T, and Y) keyboard after the first six letter keys running right to left on the top line of letters. There are different stories about why this layout was created, but it is generally agreed to be related to how older typing machines worked, and what was the easiest way for users to type. Although the keys always show upper case letters, they are changed by the "shift" or "caps lock" keys.

2	
Optional Approach	Phonetic Alphabet With books closed, write the phonemes spaced out on the board and circle them: /eɪ/ /iː/ /e/ /aɪ/ /əʊ/ /juː/ /ɑː/ Point at each one and drill out loud with the students. Then go through the alphabet (using the song from Activity 4, or any wall charts in the classroom, or a picture of the QWERTY keyboard from Activity 1) and ask students which sound they can hear. Write the letter on the board next to the circled phoneme to create a kind of mind map. Students can copy it into their books before doing the activity on page 3. Aa Hh /eɪ/
Teaching tip	Pronunciation of Z The letter name "Z" is pronounced differently in American English (/zi:/) and British English (/zed/). Students should take note of this when singing the song in Activity 4.

3	
	What does this stand for?
Optional	Tell students that sometimes words are shortened in English, so they are easier and
Approach	quicker to use, in speech and writing. Write some on the board and see if students can
	guess what they stand for: Aug, m, Dr, LOL, BRB, WTO, etc.

	Common Abbreviations and Acronyms		
	Countries: US or USA (United States of America), UK (United Kingdom)		
iā.	Days or months: Mon (Monday), Dec (December)		
	Personal Titles: Mr (Mister), Dr (Doctor)		
Culture Note	Units: cm (centimetres), m (metres), kg (kilograms)		
	• Time: a.m. (morning), p.m. (afternoon / evening)		
	Online: LOL (laugh out loud), BRB (be right back), ASAP (as soon as possible),		
	IDK (I don't know)		
	 Organizations: CCTV (China Central TV), WTO (World Trade Organization) 		
Answers	1. B 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. D		

Section B

1a	
Teaching Tip	 Greeting Different People We use different words and phrases to greet different people depending on whether we know them or not, and whether the situation is formal or informal. For example: Conversation 1: between strangers More formal, greetings such as "Good morning", don't ask "How are you?" Conversation 2: between acquaintances More casual, greetings such as "Hello / Hi", ask "How are you?"
Answers	✓ Hello!✓ Good morning,✓ How are you?

1b	
Culture Note	Greeting Friends In English we usually greet friends and people we know well by asking "How are you?" There are many other informal ways to ask this question: What's up? What's happening? How's it going? How's everything? How're things? How're you doing? How've you been? How's life? There are also many ways to answer these questions: Good / Great / Fine, thanks, and you? There are also many informal ways to say goodbye: Bye. See you (later). Catch you later. Take care. Have a good day. Later. So long. Take it easy. Have a great day / week (etc.)
Suggested Answers	Good morning. Hello, How are you?

1c	
Teaching Tip	Matching Partners Write the different questions and answers on pieces of paper and hand them out to students. (Do as many sets of questions and answers as necessary for the class size.) Ask students to mingle and ask the questions or give the answers they have on their paper. Students must try and find a student whose answer matches their question.
Answers	 I'm fine, thank you. My name is Emma Miller. Nice to meet you too. E-M-M-A, Emma. M-I-L-L-E-R, Miller.

1d	
	Changing Roles
	Encourage students to add variety to role-playing by changing elements of the
	conversation. For example, they can repeat the role-play and change their names,
Teaching Tip	perhaps to English names they have already chosen. They can also change some of
	the phrases, such as changing "Good morning" to "Good afternoon" or saying "How's
	it going?" Small changes will help students build confidence. Encourage students to
	practise and make eye contact and try to avoid reading from the page.
	Conversation 1
	A: Good morning! May I have your name?
	B: Good morning! My name is Peter Brown.
	A: How do you spell your name?
	B: <u>P-E-T-E-R</u> <u>B-R-O-W-N</u> . You can call me <u>Peter</u> .
Suggested	A: Nice to meet you, <u>Peter</u> . My name is <u>Yaming</u> .
Suggested Answers	B: Nice to meet you too.
Allsweis	Conversation 2
	A: Hello, <u>Teng Fei</u> ! How are you?
	B: Hi, Emma. I'm fine. And you?
	A: <u>I'm great</u> . Oh, it's time for class.
587	B: Goodbye!
	A: See you later.

*Project

2a	
Teaching Tip	Using a Dictionary We use a dictionary to look up word meanings, spellings, pronunciation, and examples of how the word is used. Learning to use a dictionary will help improve our vocabulary and understanding of English. A dictionary can be used at any time but is particularly useful when reading.
Answer	They are in alphabetical order.

Alphabet Chain

Starting with one student and moving around each student in the class in order, ask students to say one English word starting with "a", then moving through the alphabet in alphabetical order. For example:

S1: Apple! S2: Ball! S3: Chair! S4: Delicious! ...

You can also make it more focused or challenging by asking, for example, for only food words, or another specific category. For example:

S1: Apple! S2: Banana! S3: Carrot! S4: Dumpling! ...

Alphabet Scramble

Write all the letters of the alphabet on flashcards (or pieces of paper), with one letter per card, and then mix them up. Split the class into two teams. Each team chooses 5–6 members to stand at the front of the class. Instruct students not to look at the cards or change cards, and then give one card to each student on each team. When you say "Go!" the students must stand in alphabetical order (from left to right) quicker than the other team. The winning team gets a point on the board, and then another 5–6 students from each team are chosen. Mix the cards up again and repeat the activity. Repeat an even number of times so every student gets at least 1–2 chances. The team with the most points wins. To make the activity more challenging, teachers can give cards with words, all starting with the same letter.

Teaching Tip

I Spy

Students take turns to choose a thing in the classroom and say the first letter of the thing. The other students raise their hands to guess what the thing is. For example:

S1: I spy with my little eye, something beginning with "B".

S2: Is it a book?

S1: No, it isn't.

S3: Is it a bag?

S1: No, it isn't.

S4: Is it the board?

S1: Yes, it is!

The student that guesses correctly is the next to choose a thing for the others to guess.

Answers

15	you	6	English	12	speak
1	after	3	bike	4	cold
9	hello	10	morning	11	please
5	come	14	what	8	goodbye
13	spell	2	afternoon	7	evening

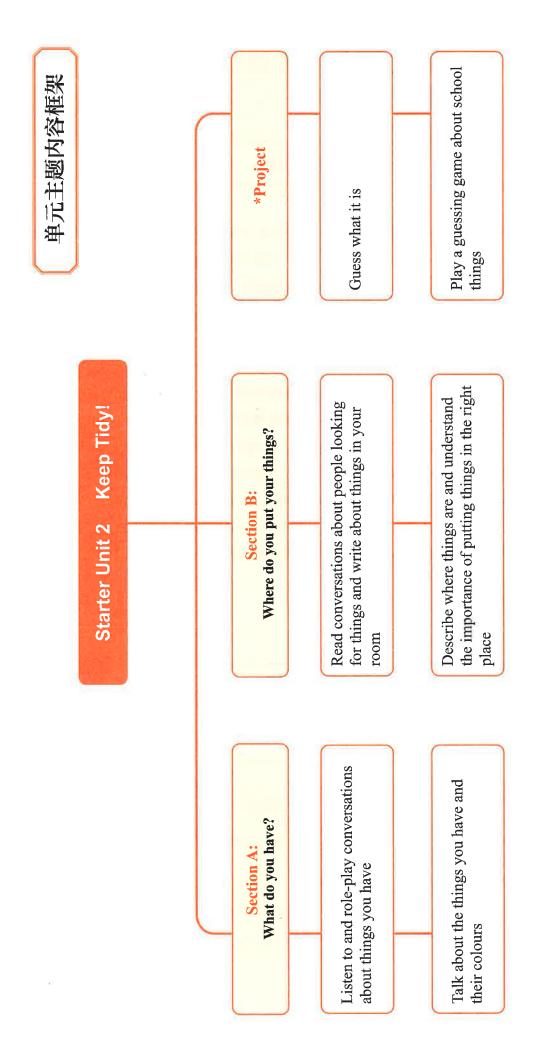
Optional Activity: What's the Word?

Purpose	To develop students' habit of using dictionaries to help learning and build up their vocabulary.
Materials Required	Dictionaries.

Procedure

- 1. Hand out dictionaries to students and keep one for your reference. Look up a word in the dictionary, with consideration for students' level and what vocabulary they are studying and have studied. Tell students a "clue": "I'm looking for a word that starts with ..."
- 2. Students look up the letter in their dictionaries. Then give the students more "clues", that is, the second letter of the word, and then read out the definition.
- 3. Students race to find the target word. This helps them practise dictionary skills.
- 4. This can be an individual or team game, but also doesn't have to be competitive. A series of "clues" can be written down on a worksheet and students can work by themselves or in pairs to find the words and fill them in.

STARTER UNIT 2 KEEP TIDY!



一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本过渡单元以谈论学习物品和生活物品为线索,引导学生复习与物品名称、颜色、位置相关的语 言表达,学会观察自己身边的物品,反思自己的生活习惯,这是本单元标题"Keep Tidy!"的意义所 在。本单元围绕"保持整洁"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中"自我认 识、自我管理、自我提升"子话题密切相关。本单元通过"What do you have?"和"Where do you put your things?"两个引导性问题来架构 Section A和 Section B的内容。Section A主要呈现了几位主线人物之 间的三段对话,他们互相询问与谈论为新学期准备的学习用品。学生可通过该板块的听说活动复习句式 "What do you have?""What colour is it / are they?",以及表示物品名称和颜色的词汇。Section B 聚焦家庭 生活场景,过渡到对个人房间物品的描述,不仅复习与物品颜色相关的词汇和句式,还学习了三个描述 位置的介词 in、on和 under。该部分设计了"找东西"的情境,呈现了双胞胎姐妹 Emma和 Ella 与父母的 对话。对话中自然融入对物品颜色和位置的描述,不仅呈现了生活化的亲子对话场面,还渗透了养成良 好生活习惯的重要性。本单元的项目活动借助教室里的物品展开,让学生通过描述教室中物品的名称和 位置完成猜物品游戏,进一步巩固话题词汇和目标语言。本单元引导学生积极与朋友交流、分享生活细 节,让他们体会及时整理和收纳自己的物品的重要性,从而帮助他们养成良好的生活习惯,为未来的学 习和生活打好基础。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- 识别并能准确说出身边的常见物品(如学校、家里的物品)的英文名称;
- ▶ 听辨、认读常见的表示颜色的形容词,并能正确运用这些形容词描述物品的颜色;
- ▶ 正确运用句式 "What do you have ...?""I have ...""What colour ...?"等句式询问或 谈论拥有的物品及相关颜色特征;正确运用"It's ... / They're ..."以及介词in、on、 under描述物品的位置:

- ➤ 识别五个元音字母a、e、i、o、u 在重读开音节中的发音, 并能正确朗读体现这一发 音规律的词汇:
- 自觉提高物品收纳和整理意识、养成保持物品整洁的好习惯、提升自我管理意识。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Section A

What do you have?



活动1a—1b

🧿 内容分析

本单元首页的图片展示了 Emma 和 Teng Fei 在教室座位上询问对方书包里所带物品的场景。图中 呈现了本单元的部分话题词汇,即学生的日常学习和生活物品的名称。这些物品既有名词的单数形 式,如a bottle、a cap等,也有名词的复数形式,如pencils、keys等。这样设计既能引导学生学习或 复习上述话题词汇,又能帮助他们巩固名词的单复数形式。图片中的两位学生采用问答方式进行对 话,图中的气泡展示了本单元的核心句型 "What do you have in ...?" "I have ..."。该部分对话词汇丰 富, 句型简单, 有利于学生模仿练习并迁移使用。

该部分的两个活动可视作后续听力理解活动的热身环节。其中,活动1a让学生看图片,将图片 下方的英文名称与图中的物品匹配,以此复习相关的话题词汇,并关注其单复数形式。在此基础上、 活动 1b 让学生使用活动 1a 中的目标句式,结合自己的实际情况,与同伴互相询问书包中所带的物品。 这种相同情境下的迁移使用有利于学生快速进入主题,为后续的学习作好准备。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够识别并说出常见学习和生活物品的名称,并能根据物品数量正确使用单复数
- ▶ 能够用"What do you have?"询问他人拥有什么物品,并使用"I have ..."句型描述 自己拥有的物品。
- ▶ 能够积极参与关于学习和生活物品的问答交流,增进与同伴的相互了解,自觉提升 用英语表达和交流、开展学习活动的意愿。

🧐 教学建议

1. 看图前的准备

- (1)教师可使用前一个单元所学的"Good morning!"等打招呼用语与学生互致问候,提醒学生准备好上课所需的书本和文具,自然引入本单元的主题情境。
- (2) 教师课前准备一个水瓶和若干学习用品,如书、铅笔等,并把这些物品装人包中。上课时,教师拿起包对学生说 "Look! I have a new bag. Can you guess what is in the bag?"。教师边拿出物品展示给学生,边说 "I have two books, a bottle, and some pencils."。接下来,教师走近一名学生,指着他或她的书包问 "What do you have in your schoolbag?",学生回答问题。然后,教师在黑板上写下问题 "What do you have in your schoolbag?"。

2. 观察并讨论图片, 关注名词的单复数

- (1)教师引导学生观察图片,理解该图片所呈现的情境,即Emma和Teng Fei在教室里谈论并展示各自物品。教师可通过提问来引导学生讨论。如:
 - Who are the two students?
 - Where are they?
 - What can you see in the picture?
- (2) 教师引导学生继续观察图片,分辨 Emma 和 Teng Fei 两人桌上和手上的物品,并将物品与其英语名称配对。教师用课件展示或在黑板上写下这六个单词,用不同颜色标记名词单复数形式的特征,如单数可数名词前的不定冠词 a / an 和可数名词的复数词缀 -s。
- (3)教师让学生齐读活动1a中的六个物品名称,再让学生找出其中哪些是单数形式,哪些是复数形式,思考复数形式的特征是什么。接下来,教师提醒学生注意eraser、ruler、cap、bottle这四个单词词首的读音,引导学生发现eraser的发音以元音音素开始,另外三个单词的发音是以辅音音素开始。教师解释:在表达"一个……"时,发音以元音音素为首的单数可数名词前用an,如an apple、an orange等,发音以辅音音素为首的单数可数名词用a,如a ruler、a cap等。

教学提示:不定冠词a和an的使用是学生的易错点。教师需要提醒学生关注单数可数名词前什么时候使用a,什么时候使用an,并引导学生总结规律。单数可数名词的词首音指的是它的发音,不是字母。例如an hour,虽然hour以辅音字母开头,但字母h没有发音,它的词首音是元音音素/av/,因此需用不定冠词an。

- (4) 教师逐一展示 1a 中的六个实物,让学生快速说出物品名称,并提醒学生要在单数名词前使用 a 或 an,复数名词应注意用复数形式。教师可根据学生实际情况补充说明复数形式的发音规律:名词复数形式的读音遵循"清一清,浊一浊"的原则,如 book 以清辅音 /k/结尾,books 的词尾发清辅音 /s/; key 和 pencil 以浊音(浊音包括元音和浊辅音)/i:/和/l/结尾,keys 和 pencils 的词尾发浊辅音 /z/。
- (5) 学生两人一组,分角色练习朗读图片中的对话。最后,教师邀请几组学生在全班展示,适时给予鼓励或进行点评。

3. 口语表达

- (1)教师让学生两人一组使用1a中的物品或结合学生书包中的物品展开问答。教师在学生练习时 巡查全班,及时发现练习过程中的亮点,必要时提醒学生单词的发音及对话的语音语调等。
- (2)教师邀请几组学生在全班表演对话。教师对学生的表现进行评价,也可邀请其他学生进行 点评。

拓展活动: 你画我猜

教师可以准备一些与学习物品相关的单词卡片,组织学生开展"你画我猜"活动,具体操作步骤 如下:

- 1. 教师介绍游戏名称"你画我猜"以及游戏规则。
- 2. 教师邀请一名擅长画画的学生到讲台前,从事先准备好的卡片中随机挑选一张,放在自己的口 袋里。
 - 3. 教师示意全体学生齐声问 "What do you have in your pocket?"。
- 4. 学生看卡片上的描述后在黑板上画出第一笔,并暂停。教师面对全体学生,指向黑板前的学 生,问"What does he have in his pocket?",如果其他学生猜不出来,黑板前的学生继续画第二笔,直 到猜出物品为止。
 - 5. 教师可多请几名学生到讲台前重复上面的"你画我猜"的步骤,尽可能复习巩固更多词汇。

这个游戏能帮助学生复习目标句型的不同人称形式,还可以复习小学学过的有关生活物品的单 词,拓展词汇量。此游戏可以创造轻松愉快的学习氛围,还可以为有画画才能的学生提供展现才能的 机会,促进学生多元智能的发展。



内容分析

文本分析: 该部分的听力文本包括三段对话, 展现了新人学的初中学生交流与分享为新学期准 备的各种学习生活用品的情境。第一段对话是Teng Fei与Ella谈论他的新书包,第二段对话是Yaming 与Emma 谈论他的新自行车,第三段对话是Fu Xing 与Peter 谈论她的新鞋子。Teng Fei、Yaming 和 Fu Xing在向同伴介绍自己的新物品时,使用了目标句型 "I have ..."。这三段对话除了呈现不同的物 品,还涉及谈论物品的颜色。Ella、Emma和Fu Xing在询问物品的颜色时,使用了本单元的另一个 目标句式 "What colour is it / are they?",并在回答中呈现有关颜色的词汇。此外,三段对话中还有 "Cool!" "Great." "Oh, they look great." "That's cool!" 等用于回应对方的交际用语,使交谈能够愉快 地进行下去。理解听力对话中这些隐含的交际策略,能让学生学会在真实的语言交际过程中如何恰当 地作出回应,提升自己的语用能力和跨文化交际能力。

活动设计: 活动2a-2e呈现了一个完整的听说任务链, 其中2a、2b是听前活动, 2c、2d是听中活 动,2e是听后活动。活动2a让学生从音、形和义三方面复习关于颜色的话题词汇。活动2b呈现了本单 元的目标句式 "What colour is it / are they?", 要求学生观察图片后尝试使用目标句式和2a所列的颜色 词汇开展对话。活动2a和2b分别在词汇和句型方面为学生完成后面的听力理解活动作准备。听力理解 活动分为两步:活动2c让学生通过听了解对话中谈及物品的颜色,再为物品涂上颜色,训练学生获取 关键信息的能力;活动2d让学生再听对话,并根据所获得的物品颜色信息补全句子,训练学生从语音 到词形的转化能力。该部分的听力理解活动结合了看、听、画、写几种技能的训练,有效降低了活动 的难度,提高了活动的趣味性。听说任务链的最后一步是口语输出。活动2e结合该部分的主题,要求 学生谈论自己拥有的物品,包括询问和描述物品颜色。该活动还为学生的口语输出提供了必要的语言 支架,学生可以先填后说,这样可以减少他们表达时的心理压力,使其能更加完整、流利地完成对话。

学习目标

- 能够准确听辨、认读并书写出常见的描述颜色的形容词,能够在口语交流中用这些 词汇介绍、描述自己的物品。
- 📂 能够用特殊疑问句"What colour is it / are they?"询问物品的颜色,表达对他人新获 物品的兴趣,并能积极回应对方的问题,展开交流。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1) 学生观察活动 2a 中的图形颜色,将图形颜色与表示颜色的英文单词配对,教师在黑板上写下 "What colour is it?".
- (2) 教师提问 "What colour is it?",并引导学生回答 "It's yellow / brown / green ...",教师在黑板 上写下"It's______。"。
 - (3)教师播放活动2a的录音,学生跟读模仿。

教学提示: 在学习这些描述物品颜色的词汇时, 应让学生关注单词中重读音节中的元音发音, 一是 元音发音要饱满,二是要注意发不同元音时的嘴型。例如,发brown和white中的双元音时,嘴型 由开到合。另外,双元音/aʊ/后接鼻音时,中国学生容易忽略鼻音,应提醒学生发完/aʊ/后紧接着 发鼻音/n/。发 black 中的/æ/时,嘴型向两侧咧开,口腔肌肉比较紧张。发 red 的元音/e/时,嘴型是 扁的,不宜张大,口腔肌肉比较放松。

(4) 教师用实物或图片逐一展示 2b 活动中的物品,一边展示图片,一边提问"What is it?"或 "What are they?",得到学生的回答后,继续问 "What colour is / are _____?"。教师应提醒学生用完 整的句子"lt's / They're _____."作答。问答结束后, 教师展示下面的表格, 并引导学生思考2b中 的四个物品分别应该放在哪一栏。

A: What colour is the?	A: What colour are the?
B: It's	B: They're

学生总结出规律后,教师让学生两人一组,用实物练习问答。最后,教师请几组学生在全班展 示,并适当进行点评。

2. 听力理解

- (1)课前,教师应提醒学生准备彩色铅笔。教师播放第一遍录音,学生将活动2c中的物品涂色。 学生完成后,教师通过提问在全班核查答案,如"What colour is the schoolbag?""It's blue."。
- (2) 学生阅读活动2d指示语和三个未完成的句子,教师让学生圈出schoolbag、bicycle和shoes三 个关键词, 提醒学生在听录音时关注关键词。教师播放第二遍录音, 学生完成活动2d。师生用互动的 方式检查活动完成情况。如:
 - T: What colour is Teng Fei's new schoolbag?

Ss: Teng Fei's schoolbag is blue.

在上述对话中,教师需要提醒学生注意容易出现错误的地方:一是人名所有格的读法,需遵循前 面提到的"清一清, 浊一浊"原则, 如Teng Fei's、Yaming's、Peter's的所有格词缀都读/z/; 二是主谓 语单复数一致,如 "Yaming's bicycle is ..." "Peter's trousers are ..." 等。

- (3) 关注更多对话细节。教师可借助对话追问一些细节问题。例如:
- What is Teng Fei's favourite colour?
- What colour does Ella like?
- Do you know what colour Fu Xing's shoes are?
- What do Peter and Fu Xing think of each other's new shoes?

教师还可以询问学生的真实情况:

- Do you have a new schoolbag / a new pair of shoes? What colour is it / are they?
- Do you have a bicycle? Is it new? What colour is it?
- (4) 关注如何接话的交际策略。教师为学生展示这三个对话的第一句:

Teng Fei: Hi, Ella! I have a new schoolbag.

Ella: ...

Yaming: Hello, Emma! I have a new bicycle.

Emma: ...

Fu Xing: Hey, Peter! Look at my new shoes.

Peter: ...

教师问学生"如果你是Ella、Emma或者Peter,你会如何接话?",然后让学生听录音关注相关答 语,他们的回答分别是 "Cool!" "Really?" "Oh, they look great."。教师可以让学生思考这些答语有哪 些功能(从这些答语可以看出倾听者对对方说的内容比较感兴趣,希望这个对话能够持续下去)。教 师还可以引导学生关注这三个对话中的其他答语。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>如何接话,即如何回应对方说的话是有技巧的,这是学生需要学习的一个交际策略。教 师在教授听力或口语部分的对话时,可以提醒学生关注该策略。接话原则之一就是要让自己听起来 是一个积极、礼貌的倾听者和谈话对象,这有助于开展友好和谐的交际。

(5) 教师播放录音, 学生跟读。教师提醒学生模仿录音中的语音语调, 并引导学生发现不同 问句的语调的基本规律,即特殊疑问句结尾一般用降调,一般疑问句结尾一般用升调。简略问句 "Really?"的语调有点特殊,如果用升调,表示说话者对对方的话感到惊讶,并比较感兴趣,意思是 "真的吗?";如果用降调,则表示惊讶或疑问的意味比较弱。学生两人一组朗读并演练这三段对话。 最后,教师请几组学生在全班进行角色扮演展示,并对学生表现进行点评。

3. 口语表达

- (1)教师让学生挑选几样自己的物品,然后两人一组按照2e中的提示,用自己的物品分角色练习 对话。教师可鼓励学生采用丰富多样的表达。例如,教师可询问学生,如果对同伴说的内容比较感兴 趣,可以用什么表达,然后和学生归纳,如可用"Really?""It looks great!""That's cool!"等。
- (2)教师邀请几组学生向全班展示对话。教师可从语言内容是否准确、声音是否表现力、交流时 目光是否注视对方、仪态是否得体等方面对学生的表现进行点评。



🥝 内容分析

该板块的主要内容是五个元音字母a、e、i、o、u在重读开音节中的发音。活动1以表格的形式列 举了体现a、e、i、o、u在重读开音节中典型发音的五组单词,让学生通过听、看、读的活动发现和了 解这些字母在重读开音节中的常见发音规律,并准确读出这五个元音。活动2让学生找出与这五个元 音字母在重读开音节发音相同的单词。活动3是单词听读活动,主要帮助学生巩固五个元音字母在重 读开音节中的发音规律。活动4提供了一篇歌谣,从语篇层面训练学生对这一规律的掌握。这首歌谣 是专门为练习五个元音字母在重读开音节中的发音而编写,其中每小节的最后一个单词既体现了发音 规律、又押韵、朗朗上口、易于诵读。歌谣内容积极向上,能让人体会到一日之计在于晨的美好,相 关的配图趣味盎然,展现了主人公与朋友早起运动、享受美好自然的生活画面。听、唱歌谣的活动与 语音学习相结合,使语音学习变得更有趣、更有意义。

🥨 语音知识

在前一个单元的语音学习板块中,学生了解了26个英语字母的字母本音和21个辅音字母在单词中 的发音规律,包含"掐头法"和"去尾法"。相对而言,元音字母的发音规律比较复杂。例如,字母a 在单词中既可以发字母本音/eɪ/,也可以发/æ/、/ɑ:/或/ə/等。另外,同一个音可以由不同字母或字母组

合来实现,如长音/i:/,字母e、字母组合ee、ea等都可以发这个音。也就是说,英语字母与音之间不 是一一对应的关系,这是学生不容易掌握英语单词发音和拼写的原因之一。然而,英语中很多单词的 发音是有规律的,例如本单元介绍的五个元音字母在重读开音节中的发音。要理解这一发音规律,需 要了解音节、开音节和重读开音节等概念分别指什么。

1. 音节

人们在发音的时候声带振动,发出一个响亮的音,这就是一个语音单位,即一个音节。一般来说, 一个音节里须有一个元音音素,这是音节的主体。英语中有的单词只有一个音节,就是单音节词,有 的单词有两个音节或两个音节以上,就是双音节词或多音节词。

2. 开音节

开音节有两种情况,一种是直接以元音结尾的音节,如he、she、go、no等,被称为绝对开音节。 还有一种情况,元音字母后接辅音字母,辅音字母后接不发音的字母e,即"元音字母+辅音字母+不 发音的字母e",这样构成的音节也是开音节,被称为相对开音节,如page、these、use等。

3. 重读开音节

元音字母只有在重读开音节中发字母本音。如果单词只有一个音节,它本身就是重读的,如 bike、those等。如果单词有两个或多个音节,需要判断单词中的元音字母是否在重读音节上,如 open (o-pen),元音字母o所在的音节以o结尾,是开音节,第一个音节是重读的,因而元音字母o在重读开 音节中发字母本音/əʊ/, 又如baby(ba-by)、photo(pho-to)、student(stu-dent)等,这些单词的重读音 节中的元音字母都发字母本音。

学习目标

- 能够听辨并准确读出五个元音字母在重读开音节中的发音。
- 能够在教师的讲解和指导下,了解并归纳五个元音字母在重读开音节中的发音规律。
- 📂 能够通过有感情、有节奏地朗读歌谣,体会诗歌韵律,掌握元音字母在重读开音节 单词中的发音规律。

教学建议

1. 热身活动

- (1) 教师让学生齐唱字母歌,活跃课堂气氛,并为接下来的语音教学作铺垫。
- (2) 教师引导学生简单回顾21个辅音字母在单词中的发音规律,理解"掐头法"和"去尾法"的 含义。如1、m、n等字母在单词中的发音失去了首音/e/, 保留了尾音, 如life、mum、nine等; p、b、 t、d等字母在单词中的发音失去了尾音/i:/, 保留了首音, 如page、bag、white、red等。

2. 理解和归纳元音字母的发音规律

(1) 教师利用黑板,或通过课件展示活动1中的例词,让学生读出来。教师可提出下列问题引导 学生思考, 并让他们在小组内讨论。

- 这五个元音字母的发音有什么规律?
- 这些单词有什么特点?

学生可能会给出不同的意见,比如单词中的粗体字母读字母本音,多数单词都是以字母e结尾等。 对于合理的回答,教师均应给予肯定和鼓励。教师可根据学生的讨论总结元音字母的发音规律,即元 音字母在重读开音节中发字母本音。

- (2)教师播放活动1的录音,学生跟读模仿。
- 3. 判断元音字母是否符合发字母本音的规律
- (1) 教师引导学生阅读活动2的指示语,明确活动任务。学生两人一组,轮流读出每组音标及后 面的三个单词,并圈出每组中包含所列音标发音的单词。
- (2)教师可以采取灵活的方法核对答案,如可让学生合上书,教师读字母本音,然后读后面的单 词,学生听到跟字母本音一致的单词,向上竖起大拇指(When you hear a word that has the same sound as the letter sound, put your thumbs up.); 听到跟字母本音不一致的单词,向下竖起大拇指(When you hear a word that has a different sound from the letter sound, put your thumbs down.)。该活动有助于训练学 生的听音能力。

4. 巩固元音字母在重读开音节的发音规律

- (1)教师让学生判断活动3第一组单词是否为开音节单词,然后让他们尝试读出这些单词的发音。 学生继续按照此方法完成剩下的练习。到最后一组词music、student和pupil时,教师可以询问学生: 这三个单词有几个音节? 元音字母u是否在重读音节上? 可以看出,这三个词都是双音节词,元音字 母业都在重读的第一个音节上,并且第一个音节都以元音结尾,因此发字母本音。
 - (2)教师播放活动3的录音,学生跟读模仿。
- (3)教师限时三分钟,让学生两人一组,从本书中挑选符合元音字母在重读开音节中的发音规律 的词。三分钟后,各组读出找到的词,看哪组找得最多。

5. 朗读歌谣,体会歌谣的韵律

- (1)教师播放第一遍活动4的录音,学生听录音,感受歌谣的节奏。教师可提醒学生圈出符合所 学的发音规律的词,即元音字母在重读开音节中发字母本音的单词,有wake、Kate、late、fine等。在 英语诗歌中,结尾单词的元音音素重复出现,叫押尾韵,它是英语诗歌最常见的押韵方式之一。教师 可以通过在每行诗歌最后的单词处拍手或拍桌子的方式打节拍,引导学生感受歌谣的韵律。
- (2)教师播放第二遍录音,学生跟读。最后,教师可鼓励学生集体有节奏地大声朗读歌谣,结合 配图,让学生体会在一个风和日丽的早晨,两个好朋友在户外活动的愉快场面。



🥝 内容分析

文本分析: 该板块的阅读文本是两段对话, 主要围绕"物品应放的位置"展开。这两个对话的场 景是双胞胎姐妹 Emma 和 Ella 的家里。第一个对话发生在妹妹 Ella 的卧室里, Ella 因找不到自己的帽子 向妈妈求助。从插图可以看出,Ella屋内的物品略显杂乱,这显示出她日常不善于收纳。妈妈提醒她 说"You need to keep your room tidy.",这句话呼应了本单元的标题,也点出了这个单元的主题意义, 即学生应当养成用过的东西放回原处的习惯,保持整洁有序的生活环境。第二个对话发生在客厅,爸 爸向 Emma 询问自己的眼镜在哪儿。爸爸戴着眼镜找眼镜的情境为语篇增添了趣味。这两个对话包含 了关于物品名称、颜色和位置的词汇和表达。在描述物品位置时,对话复现了小学阶段经常使用的三 个介词 in、under 和 on。这两段对话在复习 Section A 的主题内容和目标语言的基础上进行了拓展。

活动设计: 活动 la 是读前环节, 目的是让学生复习常见生活用品的名称和三个描述位置的介词 in、on和under。该活动提供的三个句子中,主语分别是单数名词(a schoolbag)、复数名词(some books)和名词短语(a pair of socks)。该活动让学生建立句子的概念,通过填写介词补全句子,学习 如何描述物品的位置,体会介词在描述方位上的作用,以及词汇对于建构完整句子的作用。同时,该 活动也让学生关注主谓一致现象,理解不同形式的主语与be动词的搭配。活动1a让学生根据图片信 息对房间整洁状况进行判断,引导学生联系自身实际,反思自己的日常生活习惯。活动1b考查学生对 文本细节信息的理解,让学生根据对话内容在图中圈出主人公所找物品,这需要他们将文字信息转化 为图像信息。活动1c是对细节信息的进一步考查。活动1d是基于前面对话文本的写作活动,让学生 仿照其中的核心句型,以及1a中的三个例句,结合自身实际,描述家中物品的颜色和位置。该活动是 半开放的造句练习,属于基础性的写作活动。教师应引导学生关注写句子的基本要点,如句首字母要 大写、句末用句号、主谓要一致等,为学生写正确的句子打好基础。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够正确使用介词 in、on、under 描述物品所在的位置。
- ▶▶ 能够理解找东西的对话语境,并学会表达"I can't find ...",能够在别人找物品求助 时给予回应。
- 📂 能够描述自己房间里的物品,包括物品的颜色和所在位置。
- 📂 能够理解物品收纳和整理的意义,积极反思自己的物品收纳习惯,并在行动上作出 改进。

夕 教学建议

1. 读前准备

- (1)教师利用闪卡逐一呈现日常用品的图片,如床、书包、水杯、帽子、书、椅子、鞋、袜子、 尺子等,学生说出卡片上物品的英文名称。教师通过闪卡游戏帮助学生复习之前学过的单词,自然引 人本课语境。
 - (2) 教师让学生观察活动1a中的图片,在图片中找到右侧列出的物品。最后,教师在全班核查答案。
- (3) 教师展示三张图片,或在黑板上画出三幅简笔画,分别展示书包在课桌里、桌上和桌下,让学生将介词in, on, under填入句子"The schoolbag is ______ the desk."。
- (4) 教师让学生再次观察图片,在图片中圈出 a schoolbag、some books 和 a pair of socks。学生结合图片,在空白处填入止确的介词,将句子补充完整。教师请一名学生来到讲台前,一边在图片上指出物品,一边朗读这三个句子,全班核对答案。核对答案后,教师可适当点拨语言的用法:表达"一双袜子"用 a pair of socks,类似用 a pair of 的表达还有 a pair of shoes、a pair of trousers、a pair of glasses等。a pair of socks作主语时,后面的 be 动词要用单数形式,这是因为两只袜子被看作一个整体。如果把这句话的主语改为 the socks,后面的 be 动词就需要用 are。
 - (5) 教师呈现下面的示范对话, 让学生两人一组, 根据1a的图片和示范对话开展看图说话练习。

A: What can you see?

B: I can see a cat. It's in the box, under the table.

(6) 教师让学生讨论 "Is this room tidy or not?", 并追问学生 "What would you do to tidy this room?"。

2. 对话理解

- (1) 教师引导学生观察 1b 中的第一幅图片,了解对话发生的情境,预测将要读到的内容。教师可通过提问引导学生思考,如:
 - Look at this picture. Who are they?
 - Where are Ella and her mum?
 - (2) 学生快速阅读第一个对话, 教师在黑板上写出以下问题, 引导学生关注对话中的关键信息。
 - What is Ella looking for?
 - What colour is it?
 - Where is it?
 - Is it the right place for the cap?

待学生了解对话基本信息后,教师可继续追问:

- What advice does Ella's mum give to her?
- Do you think Ella is polite?

教师引导学生思考这个对话背后蕴含的意义,主要包括: ① 要养成物归原主的习惯; ② 要虚心礼貌地接受别人善意的建议。

- (3)教师通过提问引导学生观察第二幅图片,了解对话发生的场景。如:
- Who can you see in the picture?
- Look at their faces. Guess. Who can't find something?

- (4) 学生阅读第二个对话, 教师提问并检查学生理解情况。如:
- What can't Emma's dad find?
- What colour are they?
- Where are they?
- (5)教师播放对话录音,学生跟读模仿,教师应提醒学生关注对话中的朗读技巧,如哪些词重 读、哪些词弱读、哪些词连读等。教师提醒学生注意第一个对话中的"Your new cap?",这是个简略 问句,口语交际时用升调。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在英语对话中,表达疑问可以用一个完整句子,也可以用一个短语,甚至是一个词。短 语或单词后面加问号就可以构成问句,这种简略问句在英语口语中比较常见,朗读时一般读升调, 表示不确定,让对方核实。教师在教学中碰到这类问句,可让学生关注它的功能和用法。

(6) 关注对话中的语言表达。教师先让学生找出对话中不太理解的短语或句子, 然后引导学生理 解这些表达。如"Here it is."表示"在这里"或者"给你",此句中的it指代的是单数名词;如果指 代的是复数名词,就需要用"Here they are"。再如glasses表示"眼镜"时是复数名词。教师可让学 生从第二个对话中找出体现 glasses 是复数的句子, 教师将句子写在黑板上, 关键信息留空让学生填 写。如:

Do you see	_?	
What colour	?	
• brown.		
I don't see	. Now I see	on your head!

师生一起总结:与复数名词 glasses 对应的代词是 them 和 they,对应的 be 动词是 are。教师还可以 让学生将glasses与第一个对话中的单数名词cap对比,并询问学生,对话中哪些句子体现了cap的单 数用法。

教学提示: 让学生有意关注名词的单复数在句子中的用法,包括名词对应的代词是单数还是复数, 名词作主语时与谓语动词保持一致等,这种训练不仅能让学生加深对相关用法的理解,也有助于提 升学生的语言运用能力。

- (7) 讨论对话背后的主题意义。教师让学生讨论以下三个问题:
- Are you a tidy person or an untidy person?
- Why should you keep your room tidy?
- How do you keep your room tidy?
- 3. 角色扮演

学生两人一组, 挑选对话1或对话2进行角色扮演练习。根据学生的情况, 教师可鼓励学生适当改 编对话,将所学目标语言用于谈论实际生活。最后,教师请几组学生在全班表演对话,教师进行点评。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>教师需要为学生的角色扮演活动预留充分的练习时间。在学生练习过程中,教师应在教 室巡查,尽可能关注到每组的练习情况,并在必要时给予积极的鼓励或轻声纠音。教师可引导学生 在每组表演结束时及时鼓掌,并给出积极的评价或建议,从而营造友好和谐的班级学习氛围。

4. 书写准备

学生分角色齐读1b中的两段对话,然后根据对话内容完成活动1c。师生核对答案。

5. 写作训练

- (1)教师课前让学生每人准备一张自己卧室的照片或图画。课上教师展示自己准备的照片,描述 照片中物品的颜色及位置,并将相应的描述写在黑板上,标注出重点单词(包括句子的主语名词或代 词,以及be动词)。如:
 - My cup is yellow. It is on my desk.
 - My pencils are blue. They are in my bag.

教师让学生思考句子中画线单词的用法特点, 引导学生总结: 当主语是可数名词单数时, 要用谓 语动词is,相应的代词为it;当主语是可数名词复数时,要用谓语动词are,相应的代词为they。

- (2) 学生两人一组, 互相描述自己照片上物品的颜色和位置。练习结束后, 教师邀请几名学生展 示照片,并描述照片中物品的颜色和位置。教师对学生的展示进行点评。
- (3)教师让学生朗读活动1d中的句子示范,再次复习和巩固目标句型。接着,学生结合自己的照 片或图片,独立写出四个完整的句子,描述四种物品的颜色及位置。教师提醒学生注意书写规范,并 巡查全班。教师在巡查过程中要注意寻找学生写作中的亮点,并适时给予指导。
- (4)教师请几名学生将书写的句子投影到屏幕上,让全班学生共同评析,给予积极肯定的评价, 并提出改进建议。

教学提示: 学生在初次书写完整的英语句子时, 教师需提醒学生书写的规范, 包括单词间的空格、 标点符号的正确书写方式等, 尤其要注意不要将英语句子结尾的句号错写成中文的句号。



🔘 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是一个猜物品游戏。该活动分为三个步骤:第一步让所有学生每人选择教室内的 一件物品,并将其名称写在纸上,目的是检测学生对本单元话题词汇的掌握情况。第二步让一名学生走 到教室前面,其他学生运用本单元询问物品颜色和位置的特殊疑问句向该学生提问,缩小目标物品的猜 测范围。为了增加游戏的挑战性和趣味性,学生只能问三个问题。第三步,问完三个问题后,猜物品的 学生直接使用 "Is it ...?" "Are they ...?"来猜测物品名称,学生要根据所猜测的物品选择用单数形式还是 复数形式,这里提供的两个问句复现了名词单复数和 be 动词的搭配。该游戏自然地融入了话题词汇和 目标句式,并具有信息差和竞争性,能让全体学生都参与到活动中来,增强他们学习英语的兴趣。

学习目标

- 能够写出教室里常见物品的名称。
- 能够灵活运用询问颜色和位置的特殊疑问句猜测物品,并作相应回答。
- 能够积极主动地参与游戏、乐于用英语表达。

勿 物学建议

1. 了解游戏规则

- (1)教师引导学生阅读活动2a至2d的指示语,了解游戏规则。教师可适当说明或解释这些规则: 首先,学生每人在纸上规范书写出教室里一个物品的名称。然后,一名学生手持自己写的纸条走上讲 台,其他学生用"Where ...?""What colour ...?"句型提问,猜测该学生所写的物品是什么。讲台上的 学生根据实际情况, 使用"It's ..."或"They're ..."句型作答。教师要求学生在三个问题后猜出物品。 顺利猜出答案之后,换一名学生上台,开始下一轮集体猜物品游戏。
- (2)教师让学生两人一组,根据活动2b中的句型训练如何提问与回答。教师可提醒学生牢记自己 所写物品的颜色、位置, 以及数量。

2. 开展游戏

- (1) 教师可示范一次游戏玩法,示范结束后询问学生是否对游戏玩法还有疑问。
- (2) 学生依次走上讲台,开展游戏。

3. 活动总结

教师引导学生总结这个游戏中的收获,如通过游戏巩固如何谈论物品颜色及位置,体会到单数名 词前应使用冠词a或an,复数名词应加词缀-s等。

4. 活动评价

- (1) 教师对学生的总结进行点评。
- (2)学生根据活动自评表对自己的表现进行评价。

活动自评表 学生姓名:				
我在活动中的参与度	非常积极☺	比较积极 🕾	还不够积极8	
我在活动中的收获		11:		
我还没有掌握的内容				
我想了解更多的内容			3	

教学提示:游戏可以帮助学生在轻松愉快的氛围中主动学习或使用所学语言。在游戏活动中,教师需要及时鼓励和表扬学生。根据学生情况,教师还可以提醒学生使用其他句型,但不要过度拓展,以免增加学生负担。

三、课文注释

1. Oh, here it is. 哦,它在这儿呢。

这是一个倒装句,正常的语序是"It is here."。 英语口语中常使用here开头的倒装句,使表达更生动。例如:

Look! Here comes the bus 看,公共汽车来了。

Here she is. 她在这儿呢。

2. You need to keep your room tidy. 你需要让你的房间保持整洁。

此句中的 keep 是及物动词, 意为"(使)保持", 常构成"keep+名词/人称代词+形容词"的结构, 表示"使·····保持某种状态"。例如:

We should keep our classroom clean and tidy. 我们应该让我们的教室保持干净整洁。

Swimming can keep us healthy. 游泳可以让我们保持健康。

3. You're welcome. 不客气。

在英语口语中,这句话常用来回应别人的谢意。除此之外,还可以使用以下几种方式回应感谢:

No problem. 没问题。

My pleasure. / It's my pleasure. (是)我的荣幸。

Sure. 当然了。(应该的。)

Anytime. 随时为您效劳。

No worries. / Don't worry about it. 别担心。(没事。)

No big deal. 小事一桩。

It was nothing. 没事。

No sweat. 举手之劳。

Starter Unit 2 Keep Tidy!

The theme of this unit is developing the habit of keeping things tidy. Students will describe things they have, including their colour and location. This unit will help them understand the importance of keeping things picked up so they don't have difficulty finding them.

Section A

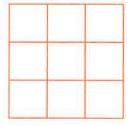
1a			
Teaching Tip	 Draw the Fastest Have students get into teams and decide what order they will play in. Have students learn the words with real objects. Bring a ruler, a bottle, a cap, an eraser, a pencil, and a key to class. Show each to students one item at a time, saying the word. Have students repeat. Tell students they will say a word and one person from each team has to race to the board and draw the item. (Alternatively, students draw on a paper at their desk and race to show the teacher.) After each round, give one point to the fastest team with the correct picture. After all students have played at least once, the team that scores the most wins. 		
Culture Note	In the United States, students often say "bag" or more specifically "backpack" rather than "schoolbag".		
Answers	\underline{B} a ruler \underline{D} a cap \underline{C} pencils \underline{A} a bottle \underline{F} an eraser \underline{E} keys		

Optional Activity: Bingo!

Purpose	To help students use and remember the new words.
Materials Required	One piece of paper for every student in class.

Procedure

- 1. As a class, have students brainstorm at least seven other words. Emphasize that these words should be different from those in 1a. Write the words on the board as students say them. (e.g. afternoon, alphabet, hello, morning, name, please, what) Allow students to review Starter Unit 1 if they find it difficult to say seven words.
- 2. Draw a 3×3 grid on the board.



- 3. Have students copy the grid onto their piece of paper and write a different word in each box, choosing from the words on the board and those in 1a. Point out that they won't use all of the words.
- 4. When students have completed their grids, call out the words in random order.

- 5. Students should cross out the words on their grids as they are called out. When a student crosses out two rows (across, down, or diagonally), the student shouts "Bingo!"
- 6. The student then says the words in their rows, with the class confirming the words that were called. The teacher then declares the student the winner.

Optional Variations:

- 1. Have students brainstorm more words and use a 4×4 grid.
- 2. In large classes, have students play in small groups so there are more opportunities for students to speak and also more winners.

2b	
Teaching Tip	Everything Brown Before starting 2b, have students get into small groups. Assign each group a colour and then say "Go." Give students 60–90 seconds to write down words for that colour or draw pictures of things that are that colour. After calling time, groups say how many ideas they thought of. Have the group with the most items share their ideas and declare them the winner. Colour Game Teacher writes down the words of colour on the board. Then teacher calls out a random colour. Students go around the classroom and to find an item in that colour. Remind students to respect each other's belongings.
Answers	It's <u>brown</u> . They're <u>blue</u> .

2c		
Teaching Tip	What Will You Hear? Before doing 2c, have students look at the three sketches. Then have students predict four colours they will hear and write them in the margin of their books. After completing 2c, say each of the colours (blue, black, orange, red) and have students raise their hands if they correctly predicted the colour they would hear.	
Culture Note	Some Western surnames are colours. Common names include Brown (Ms Brown). Green (Mr Green), White (Mrs White), and Black (Miss Black).	
Answers	Students should colour the schoolbag blue, the bike black and orange, and the shoes red.	

2d	
	1. Teng Fei's schoolbag is <u>blue</u> .
Answers	2. Yaming's bicycle is black and orange.
	3. Peter's shoes are <u>red</u> .

2e	
Teaching Tip	 Brainstorm Real Objects Before starting 2e, as a class have students brainstorm new things they have. You may want to allow students to brainstorm new things they want, particularly if they don't currently have new things. As students say the objects, have them include "a", "an", or use the plural form. Write their ideas on the board. Encourage students to use these ideas as they have their conversations in 2e. To help prepare students to make their own conversations, have them get into pairs. Hold up an object, such as an eraser. Ask one student to identify it (an eraser). Have all A students say their part together. Have students raise hands to indicate whether they should use "is it" or "are they". Then have B students say their part together. Have several students show their erasers and say the colours. Then have all A students complete the conversation together. After this, have pairs work together to make as many conversations as possible until time is called. To make a competition, have pairs keep track of how many different conversations they made and declare a winner at the end.
Culture Note	Idioms with Colour Words There are many English metaphors and idioms with colour words. For example, "She has a green thumb" describes a person who is good at growing plants. (green=life, the colour of plants) The expression "feeling blue" is used when someone is feeling sad, and we use "seeing red" when a person is angry.
Sample Conversation	A: I have an eraser. B: What colour is it? A: It's white.

ronunciation

Teaching Tip	Open and Closed Syllables Understanding open and closed syllables helps students read words and know whether the vowel pronunciation is long or short. This knowledge also helps students hear and then more accurately spell words. An open syllable is a syllable that ends in a vowel. Examples include "he", "be", "go", and "she". Students can remember the term "open syllable" by remembering that there are no letters after the vowel, so there is nothing to close it in. There is another kind of open syllable, i.e. "vowel + consonant + magic e". Examples include "fine", "nose", and "cute". Students should also remember that because of this, the vowel is long. A closed syllable is a syllable that has a yowel followed by a consonant. Examples

Peer-Monitoring of Pronunciation

Encourage students to pay attention to their partners' pronunciation whenever they work in pairs. For activity 1, first play the recording, which features native speakers. Stop after each word and have all students repeat. Have students get into pairs. Once again play the recording, stopping after each word. Have each student take turns, in pairs, to repeat. The partners will then say how close the pronunciation was to the recording.

Optional Approach

Regularly change partners so students can make more friends and also hear various pronunciations. This activity helps raise students' awareness of common pronunciation errors, but students should always be kind in their interactions with partners. Do not allow one student to mock or demean their partner in any way. It is also a good idea to tell students that even if their pronunciation does not sound exactly like the recording, as long as they are understandable, they will be able to communicate while they are developing their English pronunciation and language ability.

2						
Answers	1. lake, take	2. me	3. kite, ice	4. nose, go	5. duke	

Optional Activity: Pronunciation Whisper Game

Purpose	To help students become more confident in saying the A-E-I-O-U sounds.
Materials Required	None.

Procedure

- 1. Divide students into groups of 5–8 students.
- 2. Have each group get into a line.
- 3. Have the first student from all groups come to the front and whisper a word to them. Say "go" and students race back to their line, whispering the word to the next student. Students continue to whisper the word down the row, and the last student races to the teacher to whisper the word. Award points for accuracy and speed, so the fastest team with the correct answer gets two points while all other teams with the correct answer get one point.
- 4. Play several rounds of the game. After each round, tell students the correct word.
- 5. At the end, declare a winning team.

Section B

1a			
_	Comparing for Fun		
	After completing 1a, have students compare the colour of objects in their rooms to the		
	bedroom in the sketch. On the board, write:		
	A: The desk in the picture is How about yours?		
	B: It's		
	Have students get into pairs and take turns asking and answering questions.		
Teaching Tip	Find the Object		
1	Have students circle five objects in the sketch and draw arrows to move them so they		
	are in, under, or on something. On the board, write:		
	A: Where is your?		
	B: It's		
	Have students get into pairs and ask and answer questions about the objects they		
	moved. After pairs finish, you might want to ask if any pairs moved the same objects		
	to the same place.		
Answers	1. on 2. in 3. under		

16	
Teaching Tip	Reviewing Prepositions of Location Before reading the instructions, have students look at the pictures and make sentences about things in the pictures using "in", "on", and "under". This will help students prepare to read. Predicting as Pre-Reading Ask students questions so they make predictions about the content of the two conversations. (i.e. Who are the people? Where are they? What are they talking about?) After reading the conversations, ask students which of their predictions were correct.
Culture Note	Idioms about Habits Good habits start at a young age, so it is not surprising that there are many idioms about having good habits. "Old habits die hard" emphasizes the difficulty of changing habits that we have had for many years. Similarly, we use "creature of habit" to discuss a person who does something naturally, without thinking, out of habit.
Answers	The cap is under the desk. The glasses are on Emma's dad's head.

1c		
Teaching Tip	Mastering Test Questions Tell students that it is not necessary to read the entire conversation to choose the correct answers. Explain that instead, they should choose the important words or ideas for a question and then quickly look through the conversation to try to find those words or ideas. Emphasize that they should not read each word as they search. Have students identify the most important words or ideas in question 1 (cap, colour) and race to find the answer. Repeat with questions 2 (cap, location), 3 (glasses, colour), and 4 (glasses, location).	
Culture Note	Terms of Affection Although fathers are often referred to as "dad" (e.g. his dad, my dad, your dad), there are many other English terms of affection such as "pops" and "daddy" (usually by younger children). Mothers are sometimes referred to as "mum", "mummy", or "mama".	
Answers	1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B	

1d	
Teaching Tip	Show You Understand After students complete their sentences, give each student a piece of paper. Have students get into pairs. As one student reads their sentences, the other student sketches pictures to show the locations. Then have students switch roles. Before students begin the activity, you may want to demonstrate with some of the suggested answers (below) by having a volunteer draw on the board or all students draw in the margin of their books.
Suggested Answers	 My cap is red. It is on my desk. My shoes are blue and white. They are under my bed. My socks are white. They are on my bed. My bottle is orange. It is in my schoolbag.



Teaching Tip

Expanding Real-World Vocabulary

Have students look around the room and say other objects, such as chair, poster, notebook, blackboard / chalkboard, window, door, and shoes. Provide the vocabulary for words students would like to include but don't yet know, such as flag, chalk, and projector.

Optional Activity: Mystery Object Spelling

Purpose	To help students review both vocabulary and its spelling.
Materials Required	None.

Procedure

- 1. Tell students they will play a guessing game using objects they have.
- 2. Have students get into pairs.
- 3. Have one student close their eyes and hold out their hands together in front of them. The other student will place an object (e.g. an eraser) in their partner's hands and ask, "What is it?"
- 4. Keeping their eyes shut, the student will try to guess what the thing is. When they guess correctly, they can open their eyes but must then spell the word correctly, for example, "an eraser, E-R-A-S-E-R."
- 5. Students change roles and repeat.

STARTER UNIT 3 WELCOME!

单元主题内容框架 Describe your dream farm Design your own farm *Project Get to know a farm and describe the farm Read an introduction to a farm and write Starter Unit 3 Welcome! What is fun on a farm? Section B: about what you can see Get to know a yard in China and talk plants and animals in a yard and talk Listen to conversations about the What is fun in a yard? about what you can see there Section A: about the things in it

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元主要围绕"乡村生活"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"身 边的事物与环境","人与自然"主题范畴中的"常见的动物""动物的特征与生活环境"两个子主题密 切相关。本单元展示了中国农家院和农场两处各具特色的场景,让学生通过观察和讨论图片内容、听农 家院里发生的对话、阅读农场介绍等一系列活动逐步熟悉乡村生活环境,了解乡村生活,带着对乡村生 活的好奇心与同伴谈论各种常见的动植物,表达对自然的热爱,感受乡村生活的乐趣,从而引发他们对 多彩世界的向往和探索。

本单元主要帮助学生回顾和复习小学阶段所学的数词、常见的动植物名称、指示代词、名词单复数 形式以及一般现在时态。Section A的引导性问题是"What is fun in a yard?", 学生将透过外国学生Peter 和 Helen 的视角,观察和发现中国农家院的新奇之处,学会询问和了解自己不熟悉的动植物。Section A 的语音部分主要让学生通过听读单词、听唱歌谣,初步了解和熟悉元音字母a、e、i、o、u在重读闭音 节中的常见发音。Section B的引导性问题是 "What is fun on a farm?",该部分让学生阅读农场的介绍, 了解农场的独特风貌和生活,然后尝试转述有关农场的所见所闻。最后的项目活动板块则让学生绘制并 描述自己心目中的农场,该活动一方面是为了让学生综合运用本单元所学语言进行表达,另一方面是为 了培养学生的动手能力和审美情趣。

学生通过观察、描述乡村生活环境,能够发现不同地域的乡村生活的异同。这样的对比展示有助于 开阔学生的文化视野,激发他们的学习兴趣,促进他们对当代社会生活的了解。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- > 通过观察图片识别农家小院和农场里的各种常见动植物,并能说出其英文名称;
- > 听辨并正确读出20以内的数字,以及常见的动植物名称的复数形式;
- ▶ 正确运用指示代词和一般现在时态就农家小院里的物品进行问答;正确运用所学词 汇和句式描述农场的风貌;

- ➤ 识别五个元音字母a、e、i、o、u在重读闭音节中的常见发音,并能正确朗读含有这些字母的常用单音节词汇;能正确读出一般现在时中系动词be的缩略形式和完整形式;
- > 了解并感受中国乡村生活风貌, 养成对周围事物与环境的观察力。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Section A

What is fun in a yard?



② 内容分析

活动1a要求学生匹配图中的动植物与其英文名称,目的是引导学生回顾和复习与单元主题相关的话题词汇,尤其是名词复数。活动1b让学生运用所给的核心句式谈论1a图中的各种动植物,一方面是为了帮助学生巩固已学词汇和核心句式,以便开展口语训练,另一方面为了加深他们对指示代词的理解,比如this指代近处的单数物品或不可数物品,而those则指代远处的复数物品等。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察图片识别图中的人物以及各种动植物,并能说出这些动植物的英文名称。
- 能够用 what 引导的特殊疑问句 "What's this / that?" "What are these / those?" 询问近处和远处动植物的名称,并作出相应回答。
- k够正确使用指示代词this、that、these、those谈论近处和远处的动植物。

角 教学建议

- 1. 主题导入。教师用课件呈现 Section A 的引导性问题 "What's fun in a yard?"与1a 的图片,同时可展示几张不同国家不同地区的庭院图,然后让学生猜测 yard 这个单词的意思。当学生说出"院子;庭院"时,教师可提出问题 "What do you usually see in a yard?"让学生思考并回答,然后把学生说出的各种动植物的名称写在黑板上。
- 2. 观察和描述图片。教师通过提问引导学生观察1a图片,让他们对图中场景、人物关系以及人物 交流的内容进行推断和描述。例如:
 - How many people are there in the picture?
 - Who are they?
 - Where are they?
 - What are they talking about?
 - What else can you see in the picture?

教学提示:通常情况下,教师可以引导学生先对图片进行整体观察,再按照一定顺序进行局部观察。观察顺序可以是从左到右,也可以从近到远,从四周到中间等。按照一定顺序观察和谈论图片内容,能够有效培养学生"看"的技能,也为学生进行有条理的表达奠定基础。

- 3. 示范问答。教师可选择图中分别居于前景和后景的动物或植物,指着它们并用核心句式提问。例如: 教师指着图片中远处的小猫,询问学生"What's that?",学生回答"It's a cat."。教师再指着图中近处的大白鹅问"What's this?",学生回答"It's a goose."。教师指着近处的胡萝卜苗问"What are these?",学生回答"They're carrot plants."。随后教师可用课件呈现短语 a cat、a goose、carrot plants,分别列在对应的动植物旁边。
- 4. 朗读对话。学生两人一组练习朗读图片中的对话。教师请两到三组学生在全班展示对话,并及时纠正学生发音上的问题。
- 5. 匹配动植物名称。教师让学生齐读1a中的单词和短语,要求他们从图中找出对应的动植物,并 写下相应的字母。师生核对答案。
 - 6. 归纳核心句式用法。教师可用课件或在黑板上展示下面的表格,让学生将this、that、these、

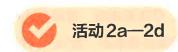
those 填在正确的横线上。教师还可根据学情提供更多的语言支架,让学生参照 Helen 和 Peter 所站的位 置,将图片中的动植物名称填在"It's ..."和"They're ..."之后。

Marian	单数	复数
近	A: What is? B: It's	A: What are? B: They're
远	A: What is? B: It's	A: What are? B: They're

7. 语言操练。学生两人一组根据表格中归纳的句式用法和 la 的图片内容练习问答。教师邀请几组 学生在全班展示,并给予点评。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生在练习问答的过程中,教师需要在全班巡查并提供必要的帮助。在本课的学习中, 学生可能出现的错误是:在询问多只小动物,仍用that或this。教师可提醒学生结合名词单复数情 况使用指示代词,并通过活动多练习。

- 8. 拓展表达。教师还可基于图片内容提出更多问题,引导学生运用小学所学的词汇和句式表达对 农家院的看法和感受。例如:
 - Where can you see a yard like this? In the city or in the countryside?
 - Would you like to visit this yard?
 - What do you like about it?
 - What do you think about the animals and plants in the yard?



内容分析

文本分析:该部分的听力文本共有三段对话,都与之前1a图片展示的情境相关。这三段对话的 内容和编排顺序都符合日常交际的生活逻辑:第一段对话展现了Peter和Helen与Fu Xing的爷爷初 次见面并交谈的过程。Fu Xing 首先向 Peter 和 Helen介绍自己的爷爷,使用了介绍他人的交际用语 "This is ..."。由于Peter和Helen与Fu Xing的爷爷初次见面,且面对的是长辈,他们在打招呼时使用 了较为正式的表达"Nice to meet you!"。Fu Xing 的爷爷以"Nice to meet you too."表示回应,接着说 "Welcome to my house.",向小客人们表示欢迎,并热情地带他们参观。这一对话不仅充分体现了双 方得体的社交礼仪,还复现了 Starter Unit 1 所学的语言表达。第一段对话的后半部分、第二段对话和 第三段对话主要围绕小院里的各种动植物展开。由于缺少在中国乡村生活的体验,Peter和Helen对小 院里的各种动植物充满了好奇,于是他们向Fu Xing的爷爷询问那些不认识或不太确定名称的动植物, Fu Xing的爷爷耐心地给予回答。对话中很自然地融入了话题词汇和单元目标结构,包括询问动植物 名称的句式 "What's that?" "What are those plants?" "Are they ...?" "What kind of tree is this?", 询问物 品数量的句式 "How many ... do you have?",以及相关答语。

活动设计:活动2a—2d构成一个完整的听说任务链,其中活动2a和活动2b是听前活动,活动2c是听中活动,活动2d是听后活动。活动2a—2b采用听与写的训练,帮助学生复习巩固数词,为后续听取数量信息的活动作准备。活动2c针对三段听力对话分别设计了理解性活动,主要为了训练学生获取细节信息的能力。其中,前两个问题针对动植物的名称提问,后两个问题针对动植物的数量提问,题干还呈现了询问数量的关键句式,即"How many ... does Fu Xing's grandpa have?"。听后活动2d集中呈现了听力文本中的核心句式,旨在帮助学生搭建对话的语言支架,让学生能基于1a图片内容灵活运用有关动植物名称和数量的话题词汇开展对话,谈论农家小院里的各种细节。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够通过听识别文本中的数词(20以内),准确记录与数量相关的信息。
- ▶ 能够在听的过程中捕捉关键词,获取文本细节信息,如事物的名称、数量等。
- 能够正确运用询问物品名称和数量的关键句式(What's ...? What are ...? What plants / animals ...? How many ...?)与同伴谈论动植物。

🧐 教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)教师可在课前准备一幅或多幅写有数字的图片,让学生观察图片并大声说出图中含有的数字,自然导人本课需要复习的数词。
- (2) 教师播放 2a 录音,学生跟读。学生跟读时,教师需针对几个发音难点及时提供指导,确保学生发音准确。例如:单词 three /θri:/的发音是难点,发/θ/音时舌尖应微微伸出,置于上下门齿之间,舌身呈扁平,气流由舌齿间泻出,摩擦成音。教师可通过示范带领学生掌握发音技巧。单词 five /faɪv/也易读错,特别是结尾的/v/,教师可提醒学生尾音不能读成/w/。
 - (3) 学生练习朗读2a中的数词, 教师请个别学生在全班展示。
 - (4)教师播放2b录音,学生根据录音写下听到的数字。师生核对答案。

2. 听力理解

- (1)学生阅读活动2c指示语、所列的四个问题及选项,预测听力对话内容。例如:教师可启发学生说出第一个问题的两个选项的共性特点,即两个选项都是动物名称,由此可推理出在第一个对话里, Helen提及了某种动物。因此,学生在听录音时需要注意Helen谈论的内容,关注她提及的动物名称。
 - (2) 教师第一次完整播放三段对话的录音, 学生完成活动2c。师生核对答案。
- (3)教师课前将听力文本挖空,设计成对话填空练习,然后在课堂上以课件或学案形式呈现。教师第二遍播放录音,学生听录音并尝试补全对话。
 - (4)教师第三次播放录音,学生边听边核对对话填空的答案。
 - (5) 师生核对对话填空练习的答案。核对答案时,教师可请三组学生分别朗读这三段对话,同时

纠正学生的语音语调问题或提供示范指导。

3. 听后活动

- (1) 教师展示 la 的图片, 让学生两人一组根据下面的示范问答进行语言操练, 尽可能做到不需要 看示范也能熟练问答。例如:
 - A: How many apple trees can you see?

chickens ducks rabbits baby

- B: I can see two apple trees.
- (2) 教师请几组学生在全班展示问答, 然后点评。
- (3)学生阅读活动2d的指示语及对话框架,教师引导学生关注对话框架中的指示代词that和 those,确保学生理解活动要求及指示代词的含义,并提醒学生在练习问答时需要注意所询问的动植物 的位置和数量。
- (4) 学生两人一组基于1a的图片内容以及2d的对话框架编对话,教师可鼓励学生交换角色或替 换所谈论的动植物,进行多轮问答。
 - (5) 学生小组活动完毕, 教师可请几组学生在全班展示, 师生共同给予评价。

Pronunciation

🤍 内容分析

本单元的语音板块先聚焦五个元音字母a、e、i、o、u在重读闭音节中的发音,然后针对这五个 元音字母的常见发音提供了分类归纳练习和朗读训练。活动1以表格的形式呈现了字母a、e、i、o、u 在重读闭音节中的常见发音/æ/、/e/、/ɪ/、/ɒ/、/ʌ/, 以及含有这些音素的五组单词, 让学生通过听、 看、模仿、大声朗读等活动理解这些字母在重读闭音节中的发音规则。活动2则列举了更多含有 a、 e、i、o、u的单词,让学生通过听熟悉单词的发音,然后根据元音字母在重读开音节或重读闭音节中 的发音将单词分类,从而使学生对五个元音字母的常见发音规律形成完整的认知。活动3是单词朗读 活动,要求学生识别单词中的元音字母,并能按照发音规律正确朗读单词。活动4提供了一首富有童 趣且包含大自然诸多元素的歌谣,让学生听后诵读。歌谣节奏明快、富有韵律,且有多个单词包含五 个元音字母在重读开、闭音节的发音。这些单词多为单音节词,有利于学生巩固并掌握所学的发音规 则,使他们朗读时做到语音正确、清晰流畅。诵读英文歌谣还能让学生感受到语言学习的乐趣,欣赏 英语语言的节奏韵律和文字的美感。

语音知识

在学习Starter Unit 2的过程中,学生已经了解了音节、开音节、重读开音节等概念,学习了五个 元音字母在重读开音节的发音规律。本单元学生将继续学习元音字母在重读闭音节中的发音规律。

1. 闭音节和重读闭音节

以辅音音素结尾的音节称为闭音节。闭音节单词末尾可以只有一个辅音音素,如cat、dog、up

等,也可以有不止一个辅音音素,如hand、lend、lunch等。重读闭音节包含两个条件:一是元音字母必须在闭音节中,二是这个闭音节必须是重读的。例如:单词begin /br'gm/中的元音字母i就在闭音节中,且是重读音节。重读闭音节这个概念很重要,它不仅与单词拼读规则相关,在后续学习不同语法结构的词缀变化时也会涉及。例如,在动词的现在分词、过去式、过去分词的规则变化中,以重读闭音节结尾的动词变化往往有其特殊性。

2. 元音字母在重读闭音节中的发音规律

当元音字母在重读闭音节时,字母a 发/æ/、e 发/e/、i 发/ɪ/、o 发/ɒ/、u 发/ʌ/,如dad、rabbit、ten、pencil、big、visit、hot、cotton、but、subject等。

学习目标

- ▶▶ 能够识别并正确读出五个元音字母(a、e、i、o、u)在重读闭音节中的常见发音。
- 能够梳理并归纳五个元音字母在开、闭音节中的不同发音规律。
- 能够根据五个元音字母在开、闭音节中的发音规律正确拼读单词。
- 能够流畅且有节奏地朗读包含多个元音字母发音的歌谣、能理解和欣赏歌谣内容。

廖教学建议

1. 激活学生学习语音的兴趣

教师用课件呈现 Starter Unit 2 Pronunciation 部分活动 4 的歌谣,激发学生诵读和学习语音的兴趣。 教师引导学生从歌谣中找出包含五个元音字母的单词,让他们回顾并说出五个元音字母在重读开音节中的发音。

2. 归纳元音字母的发音规律

- (1)教师让学生观察活动1中的表格,两人一组尝试读出单词。
- (2)教师可用课件展示更多含有五个元音字母且在重读闭音节中的单词,然后让学生在小组内讨论五个元音字母的发音以及这些单词的特点。教师巡查,适时给予指导。以下词汇列表供参考:

a /æ/	cat, map, thank, cap, black
e /e/	bed, pet, let, desk, red
i /ɪ/	pig, sing, sit, thing
u /u/	hot, dog, sock, box
u /ʌ/	cup, duck, mum, fun

学生讨论完毕,教师可请学生用中文描述他们的观察结果。然后,教师可结合学生的总结适时引人重读闭音节的概念,确保他们理解活动1的表格首行列出的是五个元音字母在重读闭音节中的常见读音。

(3) 教师播放活动1的录音, 学生跟读模仿。教师可以通过略微夸张的发音示范, 或播放相关的 视频帮助学生掌握这五个音素的发音方法。随后,教师可再次呈现上一步骤的词汇列表,让学生集体 朗读或结对朗读表中的音素和单词。

3. 根据发音规律分类整理词汇

- (1) 学生阅读活动2的指示语,明确活动任务。教师让学生观察表格中的五个元音字母和下面所 列的音素,探讨其中的规律。学生根据所学语音知识可以发现每个元音字母之下的两个读音分别是在 重读开、闭音节中的不同发音。
- (2) 学生两人一组, 试着读出活动2中所有单词, 如不确定个别单词的读音, 可用铅笔在单词后 做记号。
- (3)教师播放活动2录音,学生边听录音边完成活动2。学生两人一组核对答案,然后师生共同 核对答案。核对答案时,教师可让学生逐个朗读单词,然后说出元音字母的发音以及该字母是在闭音 节还是开音节中。
- (4)核对答案后,教师可用课件呈现完整的表格,展示活动2中所有单词的分类情况,然后要求 学生齐声朗读表格中所有内容。教师也可随机抽取几个学生大声朗读表中的音素和单词,及时纠正学 生的语音问题。

4. 巩固语音训练

- (1) 学生两人一组观察并讨论活动3中哪些是开音节单词,哪些是闭音节单词,并尝试读出这些 单词。随后, 师生核对答案。
- (2)教师从活动2和活动3中挑选五个开音节单词、五个闭音节单词开展听音写词的活动。教师 也可鼓励学生两人一组轮流进行听音写词,以提升学生对元音字母以及单词发音的听觉敏感性。

教学提示: 听音写词的活动不仅可用于检测学生对语音知识的掌握情况, 还能帮助学生养成良好的 听读习惯,逐渐做到见词能读、听音能写,为学生今后的英语词汇学习奠定基础。

5. 诵读歌谣

- (1) 学生两人一组观察活动4插图, 教师提醒学生运用本单元核心句式 "What's this / that?" "What are these / those?"对图片进行问答。
- (2)教师第一遍播放活动4的录音,学生听录音,感受歌谣的节奏。教师提醒学生圈出歌谣中押 韵的单词,如dog和frog,sun和fun。
- (3)教师第二遍播放录音,学生跟读模仿。教师巡视并获取反馈,针对部分学生朗读有困难的句 子或单词进行示范朗读或重点指导。必要时,教师可重复播放相关句子。
- (4)教师可将全班分成几个大组,每组请一个学生带头诵读歌谣,该组其他组员进行跟读。教师 需注意引导全班学生理解并欣赏歌谣的意境和童趣。各组轮流诵读完毕, 师生共同评价并选出表现最 优秀的大组。



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的阅读文本是一段口头介绍,Han Lin向Peter介绍自己叔叔家的农场。为了让学生更直观地了解农场的风貌,教材还提供了与语篇内容相匹配的图片。Han Lin对农场的介绍遵循了从整体到局部的叙事逻辑,他首先开门见山地指出图片展示的是叔叔家的农场。Han Lin先谈到农场的面积以及占地面积最大的绿地。接着,他由远到近地介绍散落在草场四周的动物们,最后介绍农场的核心建筑物——叔叔的家。由于该介绍是口头文本,为了拉近与读者的距离,增加亲切感,文中多处使用了与读者直接进行互动交流的语言表达,如"Look!""How many ducks does my uncle have?""Let me count.""Look there!""Do you like my uncle's farm?"。这些表达使文本内容活泼生动,带有强烈的画面感,读者仿佛身临其境。此外,Han Lin的描述还具有一定的趣味性: Han Lin第一次数鸭子并没有数对,他突然发现大树背后还有一只小鸭子,便惊讶地说"Oh, no. Look there! Another duck is behind the big tree."。阅读理解部分的问题"How many ducks does his uncle have?"可以检测学生对这个细节的推测能力。

活动设计:活动1a—1e是完整的读写任务链,体现该板块以读促写的设计理念,其中1a是读前活动,1b—1d是阅读理解活动,1e则是写作任务。活动1a提供了一张农场的图片,画面内容与下面的阅读文本密切相关。该活动让学生观察图片,识别图中的动植物并勾选相应的词汇,这是为了铺垫话题词汇,复现有关颜色、动植物名称的词汇以及名词的单复数形式,为接下来的阅读作准备。活动1b主要让学生阅读课文并圈出Han Lin谈到的农场里的各种动植物。活动1c同样是训练学生获取细节信息的能力,同时也为了巩固话题词汇。活动1d则通过若干问题引导学生更深入地观察图片,挖掘图片中的信息,并运用所学语言进行表达。从活动1b到活动1d,分别让学生勾选和圈出名词、完成半开放式句子、提供完整答句,体现了教材在训练学生表达性技能方面由易到难、循序渐进的设计思路。活动1e提供了一个半开放式的短文写作任务,让学生转换视角,模仿阅读文本的叙事手法,添加更多农场的细节描述,以此培养学生的读图能力和写作能力。

学习目标

- 能够识别并说出家庭农场常见动物的英文名称,并能正确描述它们的大小、数量和 颜色。
- ▶ 能够根据阅读文本和图片内容梳理出农场介绍的叙事逻辑,准确获取细节信息。
- 能够运用本单元所学语言描写图片中的农场。

教学建议

1. 读前活动

- (1)教师用课件呈现1a的图片,并通过提问引导学生观察图片,如"What can you see in the picture?"。学生回答后, 教师可继续追问 "What colour is / are ...?" "How many ... can you see?"。
- (2)学生两人一组继续观察图片,教师在黑板上写下本单元的核心句式,引导学生根据图片开展 问答:

A: What's this / that?

B: It's ...

A: What are these / those? B: They're ...

教师巡查全班,请几组学生在全班展示问答,并对学生问答情况进行点评。

(3) 学生先阅读活动 la 指示语,再大声齐读图片下的八个短语。学生观察图片并独立完成活动 la。师生核对答案。核对答案时, 教师可请学生大声读出勾选的短语, 同时关注学生的发音是否正 确, 尤其是名词复数形式的词缀发音。

2. 阅读理解

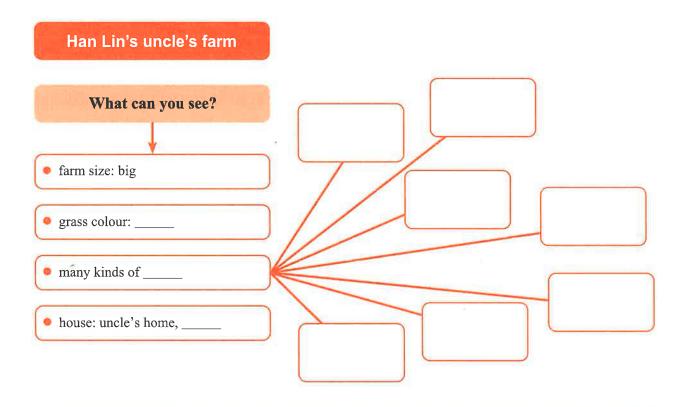
(1)根据插图预测阅读文本内容。学生观察活动1b的图片及文本,教师提问"What can you see in Activity 1b?" "What do you think the person is doing?"。学生通过观察可能回答"A hand.""A hand with a mobile phone." "A picture of a farm." 等等, 教师可鼓励学生大胆表达, 不必评价学生回答的内 容、同时对观察和表达能力表现突出的学生给予表扬。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生根据背景知识可以推测出这是一张农场的图片,文字是关于图片的描述或农场的介 绍。也许会有学生说有人在打视频电话,即一边拍摄农场一边给他人描述看到的内容。教师对合理 的猜测均可给予肯定。

- (2)圈出文本所提及的各类事物。学生阅读活动1b指示语,了解阅读文本的背景是Han Lin在介 绍自己叔叔的农场, 明确活动任务是在 la 图中圈出相关事物。教师让学生快速阅读语篇, 完成活动 1b。教师可根据学情设置阅读限定时间,可考虑设为30至40秒。活动完成后,学生两人一组核对答 案,然后师生核对答案。
- (3)填写细节信息。学生先阅读活动1c的指示语和所列问题,再仔细阅读文本。教师可引导学生 边读边画出与1c中三个问题相关的关键语句,然后完成1c中的三个答句。
- (4) 师生核对活动 1c 的答案。教师请三组学生分别朗读 1c 的问句和答句,除了核实填写内容外, 教师还需关注学生朗读时的语音语调,及时纠正学生发音上的问题。教师还可选取几名学生的填写结 果在全班展示, 并从书写规范的角度进行点评。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在这个练习中,学生容易将并列的数个名词间的逗号错写成中文里的顿号,教师可提醒 学生注意区别中英文标点符号的用法。在英语里,需要并列描述多个物品时,一般用逗号隔开不同 物品,最后一个单词前用and连接,且and前面可加逗号。

- (5) 探究文本叙事逻辑。教师启发学生关注阅读文本中关于事物描写的顺序,教师可以这样说: "Look at the picture and read Han Lin's introduction again. Then think about this question: In what order does Han Lin introduce the things on the farm?"。若感觉学生有困难,教师可给出提示,如"From near to far? From right to left?"。待学生充分思考后,教师请两至三名学生分享他们的发现。
- (6) 梳理阅读文本结构。教师可利用课件或学案展示下面的图表,帮助学生梳理文本结构及相关细节信息。



教学提示: 让学生基于所阅读的内容构建文本结构图或思维导图,是训练学生结构化思维的一种常见教学方法。了解文本结构可以帮助学生更好地理解阅读文章的概貌,抓住核心内容。以本单元阅读文本为例,通过梳理文本结构,学生能更加明确描述农场可以从哪些方面入手,可以聚焦哪些方面,这接下来的写作也有指导作用。

- (7)根据图片与文本结构图完成复述。学生两人一组,根据1a图片以及上一步骤完成的文本结构图尝试向同伴介绍Han Lin的叔叔的农场。口头复述训练完毕,教师可邀请几名学生在全班展示,并给予点评。
- (8) 朗读文本。教师让学生从阅读文本中找出所有的名词复数和名词所有格,教师将这些词写在 黑板上,并引导学生说出末尾的发音(注意: sheep 的复数比较特殊,它的复数没有变化,与单数形式 一样)。如:
 - /s/: ducks
 - 🌘 /z/: uncle's, animals, cows, chickens
 - /iz/: horses
 - /dz/: kinds

接着, 教师在黑板上列出下面两个句子, 并标注语调, 如下所示:

- He has pigs, thorses, tows, ducks, tsheep, and chickens.
- /One, /two, /three, /four, /five, ... \fourteen ducks!

教师简单说明降调有"终结、完成"的意味,升调有"未完成"的意味,然后播放阅读文本的 录音,学生跟读模仿。教师可适时暂停,获取学生反馈,并针对学生在朗读中出现的问题给予示范 指导。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在语言学习的初期阶段,语言的流利度比语言的准确度更为重要。朗读是培养语言流利 度的一个有效方法。教师应鼓励学生多朗读。在课堂上, 朗读可以采取多种方式, 如全班一起朗 读、小组朗读、同伴朗读、个人朗读等。朗读还能培养学生语感,书读百遍其义自见,这个策略同 样也适用于外语学习。

3. 写作活动

- (1)口头准备。学生浏览1e中的文章框架,两人一组口头练习补全短文信息。教师提醒学生注意 动植物的数量, 正确使用数词和动词的单复数形式。
- (2)完成初稿。学生根据文章框架独立完成初稿。教师提醒学生注意单词书写的规范、标点符号 的正确使用,以及单词间的空格等。
- (3)写作评价。教师在全班展示两名学生的初稿,请学生进行点评或提出修改意见。教师对初 稿及学生点评进行评价。学生两人一组,根据评价表进行互评,学生根据同伴意见修改初稿,最终 定稿。

Let's Ed	lit!		
Your Name Parts	ner's Name		
检查内容	建议		
Clear: 主旨、结构清晰			
Correct: 大小写、句子标点、句型使用正确			
Clean: 书写整洁、规范			
Spelling: 单词拼写正确			
The sentences I like:			

🤼 拓展活动:角色扮演

- 1. 教师先将学生分成五至六人一组,再用课件展示Fu Xing 爷爷的农家小院和Han Lin 叔叔的农场 作为活动背景。教师创设活动情境: Han Lin、Peter与同学们在Fu Xing爷爷的家里玩,Peter与英国的 亲朋好友进行视频连线,给他们介绍农家院或农场的样子。
- 2. 角色扮演。各组学生先讨论对话的流程和内容,然后开展角色扮演,教师巡视并提供必要的指 导。学生演练完毕,教师可请几组学生在全班展示,并进行点评。



🝳 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是让学生设计和介绍自己的农场、这一任务不仅能让学生充分发挥自己的想象 力,还能锻炼他们的语言表达能力和动手能力。活动2a的三个问题分别指向有关农场设计的三个内容 要点:农场里有什么、数量有多少、分别是什么颜色。这些也正是本单元的主要学习内容。活动2b展 示了一幅乡村的背景图,供学生绘制自己心目中的农场。学生设计农场时,可以结合地域特点,体现 本地文化。最后,活动2c让学生运用本单元所学词汇和核心句式,有条理地介绍自己设计的农场。

学习目标

- 能够积极参与小组讨论,并从讨论中获取相关要点,精心设计并绘制自己的农场。
- 能够使用本单元话题词汇和目标的型描述自己设计的农场。

教学建议

1. 活动准备

- (1)教师根据学生的语言能力水平进行混合分组,每组四至五人,每组由学生选出一位小组长。 教师准备以下材料:按小组数量打印的农场海报模板(建议 A3 纸大小)、组内成员互评表、彩色笔。
- (2)教师向全班同学介绍此次项目活动的目的、方法和预期的学习成果。本次项目学习的目的是 让学生以小组为单位设计自己心目中的农场,并使用本单元所学词汇和句型描述农场。

2. 小组合作完成农场设计

- (1)主题导人。教师课前准备一段短视频在课堂上播放,或通过图片展示不同国家或地区有特色 的农场。
- (2)头脑风暴。各小组学生根据活动2a的三个问题在组内展开头脑风暴,集思广益,讨论想要设 计什么样的农场,列出要点。
- (3) 学生在老师提供的海报模板上画出小组设计的农场。教师进一步要求学生使用英语单词标注 农场的不同区域和物体。
 - (4) 学生练习运用单元核心句式描述本组的农场,完成活动2c。
- (5)各小组选一名学生代表向全班展示海报,并根据活动2c中的内容描述农场的样子。教师请学 生对其他小组的海报进行点评。
- (6)项目活动评价。教师对小组项目活动成果进行评价。教师还可让学生根据互评表对小组成员 进行互评,在每个成员符合的栏目里打钩或标出等级。以下表格供参考:

组内成员互评表

评价内容	成员1	成员2	成员3	成员4
积极参与大部分小组活动				
乐于分享自己的想法,和小组其他成员积极				0
沟通				
按时完成自己负责的工作				
在小组内有突出贡献				

🦶 拓展活动:参观农场并撰写见闻

若条件允许,学校可组织学生参观附近的农场,认识当地的农作物和养殖的动物,了解牲畜的养 殖过程等。学生参观结束后,教师鼓励有能力的学生以小作文或日记的形式描写在农场的见闻,灵活 运用本单元所学目标语言。同时,学生还可配上农场的手绘图片或自行拍摄的照片。

三、课文注释

1. You can see many kinds of animals. 你能看到许多种动物。

句子中的kind作名词, 意为"种类"。kind常与many、all、different等词搭配使用,组成many kinds of (多种的)、all kinds of (各种各样的)、different kinds of (不同种类的)等短语。例如:

There are many kinds of books in this library. 这个图书馆有很多种书。

You can buy different kinds of fruit in that shop. 你可以在那家商店买到不同品种的水果。

I like to try all kinds of food in different places. 我喜欢品尝不同地方的各种美食。

2. He has pigs, horses, cows, ducks, sheep, and chickens. 他有猪、马、奶牛、鸭子、绵羊和鸡。

此句中连词and连接了句中并列的部分pigs、horses、cows、ducks、sheep和chickens,表示"和; 与"。由于英语中没有顿号,当我们列举三个或以上的人或事物时,每两个之间用逗号隔开,最后列 举的内容前面用 and 连接。and 既可以连接并列的词或短语,也可以连接句子。例如:

I often have bread, eggs, and some fruit for breakfast. 我早餐经常吃面包、鸡蛋和一些水果。

I can read English books, and I can sing English songs. 我会读英文书,而且我会唱英文歌。

3. How many ducks does my uncle have? 我叔叔有多少只鸭子呢?

how many和how much常用来询问数量, how many后面接可数名词的复数形式, how much后面 接不可数名词。例如:

How many books do you have? 你有多少本书?

How much milk is there in the glass? 杯子里有多少牛奶?

Starter Unit 3 Welcome!

The theme of this unit is country life, and students will become familiar with animals and plants often found in yards. They will also gain a deeper understanding of the common kinds of animals and plants on farms. It is hoped that students can use the information in this unit and their creativity to design their own farm at the end of the unit.

Section A

1a				
Teaching Tip	Catch and Say Play a game to help students review plant and animal names. Have students get into several circles depending on class size. Give each group a balloon or ball. The first student says the name of a plant or animal and then tosses the balloon / ball to another student. The student who catches the ball says a different plant or animal and then tosses the balloon / ball to a different student. The game continues until the teacher calls time. To increase full participation, make a rule that students cannot throw the balloon / ball to a student who has already said a word until all students have said one word. You could call students "out" if they don't follow the rule, and then at the end, declare the remaining students the winners.			
Culture Note	Baby Animals' Names In English, baby animals often have special names. For example, we often call baby chickens "chicks", baby dogs "puppies", and baby cats "kittens".			
Answers	\underline{B} baby chickens \underline{A} tomato plants \underline{E} dog \underline{D} flowers \underline{C} rabbits \underline{F} apple trees			

1b

Teaching Tip

What's This? What's That?

- 1. Teach students when to use "this" and "that" by telling them we use "this" to talk about something we are holding or that is very close to us. Demonstrate with several objects (e.g. hold a pencil and say, "This is my pencil."). Explain that we use "that" to talk about something that we have to point to, something that is not very close to us. Demonstrate with a pencil on a student's desk. Then write on the board:
 - What's this in English?
 - What's that in English?
- 2. Have students practise the questions using things in their classroom. Monitor the use of "this" and "that", and after the practice, review any problems before continuing.
- 3. Have students look at 1b and decide when to use "these" and "those". Provide a rule, as necessary. (e.g. use "these" instead of "this" when there are two or more of the same object, use "those" instead of "that" when the object is plural) On the board write:
 - What are these?
 - What are those?
- 4. Have students practise the questions using things in their classroom.

Culture Note	Animal Sounds In English, we have expressions for animals' sounds. A dog "says" woof. Rooster chickens "say" cock-a-doodle-doo. A cat "says" meow. However, there is no sound for rabbits since they are quiet.
Suggested Answers	A: What's that? B: It's a goose. A: What are these? B: They're ducks.

2a

Don't Say It!

Teaching Tip

Have students sit or stand in circles in groups. First round, students go around the circle, taking turns to say the numbers from 1 to 15 in order. Then have students name the odd (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15) and even (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14) numbers from 1 to 15. For the second round, students go around the circle, but every time there is an odd number, they clap rather than saying the number. For the third round, students clap rather than saying even numbers. To challenge students, have them create an original rule and play a fourth round. (For example, clap when the number can be divided by 3, so students clap when they hear 3, 6, 9, 12, 15)

2b

1. three 2. eight 3. eleven 4. twelve Answers 5. thirteen 6. fifteen 7. eighteen 8. twenty

Previewing Questions for Better Understanding

Teaching Tip

Before students listen to the conversations, teachers might want to explain that "What animal" means "What kind of animal" and "What plants" means "What kinds of plants". Have students look at the first part of each question and identify the type of information they will be listening for. (Conversation 1: kind of animal; Conversation 2: kinds of plants; Conversation 3: number / amount of something)

Answers

1. B 2. B 3. A, B

A: What's that? B: It's a cat.

Suggested

A: What are those?

Answers

B: They're tomato plants.

A: How many <u>rabbits</u> can you see?

B: I can see twelve.

2

Roll and Say

1. After completing Activity 2, have students close their books and recall the words from the chart, writing them on the board. Supply any missing words in random order (not in the same order as the chart in the Student's Book). Have students get into groups. Give each group two dice. Draw the chart on the board:

Optional Approach

a			е		i	()		1
/c1/	/æ/	/i:/	/e/	/aɪ/	/1/	/əʊ/	/ʊ/	/ju:/	/ N /
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Explain that if they roll an 11 or 12, they can say any word.

2. Students roll the dice and say a word corresponding to the number they roll. Other students check to make sure their pronunciation and choice are correct. Words cannot be used twice, so as the game continues, students may need to roll more than once so that they can say a word that hasn't already been said. Play continues until students have classified all of the words.

Answers

a		(e	j	i	()		ı
/cɪ/	/æ/	/i:/	/e/	/aɪ/	/1/	/əʊ/	/ʊ/	/ju:/	/^/
name	black	he	ten	nine	big	note	not	huge	bus
grape	that	these	pen	like	six	joke	box	tube	lunch

4

Tricky Rhymes

Optional Approach

Explain to students that words that rhyme are words that sound similar but usually have one sound that is different. Give two examples (sing and thing, big and pig). Give students a moment to find the words in the chant that rhyme (dog and frog, sun and fun). Tell students that since words that rhyme sound similar, they can be easily misunderstood. Point out to students that when pronouncing them, they should take extra care.

Section B

Answers

1a

✓ black and white cows

✓ a small lake

white sheep

1b	
	Thumbs Up, Thumbs Down
	After completing 1b, the teacher says sentences to check students' comprehension. If
	the statement is true, students put their thumbs up. If the statement is false, students
	put their thumbs down. To increase the challenge, teachers should have students
	correct false sentences. For example:
Teaching Tip	1. This is Peter's uncle's farm. (false; This is Han Lin's uncle's farm.)
reaching rip	2. The farm is small. (false; The farm is big.)
	3. There are no horses on the farm. (false; There are horses on the farm.)
	4. There are pigs on the farm. (true)
	5. Han Lin's uncle's house is green. (false; Han Lin's uncle's house is red.)
	After 1b, teachers might want to repeat the activity with any sentences students
	answered incorrectly.
Suggested	Things should be circled: the grass, pigs, horses, cows, ducks, sheep, chickens, and
Answers	the house

10	
Sı	ıggested

1. He has pigs, horses, cows, ducks, sheep, and chickens.

2. He has 14 ducks.

3. It's white (with a red roof).

1d

Suggested **Answers**

Answers

1. Things can be circled: the pond, the dog, the flowers, and the trees.

2. Han Lin's uncle has a pond, a dog, many flowers, and some trees.

3. The dog is brown. There are white, pink, and yellow flowers. The trees are green.

Suggested **Answers**

Han Lin's uncle has a big farm. He has many kinds of animals. Look at the cows. They are black and white. How many cows do you see? I see seven. Look at the ducks. They are white. How many ducks do you see? I see fifteen. Look at the chickens. How many chickens do you see? I see six. This is a big and beautiful farm.



Optional Approach	 Concentration Card Game Before class, make one set of cards for each group. One half of the cards have pictures of the animals the teacher wants to review (for example, a picture of two black and brown dogs). The other half have written phrases that match the pictures (for example, two black and brown dogs). Have students get into groups and give one set of cards to cach group. Teachers then review the vocabulary and expressions, as necessary. After that, students mix the cards and place them all face down in the centre of the group. Students take turns turning over two cards and saying what is represented in the picture / reading the expression. When the two cards are a pair, the student keeps the cards and gets one point. Play passes to the next student even if the previous student keeps the cards. Play continues until all cards have been taken. The winner of each group is the student with the most pairs (points) when time is called or all the cards have been
Suggested Answers	taken. I have cows, ducks, a dog, and a cat. I have four cows, 10 ducks, one dog, and one cat. The cows are black. The ducks are brown and white. The dog is brown. The cat is yellow.

Suggested Answers	Students may draw animals, a house, trees and plants, etc.			
2c				
Teaching Tip	Building Confidence To give students more confidence, after they have written their descriptions, have them first get into pairs and take turns reading their texts. When all pairs have finished, have them take turns reading their descriptions to the class. In large classes, teachers might want to have students read their descriptions in groups to save time. To encourage active listening, have groups take notes about things that are similar or different (for example, "All of us have ducks. Only Bob has a red house."). Have groups share these notes with the class after they have finished describing their farms.			
Suggested Answers	This is my farm. Look! I have <u>four beautiful dogs</u> . Look at the dogs. They are black and white. I have four white sheep and two black cows. I have a beautiful blue house. Do you like my farm?			

Optional Activity: Welcome to My Farm

Purpose	To help students use and remember the new words.	
Materials Required	None.	

Procedure

- 1. Explain to students that they have to imagine they have a farm. They want people to come to the farm to have fun, so they need to make a 30-second presentation about the farm.
- 2. Working with students, brainstorm the kinds of information they might want to include in their presentations, writing the ideas / questions to answer on the board. Examples:
 - What time does the farm open and close?
 - What animals are on the farm?
 - What can people do on the farm?
 - Why is the farm special or interesting?
- 3. Help students brainstorm vocabulary they might want to use, writing the English words on the board, as necessary.
- 4. Have students get into groups. Give students time to write their scripts for their presentations.
- 5. Have groups take turns giving presentations to the class.
- 6. To make the activity a competition, have the class vote for the most original farm, the best presentation, and the farm they want to go to the most. Then declare three winners.

UNIT 1 YOU AND ME

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元是七年级上册的第一个正式学习单元。本单元围绕"结交新朋友"这一主题展开,该主 题与课标要求的"<mark>人与自我</mark>"主题范畴中的"丰富、充实、积极向上的生活"子主题,以及"人与社 会"主题范畴中的"<mark>良好的人际关系与人际沟通"</mark>子主题内容密切相关。本单元在前面过渡单元的基 础上有所拓展,通过展现熟悉的校园日常生活情境,让学生学习如何用英语与新同学、新朋友、新老 师打招呼,如何询问彼此的基本信息,如何简单地介绍自己和他人,如何制作<mark>个人简介</mark>等。本单元的 主题意义在于让学生熟悉彼此,鼓励他们认识更多新同学、新朋友,积极参与人际交往,掌握基本交 往礼仪,建立良好的人际关系,同时也提升自我认知,从而更好地适应初中生活。

本单元的大问题是"我们怎么结交新朋友?"(How do we make new friends?)。为了探讨这个大问 题, Section A和Section B分别设置了两个引导性问题来统领板块内容。Section A在 "How do we get to know each other?"这个问题的引领下,让学生通过听和演练学生之间、师生之间的对话,感悟和体会 在不同场景下应当如何介绍自己和他人,如何询问和陈述个人信息,如何注意交往礼仪与文化差异 等;随后学生将灵活利用所学语言进行口头表达,实现语言迁移和运用。Section B则引导学生进一步 探究 "What do we need to know about a new friend?" 这一问题。该部分呈现了中学生结交笔友的网络平 台,学生通过阅读征友帖和回复跟帖,以书面交流的方式分享更丰富的个人信息,提升自我认知。这 些活动能让学生自然运用所学语言实现跨文化交际,同时也开阔了学生的视野,拓展结交新朋友的途 径和个人信息探讨的范围,比如年龄、国籍、家庭、宠物、最喜爱的食物、爱好等。

本单元的项目活动(*Project)和拓展阅读(*Reading Plus)属于选学内容。项目活动要求学生完 成个人简介,并基于其他学生的个人简介信息开展"猜猜看"游戏。这一综合语言实践活动可用于评 估和检测学生对本单元所学内容的掌握程度。从初中学生的人际交往和心理需求出发,本单元的拓展 阅读针对结交新朋友时可能存在的顾虑和疑问,为学生提供了一些切实可行的建议,以便他们在日常 生活中实践并积累经验。

总而言之,本单元围绕"结交新朋友"主题以及"How do we make new friends?"这个大问题,循 序渐进地安排了不同的语言活动,目的是提高学生对主题的认识,让他们明白"加强相互理解是建立 友谊的前提",鼓励他们主动了解别人,学会结交新朋友,建立良好的人际关系,使他们更好地适应 新的初中生活,塑造自信、阳光、积极、开朗的品格。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- ▶ 灵活使用各种日常问候语,并能根据身份与亲疏关系自然得体地与同学、朋友、老 师打招呼,简单地介绍自己,或将同学、朋友、老师介绍给他人;
- ▶ 通过观察语篇形态识别网络论坛发帖,理解网络征友帖的内容:通过对比两个征友 帖梳理出内容要点,分析表达内容的异同;关联自身个人信息,作出交友选择,完 成跟帖回复,表达结交意愿:
- ➤ 听辨并准确认读/i:/、/ɪ/、/e/、/æ/这四个音素,以及带有这些音素的单词,建立音素 意识;听辨并准确认读系动词be的常见缩略形式与非缩略形式;在口头表达中做到 单词发音清晰、准确, 句子朗读流畅;
- 理解含有系动词be的一般现在时的表意功能,并能正确使用该结构谈论个人信息: 能梳理和归纳一般现在时中系动词be与不同人称主语的匹配关系,初步建立英语主 谓一致的意识:
- > 关注单元内不同国家的文化信息,有探究和比较各国青少年生活的好奇心,通过比 较中英文姓名的构成形式理解文化差异:
- 理解和探究有效结交新朋友的方式、积极主动地结交和熟悉新同学、新老师、新朋 友,建立良好的人际关系,为尽快融入初中生活作充分准备。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

How do we make new friends?

内容分析

本单元标题 You and Me 贴合本单元"结交新朋友"的主题,一方面体现了学生进入初中校园后结 识新朋友并建立良好人际关系的思想内涵,另一方面还蕴含了"共建和谐校园人人有责"的意味,以 此来激活学生的主人翁意识。开篇页的主题图展现了学生熟悉的校园场景,在教学楼的走廊里,学生 三三两两地交流,一位女生正大方地向同学介绍自己的朋友。Look and share部分的三个问题与主题图 紧密相关,主要为了引导学生观察主题图,从人物身份、画面场景、人物情感三个维度分析其内容要 素,进而自然过渡到本单元的主题内容学习中。

开篇页呈现了本单元的大问题 "How do we make new friends?", 其目的是引领学生思考在新的校 园环境里如何结交朋友,从而进入主题探究。开篇页还列举了本单元的主要学习内容,包括学会用英 语介绍自己和他人,用含有系动词 be 的一般现在时讨论个人信息,制作个人简介,探究结交新朋友的 意义等内容。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察主题图识别图中场景,推测人物身份、人物关系及相关信息,积极投 入本单元的学习。
- 📂 能够通过浏览开篇页大问题和单元学习内容导引理解本单元的主要学习任务。

🧐 教学建议

- 1. 教师让学生把教材翻到单元开篇页,要求学生读单元标题,引导他们观察主题图,识别图中场 景,说出图中人物身份,并结合人物的表情和神态揣摩其情绪。教师可说 "Please open your books and turn to page 19. What's the title of Unit 1? Who are the people in the photo? Where are they? How do you think they feel? What do you think they are talking about?" o
 - 2. 教师请几个学生分享答案,并把关键词school、student、happy等写在黑板上。
- 3. 教师先让学生大声读出本单元的大问题,再将单元主题 Make new friends 写在黑板上,引导学生 说出结交新朋友时通常会询问的信息要点,然后把一些要点词汇列在Make new friends之下,如name、 class、school、introduce、each other等,带领学生大声朗读这些词汇。

教学提示: 在对大问题进行讨论和要点梳理时, 建议教师适时呈现 introduce 一词, 最好能呈现 introduce each other这一短语,可为后续内容的学习作铺垫。

4. 学生阅读本单元学习内容导引中能识别的内容,教师可适当加以解释或说明,确保学生理解本 单元的学习内容。

教学提示: 阅读开篇页的单元学习内容导引可帮助学生整体把握单元学习内容, 并根据这些内容制 订学习计划,激发其内在学习动力,对学习产生更高的期待。部分学生也许不能读懂其中的全部内 容,教师可基于学情考虑使用英汉双语或直接用汉语解释内容要点。教师需要有意识地引导学生尽 快熟悉各单元学习内容导引中的重点生词,这样可为后续用英语授课、创造沉浸式英语学习氛围作 铺垫。



内容分析

文本分析: 听力文本包含两个对话, 分别呈现了初中新生入学后在新校园里认识老师和新同学的 不同场景。第一个对话发生在学生之间: Peter与Song Meimei在校园初次见面, Meimei主动向Peter打 招呼,两人进行自我介绍并询问彼此信息,最后发现是同班同学。第二个对话呈现了Ella在校园里遇 见校长 Ms Li 的场景:由于 Ella 有一个双胞胎姐姐 Emma, Ms Li 打招呼时以为遇到的是 Emma。 Ella 表 明身份后,校长询问了她的姓氏和年龄信息。值得注意的是,这两个对话不仅呈现了日常问候的交际 用语,还融入了本单元的目标语言,即一般现在时中系动词 be 的用法。由于 Peter 和 Ella 的谈话对象不 同,他们所使用的表达也有细微的差别。例如: Peter与Song Meimei 打招呼使用的问候语 "Hello" "Hi" 较为随意,属于典型的非正式问候语;而 Ella 与校长 Ms Li 打招呼使用的问候语 "Good morning" "It's nice to meet you."属于比较正式的用语。Meimei询问同学的姓名时使用的"May I have your name?"显 得更加礼貌;而校长询问学生 Ella 的姓氏时所使用的"What's your family name?"则较为直接。让学生 发现并探究听力文本中的这些细节,理解日常交际用语的语用环境,不仅可让学生的英语表达更加得 体,还可以帮助他们与他人建立良好的关系。

这两个对话非常贴近学生生活。类似的校园日常生活片段将贯穿全套教材, 学生们也将通过这些 片段逐一认识教材中的主线人物,并与他们共同学习和成长。

活动设计: la-ld是一个完整的听说任务链, 其中 la是听前活动, lb-lc是听中活动, ld是听 后活动。活动1a帮助学生回顾过渡单元中打招呼的表达用语,并预先呈现了听力文本中的新句式,如 "How old are you?""Where are you from?""What class are you in?",这是为接下来的听作准备。活动 1b 要求学生依据所听内容排列图片的顺序,引导学生关注对话中人物的身份及对话语境。活动1c主要训 练学生获取细节信息的能力,这一活动提供了选项让学生圈选,主要是为了降低起始年级听力活动的 难度。听后活动1d鼓励学生主动结识更多新朋友并记住他们的名字。此处展示的对话范例旨在引导学 生模仿听力对话,灵活运用打招呼、询问和确认信息等不同句式进行交流。

学习目标

- 能够通过听获取对话中主要人物的个人信息。
- 能够根据所听内容和教材提供的图片信息判断对话中的人物关系。
- ▶ 能够使用对话中的句式与人问候、寒暄、询问并回答个人基本信息,包括姓名、班 级、年龄等。
- 📂 能够主动与小组内成员打招呼,相互认识,懂礼仪、讲礼貌,语言运用得体、正确。

🧐 教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)教师让学生小声读出活动1a中自己会读的句子,并勾出这些句子。教师巡视课堂,及时获取学生反馈,一边记录学生理解有困难的语句,一边记录那些能够勾出全部语句且读音流畅的学生。
- (2)教师用课件展示 la 的句子,请语言能力较强的学生示范朗读,并说出这些句子的中文意思。 学生每朗读一句,教师可重复朗读该句,向全班学生示范正确的读音、语调,学生集体跟读。
 - (3) 学生两人一组,一人读出书上的句子,另一个人尝试回答。
 - (4) 教师启发学生辨别部分语句的使用场景,以培养学生对语用功能的敏感度。教师可以这样设问:

What do we say:

- when we meet people?
- if we meet people in the morning? How about in the afternoon or evening?
- when we want to know someone's name?
- when we want to know what class a student is in?
- (5) 教师基于学情适度教授或复习疑问词,如what、what class、how、how old、where 等。若学生接受能力尚可,教师还可补充疑问词who。

教学提示: 生词是影响学生听力理解的重要因素。听前预教一些可能会影响听力理解的关键词语,可以帮助学生缓解心理压力,降低焦虑情绪,提升听力教学的效率,这对语言初学者来说尤为重要。

- (6)教师用课件呈现活动1b的配图,引导学生识别图片中的人物、地点与场合,让学生对听力活动形成期待。教师可这样提问:
 - How many people are there in the picture?
 - Are they in a classroom?
 - Where are these people?
 - Who are they?
 - Do you think they know each other?
 - What are the three students' names? Can you tell us?

待学生说出图中人物的身份后,教师可让学生在两幅配图下方写出他们的名字。

教学提示: 教材的各个板块通常以任务链的形式呈现,活动与活动之间具有关联性。因而教师在设计课堂教学活动时,需要考虑教学活动之间的逻辑衔接。比如,上述几个问题就是为了帮助学生建立活动 1b 和 1c 之间的关联性而设计的,旨在引导学生将活动中呈现的图片和文字信息建立起逻辑关联,从而激发学生对听力对话的情境和内容的探究兴趣,促进学生思维能力的发展。

2. 听力理解

(1)教师让学生浏览或小声读出活动1b的英文指示语,明确活动目的,确认学生理解two conversations、number the pictures、order的意思。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在初中起始阶段,教师要注意培养学生的读题意识,帮助学生尽快熟悉英文指示语,明确 活动要求。一般情况下,学生的行为表现可能是读得磕磕绊绊或有些吃力,这时教师不必着急,可以 用课件展示活动 1b 指示语的中文翻译, 让学生大声读出中文要求, 然后要求学生圈出英文指示语中 与"对话""给图片编号""顺序"对应的内容。教师若能坚持让学生读题、经过一段时间的训练、学 生跳过生词和利用关键词破解题目要求的能力就会得到提升,阅读策略也会随之加强。

- (2)教师播放第一遍录音,学生完成活动1b。师生核对答案。
- (3)学生浏览活动1c的英文指示语,明确活动目的。教师利用课件展示活动1c指示语的中文翻 译,让学生圈出英文指示语中与"再一次""圈出""彩色单词"对应的内容,确认学生理解again、 circle、coloured words的意思。
- (4)教师请几个学生大声读出活动1c的五个句子,教师纠正其读音,同时确认学生能准确读出彩 色单词并区分full name、last name、first name的意思。
- (5) 教师再次播放录音, 学生完成活动1c的听力任务。教师采取逐题提问的方式与学生核对答 案, 提醒学生用完整的句子回答问题。

教学提示: 让学生用完整的句子回答问题, 能在课堂上为学生创造更多的听说语言的机会, 同时也 有助于提高学生口语表达的规范性和完整性。教师逐题提问还能帮助学生熟悉更多更丰富的疑问句 式,比如:对于第二个句子,教师可使用 "What country is Peter from?" 或 "Where does Peter come from?"这两个不同问句提问。此外,教师还可以借着问题补充呈现本单元的生词,为后续的 学习内容作铺垫。

3. 听后活动

- (1)教师将学生进行分组,让他们多轮次互换角色朗读两个听力对话文本,为口语表达作准备。 教师可让学生从听力对话中找出活动1d可用到的语句,要求他们多读两遍以强化记忆。教师还可让学 生对比 "What's your name?"和 "May I have your name?"这两个句式,说出它们的区别,进而引导学 生关注语言的得体性。
- (2)教师可创设语境(例如:学校新来的外籍教师在早上遇见了班上的学生,于是两人开始对 话。),邀请一名学生与自己展开示范对话,或者请两名语言能力较强的学生为全班作示范。
- (3)学生与浏览活动1d的指示语,明确活动目的。教师可鼓励学生在小组内与多人对话,也可 让学生在班级中自由选择其他同学合作完成对话,获知对方的姓名和相关信息。教师巡视指导,获取 反馈。
 - (4) 教师请部分学生在课堂上展示他们的对话,并对他们的表现给予评价。

拓展活动: What's your English name?

若班级学生已彼此相识,教师可将教材中的活动 1d 替换为询问学生英文名的小组采访活动。教师可提供采访信息表及参考语句(如 "How do you spell …?" "Can you spell …?"), 为活动搭好支架。采访信息表示例如下:

Name	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
Chinese name			
English name			

每个学生在教室内用英文采访,至少询问两至三名同学的英文名字并完成信息表格。学生完成采访任务后,教师可请几个学生汇报他们采访的情况,并提供相关表达句式。例如:

- I'm ... My Chinese name is ... My English name is ...
- This is ... Her / His Chinese name is ... Her / His English name is ...

Pronunciation

🝳 内容分析

本套教材正式学习单元的语音板块大多包含两个活动,活动1侧重音素和拼读规则,活动2关注 朗读技巧。本单元语音板块的活动1主要让学生通过听读训练掌握/i:/、/ɪ/、/e/、/æ/这四个前元音的发 音,并逐渐建立起字母、字母组合与音素的对应关系。活动2主要结合本单元的目标语法结构,让学 生通过听读训练学会辨别并掌握一般现在时句子中系动词be的缩略形式与完整形式的发音。

🚺 语音知识

音素可以分为元音音素和辅音音素两种。发音时声带振动,呼出的气流通过口腔时不受阻碍,这样形成的音叫元音。不论声带振动与否,发音时呼出的气流通过口腔或鼻腔时受到一定的阻碍,这样形成的音叫辅音。发音时声带不振动的辅音叫清辅音,发音时声带振动的辅音叫浊辅音。元音按音素的组成可分为单元音和双元音。单元音由一个元音音素组成,双元音由两个元音音素组成。元音按发音时舌位的变化又可分为前元音、中元音和后元音。

学习目标

能够正确识别并读出四个前元音音素 (/i:/、/ɪ/、/e/、/æ/),并能区分长短音。

- 能够正确读出含有以上四个音素的常见单词。
- 能够识别并正确读出与系动词be相关的缩略形式,做到举一反三。



教学建议

- 1. 跟读模仿。教师播放活动1的录音,用课件呈现这四个音素符号(/i:/和/ɪ/、/e/和/æ/),并让学 生跟读,模仿准确发音。教师巡视课堂,及时纠正学生的读音问题。
- 2. 练习发音。教师可逐个讲解四个前元音的发音要领,同时示范如何正确发音。学生在教师的带 领下认真模仿,逐步掌握四个前元音的发音位置及口型变化。这四个前元音的发音要领如下:

音素	发音要领
	(1)前元音的发音特点是:舌尖抵下齿,舌前部向硬腭抬起;扁唇;/i:/是长音,其他都是
	短音。
	(2)四个前元音发音的差异:
/i:/	● 在四个前元音里,发元音/i:/时,舌前部抬得最高,牙床开得最小;上、下齿之间大
/1./	约能容纳—个小指尖;嘴角上提,呈微笑状。
/1/ /e/	● 元音/ɪ/的发音时间不仅比/i:/短,其发音部位和方法也与/i:/不一样;发元音/ɪ/时,
/æ/	舌前部略低一些,开口略大一些;上、下齿之间大约可容纳一个食指尖;发音短促
121	有力。
	● 发元音/e/时,舌位比/ɪ/低,开口比/ɪ/大,上、下齿之间仅容一个小指头。
	● 发元音/æ/时,舌位比/e/低,开口比/e/大,上、下齿之间可容下叠起的食指和中指。
	在这四个前元音中,发/æ/时,舌前部最低,开口最大,两个嘴角向后拉。

- 3. 听音练耳。教师可以补充更多单词供学生开展听音练习, 具体做法是: 教师大声读出每个单 词,学生认真听,然后让学生说出听到的是哪个音。例如:
 - Which sound do you hear, /i:/ or /ɪ/? (Steve, Jim, he, sister, she, in, English, dinner)
 - Which sound do you hear, /æ/ or /e/? (red, Frank, Jack, yellow, map, black, telephone, Eric, Helen, family, Jenny, dad)
- 4. "绕口令"吟诵。教师还可提供一些带语境的句子或小段子, 指导学生有节奏地朗读或诵唱, 通过反复训练使学生能够熟练区分相似音素。例如:

This is a ship; that's a sheep.

I see a ship; you see a sheep.

We see a ship and a sheep!

But a sheep is not a ship,

And a ship is not a sheep.

I see a cat; you see a net.

The cat is in the net;

The net is not in the cat.

We can see a cat in the net!

How can the cat get out of the net?

活动2

1. 教师先在黑板上写下以下三组缩略形式,然后示范带读活动2中A组的句子,让学生跟读并关注句中缩略形式的发音。

- I'm
- What's, It's, Peter's, Ella's
- We're
- 2. 教师示范带读活动2中B组的句子, 学生跟读句子并关注完整形式的读音。
- 3. 教师播放活动2的录音, 学生勾选所听到的句子。
- 4. 师生核对答案。核对答案时,教师要求学生读出完整的句子。
- 5. 教师再次带读带有缩略形式和完整形式的两组句子,让学生进行跟读对比,明确缩略形式和完整形式的读音区别。
- 6. 教师补充小短文, 学生先自己练习, 然后在课堂上朗读。每个学生读完后, 教师给予评价, 纠正不够准确的发音。以下短文供参考:

I'm Peter Brown. This is my friend Meimei. That's my friend Ella. Meimei, Ella, and I are all at the same school. We're good friends. What's your name? Who are your friends?



② 内容分析

文本分析:本部分呈现了一个三人对话场景:中学生 Chen Jie 与新认识的朋友 Peter 在校园里遇到了英语外教 Mr Smith,于是他们互相打招呼并展开交谈。由于谈话焦点的转移,对话分为两个部分,前半部分是 Chen Jie 与 Mr Smith 打招呼,并将 Peter介绍给他;后半部分是 Mr Smith 与 Peter之间的交流。对话既呈现了打招呼和介绍他人的交际语境和典型句式,又融入了本单元的核心结构——含有系动词 be 的一般现在时。此外,对话中 Chen Jie 纠正了 Peter 对 Ms Gao 的姓和名的错误理解,这一细节设计旨在提醒学生在与外国朋友相处时应注意文化差异,尤其在初次接触时,需要注意区分他们的名和姓,这也体现了对学生跨文化交际意识的培养。

活动设计:活动 2a—2e 是包含听、看、读、说四项技能训练的任务链。为了增加学生练习听力的机会,本套教材从七年级上册到八年级上册,Section Λ 的活动 2a 的材料均以非完整对话文本形式呈现,学生将通过听对话圈选或填写正确的词语构建完整的对话。本单元活动 2a 中不同词语的选项都是正确的,学生必须在听的过程中注意识别关键词才能选出正确的答案。这些额外的词语也为学生后续演练和创编对话提供了更多选择。活动 2b 聚焦对话内容的理解,要求学生把握对话的两个核心问题:

Mr Smith 的身份和Peter的班主任的姓名。活动2c则让学生梳理对话中两个人物(Mr Smith和Peter)的 信息,并以表格形式呈现,目的是深化学生对教材主线人物的理解,同时也是让学生进行文本信息结 构化的思维训练。2d是基于对话文本的角色扮演活动,要求学生将前面语音板块所学的朗读技巧与对 话演练有机结合起来,尤其要关注动词 be 的缩略形式的发音。教材的小贴士包含系动词 be 的各种缩 略形式,供学生在听录音时重点参考。2e是Section A的口头输出活动。基于过渡单元和本单元的内容 铺垫,学生对教材中的几个主线人物已有一定了解,此时引导学生谈论几个主线人物的个人信息是比 较好的时机,这既是对之前所学内容的总结和巩固,也是训练学生运用核心句式进行表达的能力。该 活动引导学生从交流彼此信息过渡到谈论他人信息,汇集了询问个人信息的不同特殊疑问句,同时还 巩固了第三人称代词 he / she 和 his / her 的使用。

学习目标

- 📂 能够通过听对话获取关键信息,包括人物的名字、身份、关系等细节信息。
- 能够识别对话中的打招呼用语和介绍他人的典型句式,并能在日常交际中得体运用。
- 能够识别对话中系动词be的缩略形式,流利朗读带有系动词be的缩略形式的句子, 并能模仿使用这类句式询问和回答个人信息。
- 📂 能够区分英汉人名构成的异同,并在交际运用中得体、正确地使用姓或名称呼外国 人士。
- 📂 能够主动结识班级新朋友,乐于融入新集体,积极参与课堂集体活动,享受其中乐趣。

教学建议

1. 听力理解

- (1)复习所学内容,导入新情境。教师要求学生合上课本,同时利用课件呈现活动2a的配图以及 前面已学的部分语句。例如:
 - How are you?
 - Nice to meet you.
 - May I have your name?
 - Where are you from, ...?

- What class are you in?
- What's your last name, ...?
- This is ...

教师先带读这些语句,帮助学生回顾和复习已学句型。然后,教师以问答的方式将学生带入对话 情境,了解对话人物。例如:

- Where are the people in the picture? Who are they?
- How many people do you think there are in the conversation?
- What do you think they will say in the conversation?

教学提示: 在授新课之前,教师引导学生回顾和复习已学的旧知识,激活学生的背景知识和语言储备,能够有效帮助他们积极应对接下来的学习任务。比如在课堂上开展对话教学时,教师可引导学生关注对话交流的情境,思考并梳理对话的主题、人物之间的关系、时间、地点等,这也是对话教学的起点和基础。

(2) 听录音补全对话。教师播放录音, 学生边听录音边完成活动2a。师生核对答案。

2. 阅读理解

- (1)教师让学生在教材插图上标出三个人物的名字,要求学生大声齐读2b的活动要求、所列问题及选项。教师确认学生认识对话人物后再让他们完成活动2b。
- (2) 教师核对活动 2b 的答案,然后问学生"What did Peter say at last / when he knew he was wrong?", 待学生回答"Oh, sorry! My mistake."后,教师引导学生学习对话中的生词和文化现象。

教学提示:核对答案之后,教师可适当补充有关 first name、full name、last name的相关文化背景知识(详细介绍请参见课文注释部分),让学生理解中英文化中人名的姓氏位置差异,提升学生对中西方文化异同的敏感性。由此还可借机说明Peter为什么会道歉,说出"My mistake!",顺便也能教授生词 mistake。

- (3)学生阅读活动2c表格,明确表格各项内容的意思。若学生遇到生词,教师可及时教授。随后,学生细读对话,完成活动2c。
- (4)学生先结对核对活动2c的答案,然后教师引导学生用完整的句子齐声说出答案,以培养他们根据信息词构建语句的能力。
- (5)教师利用课件或学案呈现各种功能项目,让学生再次阅读对话,从中找出相关表达。然后师生核对答案,让学生大声朗读加深记忆。若时间有限,教师也可将其布置为课后作业。具体功能项目可分为:
 - 日常寒暄问候: Hello / Hi! / How are you?
 - 🧶 乐于见面: Nice to meet you.
 - 介绍朋友: This is my new friend, ...
 - 询问班级: What class are you in?
 - 表达歉意: Oh, sorry!
 - 承认错误: My mistake.
- (6)教师引导学生关注活动2d的指示语和列出的缩略式,明确活动要求。教师播放录音,学生阅读对话,标记对话中所有缩略形式。

3. 语言操练

(1)教师逐句示范带读对话,或播放录音让学生逐句跟读。教师需要注意观察学生的跟读情况, 对学生朗读不顺畅或语音存在问题的地方给予帮助。

- (2) 学生分角色朗读对话,同时画出朗读起来有困难的句子。教师巡视,获取反馈。
- (3)教师将学生朗读时有困难的句子写在黑板上,然后逐句带读,直至学生能脱口而出。教师 还可让学生按照座位竖排的先后顺序进行连锁操练,具体做法如下:老师先问第一个学生(Peter) "What class are you in, Peter?",Peter回答"I'm in Class 1.",然后询问身后下一位同学"What class are you in, ...?",这样依次传递同样的问题,直到最后一个学生完成回答。

<mark>教学提示:</mark> 这种语言操练活动,源于英语教学法中的"听说法"。这种活动形式虽然机械,但易于 操作,主要是让学习者通过模仿、记忆、重复等方式学习,以养成语言习惯。这种语言训练尤其适 用于英语语言能力较弱,急需强化语言基础的学生。

如果想要加强语言交流的真实性或提升学生参与活动的积极性和主动性,教师可在学生完成表 格信息后,开展"猜猜我说的是谁"(Guess who I'm talking about)游戏活动,让学生陈述人物的 基础信息, 隐去人物姓名, 让其他学生抢答。

4. 角色扮演

- (1)学生三人一组进行角色扮演,完成活动2d。教师可鼓励学生辅以恰当的动作或眼神,提醒他 们在表演时不必拘泥于对话中的语言表达,可适当删减、修改或补充。学生在小组内完成活动时,教 师可尽量鼓励他们不看书进行表演。
- (2)教师选择几个小组在课堂上表演对话,然后对班级活动情况以及表演对话的小组表现进行总 结与点评。若学生语言表达能力较好,教师还可将这一活动改为课后作业,要求他们在模仿该对话的 基础上,编写并表演新的对话,并在下一节课的课堂上展示。

5. 口语表达

- (1) 教师引导学生回顾教材中的主线人物角色,可提出以下问题过渡到活动2e:
- How many main characters in our English book do you know? How many teachers and how many students? How many boys and how many girls?
- What are the teachers' names? What are the names of the students?
- (2) 学生自主完成活动 2e 的表格填写, 然后翻阅已学单元内容来确认答案。
- (3) 学生结对或分小组结合表格所填内容进行问答。教师可选择几组学生展示他们的对话并适当 加以点评。以下评价量表供参考:

Criteria	Yes	No	Comment
1 Speak loudly and clearly			
2 Use correct expressions			
3 Have good pronunciation			
4 Use body language (e.g., keep eye contact)			

🥵 拓展活动: The new friends I know in my English book

教师可要求学生结合课堂所学内容尝试用英语写几句话,向自己的亲朋好友介绍教材中的主线人 物,或者让学生用Song Meimei、Ella或Peter的口吻进行自我介绍。教师可鼓励学生在写完人物介绍后 大声朗读给家长听,请家长录音,然后上传到班级群或发朋友圈,以激发学生读和写的积极性。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>这个活动实际上是将口语活动转化为写作活动,为本单元Personal Profile 的活动开展预 写训练,也为Section B的写作活动打基础。

Grammar Focus

🥝 内容分析

本单元的核心语法项目包括含有系动词be的一般现在时态和人称代词。语法板块共有四个活动, 活动中的句子、短文和其他语言素材都与单元主题密切相关。这些活动的编排体现了以学生为主体的探 究式学习的特点,既有书面输出练习,也有口语输出活动,由控制性练习逐步过渡到开放性活动。

活动3a以问答形式呈现了本单元目标语言的典型句式,要求学生观察和归纳一般现在时中系动词 be的不同形式以及be与不同人称代词的搭配,聚焦主谓一致。活动3b是单句层次的练习,主要让学生 关注含有系动词 be 的一般现在时句式的表意功能,并根据句子意思和主语选择正确的系动词 be。3c 的 短文填空属于语篇层面的综合性练习。短文内容是一位名为Liu Yu的成都中学生的自述,她介绍了自 己和她的新同学及朋友 Sally Wood。文中复现了有关介绍的表达句式,还涵盖了含有系动词 be 的一般 现在时态以及不同人称代词,其目的是进一步巩固学生对人称代词和系动词be的搭配关系的认识,训 练他们在语境中灵活运用目标结构的能力。此外,这篇短文既可用作学生仿写的范文,又可用作活动 3d的铺垫。3d属于开放性的口头输出活动,要求学生给同伴介绍自己的一个新朋友。此处提供的人称 代词与物主代词的对应表以及人物介绍的表达框架,都是为了帮助学生能够自如地实现口头输出。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够识别不同的人称代词,并正确说出不同人称代词与系动词be(am、is、are)的 搭配关系,初步建立主谓一致意识。
- ▶ 能够正确运用系动词be(am、is、are)构建正确的陈述句和疑问句,并运用这些句 式介绍自己或他人。
- 能够根据不同的人称识别其对应的形容词性物主代词,并能结合语境正确使用这些 物主代词。

教学建议

1. 语法探究

- (1)教师引导学生回顾已学的人称代词,按照第一、二、三人称的顺序并分单数、复数两列写在 黑板上。全班齐声朗读这些人称代词。
 - (2) 学生齐声朗读活动 3a 表格中的句子, 圈出其中的系动词 am、is、are。
- (3) 教师引导学生观察左右两栏句子, 尤其关注句子末尾的标点, 明确"问题"及"回答"的共 性特征。
 - (4) 教师将学生分成小组,提出问题及相关表格供学生探究:
 - 不同的人称代词与系动词 be 是如何搭配的?
 - 左栏问句的句子结构有什么结构特点?
 - 右栏答语的句子结构有什么结构特点?

人称	代词(单数)	系动词be	代词(复数)	系动词be
第一人称	I		we	
第二人称	you		you	
	he			
第三人称	she		they	
	it			

一般现在时(系动词be)				
疑问句	句子结构:	例句:		
陈述句	句子结构:	例句:		

(5)各小组完成探究活动后,教师选择几个小组代表汇报结果。教师也可让学生阅读教材附录中 相关的语法注释来进行核对。师生共同总结探究结果:问句中系动词be在人称代词之前,答语或陈述 句中系动词 be 在人称代词之后;针对不同的人称代词,要使用与之对应的系动词 am、is、are。随后, 教师让学生再次朗读3a表格的语句,以强化他们对结构的理解。

教学提示: 在初中起始阶段,教师在进行语法教学时需设法引导学生关注语法结构的组成及其表意 功能。含有系动词 be 的一般现在时的句式是最基础的语法结构,教师务必要落实到教学环节中,切 忌因赶进度而造成学生掌握不牢。教师还可以将含有系动词be的一般现在时的结构特点编成顺口溜 来帮助学生记忆,比如:我是am,你是are,is跟着他、她、它。此外,教师在引导学生区分一般 疑问句和特殊疑问句时,可引入yes / no question和wh-question两个简单易懂的语法术语,并在 后续的教学中多使用。

(6)学生按照活动3a的要求在不同人称代词后填写am、is、are,并大声读出陈述句和疑问句结构。若学情允许,教师可通过摇头或左右摆手等肢体语言引导学生说出含有系动词be的一般现在时句型的否定结构。

2. 语法练习

- (1)学生自主完成活动3b,学生齐声朗读活动3b的句子以核实答案。学生每读一句,教师可请学生说出句子的意思。遇到有生词的句子,教师可适当加以说明和解释,如both和school band。
- (2)学生自主完成3c活动。教师巡视,获取反馈,然后就学生课堂作答情况进行点评。教师挑出学生出错较多的句子,让学生集体朗读,而后给予必要的分析和指导。
- (3)学生阅读3c的短文,将之作为示范文段进行学习。教师可让学生边读边标出生词,然后结合上下文语境进行解读,如hot pot、Australia、Sydney、a lot、Mapo tofu等。教师也可用课件呈现一些生词或短语的中文意思,告诉学生文章中含有这些内容,要求学生读后找出对应的词汇。
 - (4) 学生读完3c的短文后, 教师可提出以下问题以检测学生对短文内容的整体理解:
 - What does Liu Yu say about herself?
 - What does Liu Yu say about her friend Sally Wood?
 - What do we know about Sally and Liu Yu?

3. 语言运用

(1)教师引导学生阅读活动3d的指示语及相关提示,明确活动目的。关于人称代词和物主代词的对应关系,教师可适当加以巩固和拓展,以表格的形式列出其他人称代词和物主代词,然后让学生齐声朗读人称代词和物主代词。

人称	人称代词	形容词性物主代词
第一人称	I(我)	my(我的)
另一 八柳	we(我们)	our(我们的)
第二人称	you(你/你们)	your(你的/你们的)
	he(他)	his(他的)
第三人称	she(她)	her(她的)
岩二八 柳	it(它)	its(它的)
	they(他们/她们/它们)	their(他们的/她们的/它们的)

- (2)教师鼓励学生与自己不太熟悉的同学结对,先彼此询问个人信息,然后与熟悉的伙伴结对, 完成活动3d的介绍任务。
 - (3) 各小组完成任务后, 教师请几个小组在课堂上展示对话, 并加以点评。

🚨 拓展活动: 梳理结交新朋友的功能表达

教师可以通过项目化学习或课外作业的形式发布任务,要求学生总结和归纳与结交新朋友相关的功能表达,教师提供清单,学生回忆所学,将自己所知道的英文表达语句罗列出来。例如:

- 🧶 Greetings (寒暄问候):
 - Daily greetings (日常见面):

First time greetings (初次相见):

- Asking for people's names (询问姓名):
- Introducing yourself(自我介绍):
- Introducing others(介绍他人):
- Asking about age(询问年龄):
- Asking about people's class / grade / school (询问班级、年级或学校):
- Asking about countries / cities (询问国家或城市):
- Apologizing(表示抱歉):
- Admitting a mistake(承认错误):

Section B

What do we need to know about a new friend?



活动1a—2b

② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的阅读文本是两篇网络交友帖,具有新媒体语篇的一些形态特征,其中左侧的工具图标、折叠的界面、发帖用户名、发帖时间等都是网络讨论帖的典型要素。页面上方的Making new friends说明该页面的讨论主题是交友,而Pauline和Peter发帖的目的是结交笔友。网络论坛是常见的网络社交平台,主要为用户提供各种话题的交流空间,供人们分享信息、咨询问答、寻求帮助、互动交友等。真实的网络论坛帖子更接近口语化文本,行文中常用各种缩略语、表情符号等,语言风格因人而异。

教材提供的两篇网络交友帖内容要点较为相似,行文也较为规范,都介绍了自己的名字、年龄、居住地、家人、宠物、喜爱的食物、爱好等。语篇还暗含一些文化信息,比如,Pauline来自新加坡,Pauline Lee 即是典型的新加坡女孩姓名,她养的宠物鹦鹉会说中文。新加坡约七成人口是华人,官方语言有中文、英语等,英语也是该国行政用语。根据文中细节信息,可以推断出她很可能来自华人家庭。Peter来自英国伦敦,但由于生活在北京,喜欢长城,爱吃北京烤鸭。文本所提供的这些信息,也进一步说明了加强跨文化交流的重要性。学会用英语语言与世界沟通,结识新朋友,可以增进我们与来自不同国家和文化的人们之间的相互理解。

活动设计: Section B中的活动 1a—1d是阅读任务链,是后面的写作任务链活动 2a—2b的基础。活动 1a是读前步骤,该活动以照片墙的形式展示两位初中生的生活细节,要求学生将照片与相关词汇进行匹配,对两位主人公的信息进行合理推测,激发学生的阅读期待。照片内容具有明显的文化特征,

比如新加坡的鱼尾狮、英国的大本钟、中国的长城和北京烤鸭等,这些能够激发学生的讨论和想象。活动1b提供了两位主人公的网络征友帖,要求学生读后判断活动1a中的两面照片墙的归属,验证读前推测。活动1c通过表格引导学生梳理两位主人公的个人信息,深化对文本的理解。利用表格将文本信息结构化,有利于加强学生对文本整体的理解,从而避免碎片化的理解和记忆。1d为读后活动,旨在启发学生联系自身,基于个人情况与Pauline或Peter作比较,这一步骤也是为后续的写作任务作铺垫。

活动 2a—2b是本单元的写作任务链。写作任务与前面的阅读部分有紧密的联系,要求学生选择给 Pauline 或 Peter 回帖,与她(他)交朋友。为了确保学生能够顺利完成写作任务,2a提供了几个关键句式,让学生结合自己的信息补全句子。这些句子逻辑上有先后,简单概括了学生的个人情况。2b 将这些句子串联在一起,补充了网络回帖的语言要素,形成一个完整的文本框架: 先问候并介绍自己的基本信息,再表达交友意愿(I'd like to be your friend.),然后陈述自己与对方的相似点(I love … too.),提供更多具体细节(My favourite … is …),最后提出回复请求(Please write to me.)。

学习目标

- 能够识别网络论坛征友帖的形态特征,读懂发布者的自我介绍。
- 🃂 能够通过观察图片和阅读论坛发帖,梳理发帖人的自述内容要点,完成人物信息表。
- 能够将发帖人的个人信息与自身情况作比较,运用所学句式简要介绍自己。
- ※ 能够基于写作目的和要求,在教师的指导下为书面输出作准备,比如梳理回帖文本结构,列出自我简介的内容要点。
- 能够将本单元所学的词汇、目标结构、句型以及各类功能表达迁移应用到自己的写作之中。
- ▶ 能够通过自评和互评,不断改进自己的作品,使之完善。
- 🔛 能够乐于结交新朋友,认识到跨文化交流的重要性,树立跨文化交际意识。

囫 教学建议

1. 读前准备

- (1)教师用课件展示活动 la的两面照片墙,引导学生观察图片并熟悉相关词汇,对照片所承载的文化知识点提供适当说明或拓展。例如:当教师谈到什么是 photo board 时,还可借机呈现更多含有board 的词汇,积累相关文化词汇,如 blackboard、white board、noticeboard等。
 - (2) 学生自主完成活动1a, 师生核对答案。
 - (3)教师用课件展示活动1b的文本图片,学生快速浏览后回答以下问题:
 - Where can we find this kind of text?
 - What are the two people's names?
 - What topic are they talking about?

教学提示: 这三个问题旨在让学生了解新媒体平台上的发布内容, 熟悉互联网论坛文章的呈现形 式、语言风格与互动特点。教师在核对答案时,还可呈现与新媒体相关的其他词汇供学生识别和 学习。

2. 阅读理解

- (1)快速阅读,获取关键信息点。学生按照活动1b的要求快速阅读两篇网络帖子,完成活动1b。 师生核对答案时,教师需注意引导学生说出文中的信息点,以及这些信息点与活动1a中的哪张照片形 成呼应关系,这样能让所有学生直观地感受到从获取信息到处理信息并得出结论的全过程,帮助他们 形成正确的思维习惯,提升文本解读的能力。
- (2)分析作者写作目的。学生再次阅读两个网络征友帖,教师提出问题"Why do Pauline and Peter write such posts?",逐步引导学生关注发帖人的写作目的。
- (3) 获取文本细节信息。学生齐声朗读活动1c表格项目栏中的英文词语,教师确认他们理解活动 要求,然后让学生自主阅读文本,完成活动1c。教师巡视,获取反馈,最后师生核对答案。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生在阅读课文时搜寻问题答案的行为表现往往直接折射出其阅读习惯。教师需要注意 观察班级学生的阅读行为,对学生良好的阅读习惯给予鼓励,对不良的阅读习惯要及时纠正。就本 活动而言,学生若能根据表格项目栏的提示在文本中找到对应的信息词或句子,用手指快速定位信 息点,另一只手抄写填表,教师就可对其阅读行为进行鼓励。

- (4) 朗读课文,加强语音训练。教师请学生依次朗读阅读文本的句子,对朗读时出现障碍或错误 的地方予以纠正,对朗读表现良好的学生给予鼓励和表扬。
- (5)关注文本中的语言点。教师鼓励学生从阅读文本中找出一些"好词好句"进行标注,然后让 学生结对或在小组内进行分享。随后,教师可针对文本中以下语言点进行整体学习:
 - 描述居住地: I live in ... (place) with ... (people)
 - 运动或音乐活动: play tennis, play the guitar
 - 表达喜好: I like ... / My favourite ... is ...
 - 表达交友意愿: Do you want to be my friend? Would you like to be my friend?
- (6) 开展小组交流活动。学生阅读活动 1d 的指示语,明确活动要求。教师可建议学生先在椭圆区 域写出关键信息词, 思考并规划自己的陈述思路。学生分小组以口头交流的形式完成活动1d。最后, 各组推荐一名同学向全班分享比较结果。

3. 写前准备

- (1)教师引导学生回顾和复习本单元听力和阅读文本中与自我介绍相关的词汇及句型,为学生后 续的写作提供语言支架。例如:
 - Country / City:
 - Family:
 - Pet:

- Food:
- Mobby:
- (2)学生自主完成活动2a,教师巡视。教师请几个学生大声朗读自己写的句子,然后适当点评并纠正其中的错误或不妥之处。

4. 写作训练

- (1)教师要求学生先熟悉活动2a的句子,然后让他们将句子连接成逻辑合理且顺畅的小段落,实现组句成篇。
- (2) 学生阅读活动 2b 中的回帖范例,教师提醒学生关注其中表达结交意愿的句式,即"I'd like to be your friend.""Please write to me."。
 - (3)教师引导学生结合自身情况和意愿将回帖补充完整,完成活动2b的任务。
 - (4)教师巡视,获取反馈,适时引导学生展开自评和互评。以下评价量表供参考:

Criteria	Yes	No	Comment
Correct use of greetings			
. Clear self-introduction			
(name, age, city, hobby, etc.)			i i
Correct use of "be"			
Correct spelling			
Correct punctuation			
Overall			

(5) 教师分享部分学生的作品,再结合上面的评价量表进行点评。

教学提示: 教师不宜鼓励学生在回帖中使用过长的句子或文段, 因为常见的网络跟帖大多是非正式文体, 语言简洁易懂。此外, 学生正处于初中起始阶段, 教师应当更关注学生的语言基础和日常写作习惯, 比如应多要求和鼓励学生把字写好, 做到字迹工整、干净整洁, 大小写及标点正确、规范。



🥝 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是制作个人简介,最终教师可带领学生将个人简介结集成册,形成班级人物简介。活动3a通过四个问题提示学生列出个人相关信息,为完成下面的个人简介作准备。活动3b提供

了个人简介的范文作为撰写参考。该文主要内容与Section B的阅读文本类似,都包含人名、年龄、居住地、爱好等方面的介绍。不同的是,个人简介一般不会有论坛帖中常用的交互性语言,因而其语言要稍正式些。活动3c设置了一个猜测游戏,让学生随意抽取一位同学的个人简介,并口头转述给全班同学,让他们猜出描述的是谁。该项目活动的目的是让学生充分运用本单元所学语言完成真实的任务,一方面加强学生的口语和书面表达能力的培养,另一方面也为学生提供展示自我的机会,增进同学之间的了解,还为建立友谊和形成和谐的人际关系打下基础。这些教学内容最终指向本单元的大问题,即"How do we make new friends?"。

学习目标

- 能够运用本单元所学语言,写出完整的个人简介,并能进一步修改完善,形成正式的学生简介页,放入班级人物简介册。
- 能够积极参与教师组织的项目活动,乐于分享交流。
- 能够通过个人信息的分享,增进同学间的彼此了解,尽快融入新的初中生活。

@ 教学建议

1. 学生齐声朗读活动3a列出的问题,教师请几个学生用完整的句子回答。学生独立完成活动3a,将自己的回答填写在横线上。

教学提示:借助问题构建写作思路是一项重要的写作策略。教材精心设计的问题可以帮助学生构思,这样能让写作思路更明确,写出的内容逻辑更清晰、更有层次感。

- 2. 学生阅读3b的活动要求,教师向学生解释personal profile的含义,然后和学生一起总结制作个人简介所涉及的要点。例如:
 - What's your name?
 - Ilow old are you?
 - Where are you from?
 - Which country are you from?
 - Who do you live with?
 - Do you have a pet? If you do, what animal is it? What's your pet's name?
 - What's your favourite food?
 - What's your favourite sport?
 - Who do you often play sport with?

...

- 3. 学生模仿 3b 的范文撰写初稿, 教师巡视指导。学生先展开自评和互评, 然后在教师的指导下修 改定稿。
- 4. 教师将学生的作品收集到一起, 然后邀请几位学生从中任意抽取个人简介, 为全班同学转述内 容,其他同学猜测描述的是谁。教师注意调控时间和氛围,并及时进行点评。对于学生撰写的优秀文 本,在全班学生猜出人物后,教师可请原作者宣读自己的简介,供大家学习借鉴。

拓展活动

教师可基于实际学情,将教材的项目活动布置成项目化作业,使学习延伸至课外。学生完成个人 简介终稿后,可让他们基于自己所写内容选择合适的照片,并将照片贴在个人页面上,适当加以装饰 或设计,制作成各具特色的电子版个人简介,也可拍摄成短视频,发布到班级群或者班级小管家中。

Reflecting

🥝 内容分析

反思板块与本单元开篇页的学习目标首尾呼应,旨在通过自查清单引发学生思考,引导他们回顾 本单元的学习过程和学习体验,从而形成相对准确的自我评价。本单元主要从语言功能的维度设计了 自查要点,在完成本单元的学习后,学生需要从这些方面反思自己:是否能得体地问候他人,是否能 顺利地介绍自己或朋友,是否掌握了系动词be不同形式的用法,是否能正确使用本单元学习的语言结 交新朋友。

本单元以价值引领句 "Getting to know each other is the first step in making new friends." (结交新朋友 的第一步是相互了解。) 结束,这是对本单元主题意义的提炼。对于初中学生而言,学会建立良好的 人际关系,是适应学校新生活的一部分,同时也是享受中学校园的美好时光的开端。本单元聚焦如何 结识新朋友、如何介绍自己和他人、如何了解新朋友等与日常生活交际紧密相关的问题,这为学生后 续学习其他与朋友相关的主题奠定了基础。

教学建议

- 1. 教师引导学生观察 Reflecting 的表头部分的内容,让学生尝试说出每一栏的具体用意。若学生理 解有困难,教师可适当说明或解释。
- 2. 教师让学生大声朗读 Reflecting 表格第一栏的四个句子。若学生朗读有困难,教师可带读这些句 子并适当加以说明,确保学生理解每个句子的意思。然后,学生进行自查,完成表格的勾选,教师巡 视并获取反馈。

教学提示: 若时间和条件允许, 教师可将表格中的部分内容进行细化, 让学生翻阅自己的练习册
或作业本,从中发现自己已经掌握的优势项目以及存在的薄弱环节。比如,教师可将"I can greet
people."改为填空题:
I can use expressions like "" to greet my classmates or friends.
I can use expressions like "" to greet my teachers or older people.
再如,教师还可将第三句"I can use <i>am</i> , <i>is</i> , and <i>are</i> correctly." 拆分成三个句子,让学生填空。
• I can use am with
I can use is with
I can use are with

3. 学生完成反思评价表后, 教师可根据收集的反馈对一些学生的困难和问题给予有针对性的帮助 和指导。同时,教师也可借此反思自己的教学并加以改进。

三、课文注释

1. He's from the US. 他来自美国。

这句话相当于 "He comes from the US."。be (am / is / are) from 或 come from 后面接国家或具体的地 名,可用来说明某人的国籍或籍贯。例如:

Mr Black is from the UK. 布莱克先生来自英国。(布莱克先生是英国人。)

Zhang Nan comes from Shanghai. 张楠来自上海。(张楠是上海人。)

2. What class are you in, Peter? 彼得, 你在几班?

what可与一些名词组成疑问词组,如what class、what grade、what school、what colour等,用来询 问班级、年级、学校名、颜色等。例如:

What grade are you in? 你在几年级?

What school is he from? 他是哪所学校的?

What colour is her schoolbag? 她的书包是什么颜色?

3. Hui is her first name. 慧是她的名字。

在英语中, first name表示"名字", last name表示"姓氏;姓"。此外, family name或surname也 表示"姓氏"。full name则表示"全名"。

汉语人名是姓氏在前,名字在后,比如Wang Yaming, Wang 是姓,Yaming是名。英语人名是先 说名字,再说姓氏。比如Peter Brown, Peter 是名,Brown是姓。这就是为什么英语中的名是first name, 姓是last name。

需要注意的是, 当人们由于旅行、求学或工作原因去一些英语国家时, 通常需要填写一些正式公 文或者证件(比如入学申请表、银行卡等),这时往往需要按照英语的姓氏排列方式来写,一些表格 中会明确标有 surname / last name 和 given name / first name 的字样, 因此需看清表格要求填写的是姓还 是名。

4. Would you like to be my friend? 你愿意和我交朋友吗?

would like to 表示 "想要做某事", would love to 也表达类似的意思。例如:

My parents would like to meet you. 我父母想见见你。

They would love to see some of your photos. 他们很想看看你的一些照片。

这两个短语可缩略为'd like to 或'd love to。例如:

I'd like to be your friend. 我愿意做你的朋友。

We'd love to hear from you. 我们非常想听到你的消息。

Unit 1 You and Me

The theme of this unit is forming new friendships. Students will learn to introduce themselves and others to new people. They will learn how to share and ask for personal information to get to know each other better, through casual talks and social media such as online forums, culminating in the production of personal profiles. They will learn more about the main characters in the book as well as children from other cultures around the world. They will learn to use the verb "to be", personal pronouns as well as new vocabulary. The aim of the unit is to answer the Big Question "How do we make new friends?" with practical language but also with other useful tips and advice.

Opening Page

Teaching Tip	Role-play Ask students what the students in the theme picture might be saying to each other, writing common phrases on the board. Then have them role-play the conversation in small groups. For example: A: Morning, Li Lei! B: Hi, Yang Hui! How are you? A: Fine, thanks. This is my friend, Chen Juan. B: Hi, Chen Juan. Nice to meet you. C: Nice to meet you too, Li Lei.
Suggested Answers (Look and share)	 They are students at the same school. They are in a corridor at their school. I think they feel happy because they are smiling.

Section A

1a	
Teaching Tip	More Greeting Expressions There are many expression variations of common greetings in English. Students will encounter these naturally and learning them is important for building fluency and confidence. For example: ### Hi! / Hi there! / Hey! / (Good) Morning! ### Good / Great to meet you. ### I'm, what's your name? / May I have your name? ### What / Which class are you in? ### Where are you from? / Are you from here / (name of the city / town)?
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

1b	
Teaching Tip	Starting and Ending a Conversation Perhaps the most common and well-known greeting in English is "Hello / Hi". It is also common to refer to the time of day when greeting someone, using the expressions "Good morning / afternoon / evening". When greeting someone we know, this is often followed by a variation of "How are you?". When meeting someone we don't know, an opening greeting is usually followed by exchanging names and then basic questions about general information (e.g. age) or details relevant to the circumstances (e.g. about classes in the school context). When meeting someone new, it is polite to end the conversation with "Nice to meet you. / Nice to meet you too".
Culture Note	People often greet one another with a smile. It is polite to nod and smile back. People might wave from a distance to get someone's attention and to gesture hello. Close friends and relatives often give each other a hug or pat on the back when they greet one another. Business people often shake hands. Forms of Address In the US and UK, students do not usually call teachers by their first name in elementary school, middle school, or high school. For example, students would address Jane Smith as Ms Smith, Mrs Smith, or Dr Smith, depending on her degree, marital status; and preference. John Smith would be Mr Smith or Dr Smith, depending on his degree. At university, however, students are usually 18 years of age and therefore legally adults in society. Therefore, relationships are less formal, and some teachers ask their students to call them by their first name, e.g. Jane. On the other hand, some teachers
Answers	prefer that their title be used, e.g. Professor Smith (Prof Smith) or Doctor Smith (Dr Smith). 2, 1

1c			
First and Last Names			
	In English, your given name is referred to as your first name. Your family name is referred to as your last name (or "surname"). The family name is written after the given name. Some people may also have one or more middle names (e.g. John		
Culture Note			
	Edward Smith)		
Answers	1. Brown 2. the UK 3. Class 1, Grade 7 4. Miller 5. 12		

1d	
Teaching Tip	Eye Contact After students have practised a role-play several times and are more confident with the conversation, encourage them to depend less on the textbook and to establish eye contact with a partner while they are speaking and listening. This is an important aspect of communication and is seen as friendly and polite in Western cultures. It shows somebody is listening attentively to the speaker and helps to build a connection between those involved.
Sample Conversation	S1: Hello! I'm James. May I have your name? S2: Hi, James! I'm Sue. Nice to meet you. S1: Nice to meet you too. What's your last name? S2: It's Smith. What's yours? S1: It's Zhang.

ronunciation

	onunciation	
	Drills 1. Draw two columns on the board and the other.	d write the phoneme /i:/ on one side and /ɪ/ on
·	/i:/	/1/
Optional Approach	u say out loud and point to the side of the board he word in the correct column. You can include sh, sister, rich, three, this, easy, we, which. For of the board.) s students to think of other words with these cessary to check phonetic spelling.	
	/i:/ eat, she, feet, three, easy, we it, 4. Repeat the activity with the sounds /e/	/t/ , English, sister, rich, this, which e/ and /æ/ and the following words: /æ/
		dents to think of other words with these sounds, to check phonetic spelling.

	Chant
0.41	/i:/ Three sheep have twelve feet. Three sheep have twelve feet.
Optional Approach	/ı/ Does it fit on the ship? Does it fit on the ship?
Approacn	/e/ Ten men have ten heads. Ten men have ten heads.
	/æ/ The bad man had a black hat. The bad man had a black hat.

	Comn	non Contractions	
		I am, you are, he / she / it is, we are, they are	
		I'm, you're, he / she / it's, we're, they're	
8	be	what is, who is, where is, there is, that is	
		what's, who's, where's, there's, that's	
Teaching Tip		to Read Contractions	
	Contractions are pronounced differently to the source words. For example, "th		
	are" when contracted to "they're" /ðeə(r)/ sounds the same as "there / their" /ðeə(r)/.		
	Pointing this out to students can help them with pronunciation. Using words that		
	rhyme with contracted words can also help with pronunciation. Introducing phonetic spelling helps this even more, for example, "I'm" /aım/ is the same as "time" /taɪm/		
	(not "am" /æm/).		
	Say tl	he Contractions	
	Read some sentences to the students. Have students raise their hands and say the		
contractions.			
Optional		I'm Ben. I think we're in the same class.	
Approach	2. He's a new student. Let's ask him his name.		
	3. What's our homework? I've left my notes at school!4. Who's your friend? I'd like to meet him.		
		nere's she from? She's from Canada.	
Suggested Answers	1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A		

Greeting Variations

There are many ways to answer the question: "How are you?" Often, we might just say: "I'm fine, thank you. / Fine, thanks." However, the tone we use to reply can change the meaning. For example, if "I'm fine." is said with a positive rising tone and a smile, it means the speaker is feeling good. However, if said with a lower falling tone, it might mean the speaker isn't so good, and is perhaps hoping the other person will ask more questions about how they are.

Positive / Very positive	 Great, thanks! I'm (really) well, thank you. I'm good.
Positive / Negative (depending on how it is said)	 I'm fine, thanks. I'm okay, thanks. I'm all right, thanks. Not (too) bad, thanks. Busy!

Teaching Tip

It is always polite to add a question back to the other person. For example:

- I'm good, and you?
- I'm good. How about you?

"What class are you in?" vs "Which class are you in?"

In general, "Which" is used when there are limited possible answers, whereas "What" is used when there are lots of possible answers. However, in this case, "What" and "Which" are both OK and interchangeable.

How to Introduce Others

There are various ways to introduce someone to another person. For example:

- Peter, this is Jane.
- 🎐 Peter, this is my friend / classmate / sister, Jane.
- Have you met Jane?
- Let me introduce you to my friend, Jane.
- 🏴 Jane, this is my friend, Ben.

Name Order: English vs Chinese

Talking with a Teacher vs Talking with a Friend

When talking with a teacher or member of staff at school, students should be polite and use formal greetings and expressions. They should address teachers with their correct title and surname. When talking with friends and family, informal greetings and expressions are acceptable.

In English, the family name (or "surname") follows the given name (or "first name"): e.g. Jane Smith. In Chinese, the family name comes before the given name.

Suggested **Answers**

Culture Note

Words that should be circled: good; friend; What; Oh, sorry!

| UNIT 1 YOU AND ME | 117

English, apostrophes are used for	possessives as well as contractions.
Possessives Contractions	
That's Ben's book.	I am Tom. = I'm Tom.
Those are the students' books.	We are here. = We're here.
	Possessives That's Ben's book.

	Mr Smith	Peter
Answers	Country: the US	Class: 1
	Job: English teacher	Class teacher: Ms Gao

referring to, different teachers, also shown by the plural "teachers".

1. B

Answers

2. A

2e	
	Character Study
	Looking at the pictures, ask students questions about one of the characters. Write the
	character's name on the board, e.g. "Peter". Ask them a question "Who is his class
	teacher?" to bring attention to the possessive adjective in the answer. Add a few more
Teaching Tip	questions that use the possessive adjective "him". For example:
g	A: What colour is his hair?
	B: His hair is blonde.
	A: What is his home city?
	B: His home city is London.
	Have students ask questions to each other about the characters in pairs.
	S1: (pointing at the picture) What's his name?
	S2: His name is Peter Brown.
	S1: Where's he from?
	S2: He is from London, in the UK.
Sample	S1: How old is he?
Conversation	S2: He is 12 years old.
	S1: What class is he in?
	S2: He is in Class 1.
	S1: Who is his class teacher?
	S2: His class teacher is Ms Gao.

Grammar Focus

3a				
	Be "Be" is an irregular verb that is used as a main verb to express:			
Teaching Tip	Use		Example	
	Quality / State (temporary or permanent)	They are very fast. The pet bird is beautiful.		
	Age	I'm thirteen.		
	Nationality	He's Canadian.		
	Relationship	We are best friends.		
	Place	The st	ation is over there.	
	Time	What	time is it? It's one o'clock.	
	Job	She is a teacher.		
	Behaviour / Personality	I' m an	igry!	
	Are you Peter?		Yes, Iam/ No, Imnot.	
	Are Meimei and Peter in the same cla		Yes, they are / No, they aren't.	
A	Where is Mr Smith from?		He's from the US.	
Answers	What class are you in?		Imin Class 1, Grade 7.	
	Who syour class teacher?		Its Ms Gao.	
	I <u>am</u> You <u>are</u> He / She / It <u>is</u> We / They <u>are</u>			
3b			22	
Answers	1. are, are 2. am, is 3. is	4. is	5. are	
3c				
Culture Note	City Names In English, city names are given bef I live in Sydney, Australia. He's from Chengdu, China.	ore their	r countries. For example:	
Suggested Answers	am, am, is, is, is, are			
d				
Sample Introduction	Hi! This is my new friend. Her name sport is tennis.	e is Kar	en. She's from Thailand. Her favourite	

Optional Activity: Is This Yours?

Purpose	To help students use the target language correctly.	
Materials Required	One piece of paper for each student in class.	

Procedure

- 1. Elicit from students the names of some of their belongings and write them on the board (e.g. watch, bag, jacket, bike, pet).
- 2. Pass out the paper to the students.
- 3. Have each student draw a picture of one thing that belongs to him / her. Instruct students NOT to write their names on the paper.
- 4. Collect the pieces of paper, mix them up, and redistribute them to the class.
- 5. On the board, write:
 - A: Is this your ...?
 - B: Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
- 6. Model the activity with a student. For example:
 - T: (showing a picture of a pen) Is this your pen?
 - S1: No, it isn't.
- 7. Have students start the activity by trying to find the owners of the things in the pictures. They should talk to one student at a time. When they find the owner, they can return their picture. When they return and receive their own picture, they can sit down. (If possible, try to use students' own real things instead of pictures. Using realia to teach in the classroom helps to increase students' interest in learning.)

Section B

1a	
	Photo Boards A photo board is a large board, usually made of cork, wood or metal, that is placed on
	a wall. Pins or magnets are used to hold photos, pictures, or articles on the board to create a display.
	Singapore
	Singapore is an island country and city-state in Southeast Asia. It has four official
	languages: Chinese, English, Malay, and Tamil. The photo shows the famous "Merlion", the official mascot and symbol of Singapore. It is a mythical creature
	with the head of a lion and the body of a fish. There are actually six Merlion statues
Culture Note	throughout the country.
	,
	London
	London is the capital and largest city of England, and the United Kingdom. It is one
	of the most visited cities in the world and has many famous sites to visit. The photo
	shows the Palace of Westminster, commonly known as the Houses of Parliament, the
	home of the UK government. The tall clock tower is famously called "Big Ben". The
	name was originally the name of the large bell inside the tower. The photo also shows

a red London bus, another famous symbol of the city. It is crossing the River Thames

over Westminster Bridge.

Suggested	A: 1. parrot	2. Singapore	3. tennis	
Answers	B: 4. guitar	5. the Great Wall	6. the UK	7. Beijing roast duck

1b	
Teaching Tip	Forums A forum is a web page where people (called "users") can put comments about a particular topic or issue and reply to other users' comments. Messages and comments are known as "posts". The language of forums is usually very informal. Abbreviations and acronyms are often used, to make posting quicker and easier. "Emojis" and photos and GIFs are also commonly used to communicate ideas and feelings. When a user posts a topic for discussion, this is often "pinned" to the top of the page, and reply posts are then listed underneath. Posts can often be rated by giving a "thumbs up / down". The most popular posts can also be placed at the top of the page. "Do you want to?" vs "Would you like to?" When asking someone if they want to do something, "Would you like to?" is more formal and polite. We can use this with people we don't know. "Do you want to?" is more casual and we might use it with close friends or family.
Culture Note	What's in a Name? Pauline Lee Popular names in Singapore reflect the history of the country. Therefore, it is typical to have a mix of Western and Asian names. "Pauline" is a female given name that originates from French but has also been popular in English. "Lee" (also "Li") is one of the most common surnames in Asia, particularly in China.
Answers	Pauline: A Peter: B

Suggested Answers	Information	Pauline	Peter
	Age	14	13
	Country	Singapore	the UK
	Family	big family	Peter & his parents
	Pet	a parrot called "Coco"	
	Favourite food		Beijing roast duck
	Favourite place		the Great Wall
	Hobby	tennis	play the guitar in the school band

Culture Note	Venn Diagrams A Venn diagram is a picture showing how different groups of things compare to each other. Each circle represents a set of things. Where the circles cross each other shows which things the sets have in common.
Suggested Answers	Pauline Singapore big family tennis hot pot "Coco" the parrot football

2a		
Teaching Tip	Other Aspects Here are some other aspects that will help others get to know a person: Languages spoken The music you like, books you've read, films and art you like School clubs you are in Favourite colour / animal / season / Jokes you know	
Suggested Answers	I'm 14 years old.	 My favourite food is Gongbao chicken. My favourite sport is badminton. My favourite place is China Science and Technology Museum.

2b	
Teaching Tip	RE: Making New Friends When replying to an email, "RE:" is often added automatically to the subject line of the message. This shows that the message is a Reply (or Response) to the previous message.
Sample Writing	Zhang Yang Hello, Peter! My name is Zhang Yang. I'm 12 years old. I live in Wuhan. I'd like to be your friend. I love playing the guitar too. My favourite food is pizza. Please write to me.



3a	
Teaching Tip	More Questions to Ask about Yourself Here are some further questions for students to ask themselves for a profile. What do you look like? Where do you live? When is your birthday? What languages do you speak? Do you have any brothers or sisters? Where have you been on holiday? What is your favourite book / film? What music do you like? Who is your favourite singer / actor / artist?
Suggested Answers	 My name is Tom. I'm 13 years old. My favourite sport is rugby, and my favourite food is pasta. I like playing rugby and reading comic books.

3b	
Culture Note	Personal Profiles A personal profile is a short description or collection of information that gives a reader some important, essential, and interesting information about another person. They act as an introduction to give a quick idea about who that person is. They can be used when introducing oneself to a new person or group, or when applying for a job. They give such information as name, age, nationality, qualifications and experience, favourite things, and hobbies.
Sample Profile	My name is Zhao Tianming. I'm 12 years old. I'm from Hangzhou, China. I live with my father and mother. My favourite food is sweet and sour fish. My favourite sport is table tennis. I play three times a week. I also love drawing. I like to draw animals.

Зс	
Teaching Tip	 Guessing Game Have students choose a profile without revealing whose it is. Read from the chosen profile without giving the name. Elicit from students what they might say to guess whose profile you are reading. Encourage students to raise their hands to make a guess, and not just call out. For example: Is it Peter? I think it's Peter. Am I right?
Sample Introduction	He is 12 years old. He lives with his parents. His favourite food is sweet and sour fish. His favourite sport is table tennis and he plays three times a week. He likes drawing.

Value Statement: Getting to know each other is the first step in making new friends.

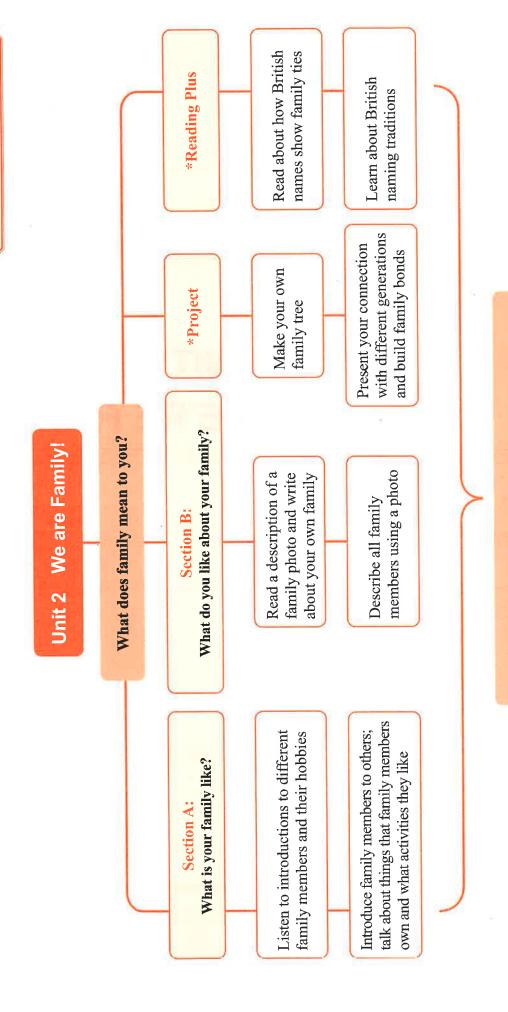
Value Statement The theme of the unit is interpersonal relationships and how they begin. Getting to know things about someone else by asking and answering simple questions is an important first step in becoming friends. Similar Statements Read them to students or write them on the board. Discuss the questions with the students: What do you think the statements means? Do you agree with the statements? Every new friend is a new adventure, and the start of new memories. It's not what we have in life, but who we have in our life that matters. True friends are never apart, maybe in distance but never in heart. No friendship is an accident. Friends are the family you choose.

*Reading Plus

1					
	Advice				
Culture Note	Many websites and magazines offer advice for users and readers on many aspects of				
	life. They give simple tips and steps on what can be done to deal with many situations				
	and problems. Texts giving advice often break the advice down into a list of points.				
	Each paragraph often starts with an imperative statement of the basic tip followed by				
	more detailed information about the advice being given.				
	First	Don't be shy. Smile and try to talk to everyone.			
Suggested Answers	Second	Ask questions. Listen to the answers carefully to ask better questions.			
	Last	Share interesting things about yourself.			

2	
Suggested	Listen for things you have in common with your new classmate. Shared interests are a
Answers	great way to start conversations and begin new friendships.

UNIT 2 WE'RE FAMILY!



Family is where life begins and love never ends.

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元围绕"家庭"这一主题展开。该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"丰富、充 实、积极向上的生活"子主题,与"人与社会"主题范畴中的"和谐家庭与社区生活"子主题密切相 关。本单元主要展现了几位主线人物在校园之外与同学或朋友谈论家人的生活场景,学生将学习如何 用英语介绍自己的家人,谈论家庭成员的基本信息、日常活动、兴趣爱好,学会利用全家福照片描述 每个家庭成员,以及制作简单的家谱图来展示家庭成员之间的关系。本单元的主题意义是让学生通过 学习和讨论家庭这一主题,进一步认识自我,了解自己的家人,加深与他们的联系,以积极的心态与 家人交流互动, 学会理解家人、珍视家庭。

作为七年级上册的第二个正式单元,本单元与Unit 1 You and Me之间相互连接,存在延续关系。 在 Unit 1 You and Me 中, 几位主线人物刚结识了新同学、新朋友;而在本单元中,他们与熟悉的同学 们在校园之外也有了更多交往,而这些交往或多或少都与家人或家庭环境密切相关,最熟悉的家和家 庭成员便成为他们之间的必然话题。

本单元通过大问题"What does family mean to you?"引导学生思考家庭的含义,尤其是家人的重 要性。Section A的引导性问题是"What is your family like?"。基于这个问题,该部分创设了三个真实的 生活情境,学生将通过听读对话进一步了解主线人物 Yaming 和 Peter 的家庭成员以及他们各自的爱好; 同时也通过演练对话逐步掌握询问与介绍家庭成员关系、描述他们的爱好的语言表达,并在语境中灵 活运用。该部分的情境创设有利于培养学生的交际能力和共情力,能够启发学生思考并解决—些常见 的社交问题,比如:与家人外出时偶遇同学,该如何得体地向同学介绍家人或寒暄?受邀到同学家做 客时,可以通过什么话题拉近彼此的距离,增进彼此的了解? Section B的引导性问题是 "What do you like about your family?"。该部分围绕全家福照片展开,学生需要观察爱尔兰女孩Lily的全家福照片, 阅读相关的描述,了解这个家庭的组成情况以及每个成员的特点,然后学生将结合自己的家庭情况完 成模仿写作。该部分不仅涵盖了Section A呈现的内容要点,还在此基础上增加了关于家人的年龄、外 貌、性格,以及家人之间的互动趣事等细节,不仅帮助学生积累了更加丰富的描述语言,还有意识地 引导学生全面、深入地了解家人,体会彼此之间的情感连接,感受家庭的温暖和爱。

本单元的项目活动要求学生画家谱图并介绍自己的家人。这一综合实践活动不仅能激发学生的参 与意识和动手能力,让学生充分运用本单元所学语言来完成任务,还兼顾了学生口头表达和书面表达 能力的培养,有助于学生体会家族延续、家庭的情感纽带以及亲情的宝贵,从而呼应本单元的大问题 "What does family mean to you?"。本单元的拓展阅读Family Ties in Names介绍了英国名字的组成形式以 及名字所体现的家庭纽带,主要目的是让学生积累有关英语国家的文化背景知识、尝试进行跨文化对 比,从而培养学生的跨文化交际意识。

本单元的板块内容层层深入,旨在引导学生思考并感悟家庭的意义。正如本单元的价值引领句 (Family is where life begins and love never ends.) 所表达的,家庭是生活的开端,也是爱的源泉。对于青 春期的学生而言,从家庭角度认识自我,学会了解和关心家人,与家人保持良好的沟通和交流,建立 深层次的情感连接,对于营造和谐家庭氛围和创造美好生活非常重要。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- 🍃 自然得体地向他人介绍自己的家人,根据日常生活交流的需要询问或回答有关家人 的相关信息,包括年龄、外貌、性格、爱好、与其他家庭成员的关系以及家庭趣 事等;
- ▶ 通过观察全家福照片和阅读相关介绍识别出人物的身份,理解家庭的构成、人物之 间的关系及每个家庭成员的特点:能结合自己的全家福照片写出完整的家庭介绍, 表达对家庭的热爱;
- ▶ 听辨并准确认读/3:/和/a/、/A/和/a:/这两组元音音素以及带有这些音素的常见词汇; 准确读出一些常见行为动词的第三人称单数形式以及名词的所有格形式,理解并掌 握其发音规律;能准确认读已学的双音节词汇,区分重读音节和非重读音节;
- ▶ 理解含有实义动词的一般现在时的表意功能、句式结构,以及不同人称作主语时实 义动词的变化,并能正确使用该结构询问和回答有关家人的信息;
- ▶ 总结并归纳名词所有格的不同构成形式及其意义,结合语境正确使用名词所有格描 述从属关系,并能注意区分名词所有格与含有系动词be的缩略形式;
- > 了解中外家庭以及家庭成员的构成,深刻理解家庭成员关系,并体会家庭亲情和家 庭的重要性。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

What does family mean to you?

② 内容分析

本单元的标题"We're Family!"本身带有很强烈的感情色彩,它与开篇页的主题图相得益彰。主题图是一幅全家福照片,展示了一个三代同堂的中国家庭,他们沐浴在柔和的阳光下,每个人的姿态和表情都展现出家庭的和谐与美好,传达出"我们是相亲相爱的一家人"的含义,非常贴合本单元的主题。Look and share 部分基于主题图设置了三个问题,旨在引导学生谈论照片中人物之间的关系,表达对这个家庭的感受,随后延伸到谈论自己的家人。

开篇页呈现了本单元的大问题"What does family mean to you?",目的是引导学生思考并探讨家庭的意义所在。另外,开篇页还罗列了本单元的主要学习内容:用含有实义动词的一般现在时态谈论家庭,使用名词所有格表达所属关系,描述全家福照片中的家庭成员,探究家庭的意义所在。

学习目标

- 能够识别主题图中的家庭属性,感受家庭成员之间和谐的情感关系。
- 能够根据人物的外貌特征等判断图中人物之间的关系,理解家庭成员的构成。
- **** 能够使用 family photo、parents、happy 等话题词汇简单描述主题图所传递的家庭氛围。

廖教学建议

- 1. 预测单元内容。教师让学生翻开单元开篇页,要求他们大声朗读单元标题,然后通过提问引导学生预测本单元的学习内容,如 "Look at the unit title. What do you think you will learn about in this unit?"。教师应鼓励学生充分发挥联想,积极表达看法,不必评价其预测结果是否正确。
- 2. 观察并讨论主题图。学生仔细观察主题图,教师依据 Look and share 部分的问题逐步引导学生思考并讨论。教师可适当调整问题的难度,将三个问题切分成几个小问题。例如:
 - What can you see in the photo?
 - How many people are there in the photo?
 - Who are they? What do you think is their relationship?
 - What do you think of the family? Do you think it is a happy family?
 - Do you have so many people in your family? Who are the people in your family?

3.预览单元学习内容。学生阅读单元大问题和学习内容导引,针对其中较难的词汇,教师可适当 提供解释或说明(如identify、ownership、describe等),确保学生理解本单元的主要学习内容。

Section A

What is your family like?



🝳 内容分析

文本分析:本单元听力文本的两段对话展现了教材主线人物在课堂之外的交际场景,他们逐渐 熟悉彼此,并开始了解彼此的家庭和成长环境,而友谊也延伸到校园之外。第一段对话发生在公园 里, Yaming 和家人偶然遇到同学 Emma, 于是向她介绍自己的家人,同时 Yaming 也把 Emma介绍给父 母。这段对话主要呈现了介绍他人的语言功能项目,与第一单元所学内容有明显的承接关系。对话再 现了打招呼的表达,如"Morning""Hi""Glad to see you""Nice to meet you"等,还出现了"This is ..." "These are …"这类用于介绍他人的典型句式。第二段对话发生在Peter的家里,Teng Fei看到墙上挂的 全家福照片,好奇地向Peter求证他对照片中人物的猜测,然后两人谈论起照片中的家庭成员。这段对 话主要使用了一般疑问句和特殊疑问句 "Is this ...?" "Are these ...?" "Who's he / she?" "Who are they?" 对人或物进行确认,其中指示代词this、that、these、those的用法已在本册书过渡单元的第二单元呈 现,而who引导的特殊疑问句属于新句型。综合来看,两个对话的主要内容都是介绍和谈论家人,句 式并不复杂,但语言内容非常丰富,不仅复现了常见的家庭成员的名称(如parents、sister、brother、 uncle、aunt、grandparents等),进一步巩固了第一单元所学的含有系动词be的一般现在时,还呈现了 本单元的目标语法结构之——名词所有格。

活动设计:活动1a-1d是-个完整的听说任务链。听前活动1a主要让学生根据左栏所列的人物 关系匹配对应的家庭成员名称,既能激活学生的知识储备,复习有关家庭成员名称的词汇,同时也自 然融人名词所有格形式,让学生初步感知该结构并体会其意义。需要注意的是,家庭成员的定义,还 沙及英汉两种语言的差异。在英语中,爸爸的兄弟和妈妈的兄弟都可称为uncle,爸爸的姐妹和妈妈的 姐妹都叫aunt;爸爸的父母和妈妈的父母都是grandparents;堂(表)兄、堂(表)姐、堂(表)弟、 堂(表)妹都叫cousin,且不分男女。

1b和1c是听中活动。活动1b提供了两张图片,分别展示了两个听力对话的情境。该活动聚焦对 听力文本的整体理解,要求学生通过听录音完成对话的情境匹配。活动1c则主要训练学生对细节的理 解, 学生需要通过听并基于 1b 的图片信息判断人物之间的关系, 然后完成句子。活动中提供的五个句 子都使用了名词所有格,而学生需要填写的家庭成员名称已在活动1a中进行了铺垫。读后活动1d要 求学生模仿听力对话,关联真实生活,借助全家福照片介绍自己的家人,目的是让学生套用听力对话 中的句式进行表达,实现语言的迁移运用。

学习目标

- 能够识别和运用家庭成员的词汇、理解这些词汇所指代的人物关系、能够区分英语 和汉语中家庭成员名称的异同。
- 能够结合所听内容和图片信息理解名词所有格表达的所属关系。
- 能够基于所听内容判断对话语境、梳理人物关系并记录重要信息。
- 能够套用听力对话中的句式相互询问和介绍家人,并传递情感信息。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)回顾并复习家庭成员的英文名称,激活学生的词汇储备。教师用课件展示自己的家庭照片, 通过提问引导学生说出家庭成员的英文名称,如: "This is a photo of my family. Look at the photo. How many people are there in my family? Who are they?"。每当学生说出一个家庭成员名称,教师可使用介绍 他人的典型句式 "This is ..." "These are ..." "They are ..." 向学生介绍自己的家人,同时在黑板上写 下相关的名词,如father、mother、sister、brother、grandfather / grandpa、grandmother / grandma、aunt、 uncle等。
- (2) 熟读有关家庭成员名称的词汇。教师用课件或黑板呈现已学的家庭成员名称,先领读这些单 词,再让学生齐声朗读。这些单词在本单元学习过程中会反复使用,因此,教师需要确保学生掌握它 们的音、形、义,为接下来的学习打好基础。
- (3)关注家庭成员之间的关系。教师要求学生阅读活动1a的指示语,明确匹配任务,然后请几个 学生依次朗读左栏五个家庭成员名称的定义,并翻译成中文。学生遇到生词或朗读有困难的单词时, 教师可提供示范或进行解释。例如,教师可利用一张结婚照让学生理解生词 husband 和 wife 的意思。
- (4)学生独立完成活动1a的词汇配对,师生核对答案。核对答案时,教师可引导学生将左右两栏 匹配的内容组合成完整的句子, 并大声朗读出来。例如:
 - Your mum's or dad's mother is your grandmother.
 - Your aunt and uncle's child is your cousin.
 - Your mum's or dad's sister is your aunt.
 - Your grandmother's husband is your grandfather.
 - You mum's or dad's brother is your uncle.

2. 听力理解

- (1)教师要求学生阅读活动1b的指示语,明确活动的目的和意义,然后让学生观察图片,引导他 们对图片中的场景信息进行解读和推理。教师可提出以下问题供学生思考:
 - Who are the people in the picture? Do you know their names?
 - Where are they? Why do they come here?

- What do you think they are talking about?
- (2) 教师用课件展示活动 1b 的配图,然后手指着图中的人物,使用"This is ..."或"These are ..."句式来引导学生说出主线人物的名字,并对图中其他人的身份作出合理的推断。比如,在谈论第一张图片时,教师可以与学生开展这样的对话:
 - T: Let's look at the first picture. How many people are there in the picture?
 - Ss: Five.
 - T: That's right. There are five people in the picture. (pointing to the girl on the left) Let's look at the girl.

 Do you know her name?
 - S1: Ella.
 - T: Are you sure? Is she Ella or Emma?
 - S1: I think it's Emma.
 - T: Yes, this is Emma. She wears a hair band. (pointing to the boy) What about this boy? Do you know him?
 - S2: I think it's Yaming.
 - T: Yes, this is Yaming. So who are the man and the woman? Can you guess?
 - S3: I think they are his parents.
 - T: That's right. These are Yaming's parents. But what about the girl next to Yaming? Who is she?
 - S4: I think she's Yaming's sister.
 - T: Correct. She's Yaming's sister, Yaqi. So, these people are Yaming's family. Now, look at the picture carefully. I can see some trees and a pavilion. So, can you guess where they are?
 - S5: I think they are in a park.
 - T: How do you know?
 - S5: Because we usually see trees and pavilions in a park.
 - T: Nice guess. My last question: What do you think they are talking about?
 - S6: ...

教学提示: 听前引导学生观察和解读图片信息并预测听力内容,不仅可以培养学生的听力策略,还可以训练学生的思维能力。从学生的角度来看,学生不仅要结合过渡单元和第一单元所获得的主线人物信息对人物身份进行判定,还要为自己的猜测提供合理的理由,促使他们有意识地审视自己的思维逻辑。从教师的角度来看,通过有层次有逻辑的提问,引导学生逐步解读图片所承载的信息,为接下来的听作准备,使学生能更有效地获取信息;而在对话过程中尽量复现和巩固已学语言,精心铺垫本单元目标结构——名词所有格,则是为了让学生在潜移默化中加深对语言结构的理解。

- (3)教师播放第一遍录音,学牛根据 park、family photo等关键词标出活动 1b 中两幅图片的顺序。 全班核对答案。
 - (4)学生阅读活动1c的指示语以及所列的句子,教师启发学生根据1b图片场景推测人物关系,

让他们尝试写出空缺处需填写的单词。

(5) 教师播放第二遍录音, 提醒学生在听的过程中记录重要信息, 如在1b图片中的人物旁标注人 名,以此来明确家庭成员关系。学生完成活动1c,全班核对答案。

教学提示: 根据所听内容记录信息是一种听力微技能训练。在记录信息的时候,教师应鼓励学生使 用简略的记录方式。活动 1c 中人名较多, 教师可提醒学生在听的过程中用首字母代替完整的人名进 行简单标记。在记录人物关系时,也可用首字母或简写的方式记录家庭成员的名称。

3. 听后活动

- (1) 教师要求学生翻开教材附录,找到本单元的听力文本。教师播放第三遍录音,学生集体跟读 并模仿对话中不同人物的语音、语调和节奏。教师巡视并注意获取反馈,尤其是遇到学生读音不准或 节奏紊乱的句子时,可重复播放这些句子,确保学生语音正确、朗读流畅。
- (2) 教师将学生分成小组,要求学生分角色朗读和演练听力对话。学生演练完毕,教师可请几个 小组在全班展示。若学生记忆力和语言能力较好,可鼓励学生对话时不看书,自然得体地完成对话。
- (3) 学生阅读活动 1d 的指示语,明确口头表达的任务要求及需要使用的核心句式。教师可邀请一 名学生拿出预先准备好的全家福照片,师生配合开展示范对话。例如:
 - S1: Look, ... this is my family photo.
 - T: Wow, you have a big family! Are these your parents?
 - S1: Yes, they are.
 - T: Is this your grandmother?
 - S1: Yes, she is. She's my father's mum.
 - T: I see. Who is ...?
 - S1: He / She is ...
- (4)教师要求学生两人一组根据全家福照片开展对话,相互询问和介绍家庭成员,并提醒学生在 表达时尽量使用以下句式:
 - This is ...

- Are these ...? / Are they ...?
- These are ... / They are ...
- Who is he / she?

• Is this ...?

- Who are they?
- (5) 学生完成对话演练后,教师可请部分小组进行展示。教师可从句式运用的正确性、语言表达 的流畅性、仪态等方面给予评价。

拓展活动: 答记者问

若条件允许, 教师可结合活动 1d 的要求, 在班内组织"答记者问"的互动交流活动。课前教师 先收集学生们的全家福照片,全部存入电脑后制作成动画。课堂上,教师播放动画并随机暂停,选中 哪位同学的全家福照片,这位同学就到讲台前"答记者问"。其他同学向该同学询问或确认其家庭成 员的情况。如果学生语言能力较强,教师还可适当拓展内容,鼓励学生询问或介绍有关家庭成员的兴 趣、爱好、性格等。



② 内容分析

本单元的语音板块的内容比较丰富, 共有三个活动, 且每个活动的关注重点都不同。活动1主要 通过听读训练帮助学生掌握/a:/ 与/o/, /a/ 与/a:/这两组单元音的发音, 初步建立字母和字母组合与这 两组单元音音素的对应关系。活动2主要针对本单元的目标结构设计,关注一般现在时中动词第三人 称单数词缀-s的发音规律,以及名词所有格词缀加-'s的发音规律。由于这两种后缀发音规则一样,让 学生一起学习和总结,可提高学习的效率。活动3聚焦双音节单词的重音,让学生通过听读训练掌握 两种重音模式,即第一个音节重读,或第二个音节重读。

)语音知识

要理解单词重音,先要弄清楚什么是音节。在学习过渡单元第二单元时,学生已大致了解了音节 的概念。简单来说,发音响亮的元音是构成音节的核心。少数辅音(如/m/、/n/、/l/)和其他辅音也 可构成非重读音节(即"成音节",这一知识在后续册次将会介绍)。有的单词如bat /bæt/、late /leɪt/、 sound /savnd/只有一个元音音素,即只有一个音节,就不存在重音或轻音的问题。如果一个单词有两 个或两个以上的音节,就产生单词重音的问题。念得特别响的音节就是单词重音所在,也就是重读音 节,其他音节叫非重读音节。例如:在双音节词 funny / fʌni/和 mother / ˈmʌðə(r)/中,第一个音节重读, 须读得响亮些。而在双音节词begin /bɪˈɡɪn/和idea /aɪˈdɪə/中,则是第二个音节重读。多数双音节词的 重音都在第一个音节,但也有少数在第二个音节。有些双音节单词重音位置与单词的构成(前缀、词 性变化)等有关。

对于双音节词的重读和弱读,中国学生容易犯的错误就是重、弱读不分,重读音节读得不够响 亮,弱读音节却读成重读。这种现象主要是受母语影响所致。由于汉字多为单音节词,听起来每个字 都是重读的,所以中国学生读英语时每个音节都不自觉地重读。如果单词重音读不准或者读错,就会 影响语义的表达,会给听者造成理解障碍甚至误解。教师需清楚学生的薄弱点,让学生多听、多读、 多模仿,感受单词重读音节和非重读音节的区别。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够正确识别并准确读出/3:/、/ə/、/ʌ/、/ɑ:/这四个元音音素以及含有这四个音素的 常见词汇。
- 能够准确读出实义动词的第三人称单数形式,并了解其读音规律。
- ▶ 能够准确读出名词的所有格形式,并了解其读音规律。
- 能够初步识别单词的音节,并能依据重音标识准确读出双音节单词,在模仿和操练 中, 养成关注英语单词重音、准确认读单词的良好习惯。

教学建议

- 1. 教师播放活动1的录音, 让学生边听边跟读, 感受两组元音音素发音的异同。
- 2. 教师可在课堂上播放有关两组元音音素发音的视频短片或展示发音图示, 让学生关注不同元音 的发音口型及要领,鼓励学生通过模仿来体会这四个元音发音的特点,尤其需要注意区分成组的两个 元音的区别,比如音的长短、口腔开合度、舌位等的不同。以下是四个元音音素的发音要领:

音素	发音要领		
	● 发这两个音时,舌头的中部稍稍抬起,口腔在半开半闭之间,扁唇。		
/ɜ:/ 和 /ə/	● 发/3:/音时,口腔肌肉紧张,发长音,舌位在中元音中最高,接近前元音/e/的高度。		
	● 发/ə/音时,口腔肌肉放松,发短音,舌位高低介于/ɜ:/与/ʌ/之间。		
1.1	发/n/音时,舌中部向硬腭中部上抬,发音短促,舌位略高于/æ/, 口腔开度略小于/æ/		
/^/	的开口程度。		
/a:/	发/a:/音时,舌后部向软腭抬起,舌位尽量向后拉,口腔全开,圆唇,发长音。		

教学提示: 在示范和指导学生发这几个元音时, 教师可有针对性地提供解释和说明。例如: 元音 /a/是弱读音,发音最省力,因而也是英语中最常见的音;在发/a:/音时,舌头的部位如果不够靠后, 舌头肌肉不够紧张,就会听上去音色清浅,不够浑厚;/a:/是英语音素中开度最大的音,发此音时口 腔应尽量打开, 形成共鸣, 让音色更饱满、洪亮。

3. 教师再次播放活动1的录音, 让学生两人一组进行跟读训练, 一人跟读, 另一人倾听并找出对 方拼读不够准确的音素或单词。接着,学生互换角色,教师再次播放录音。待所有学生朗读完毕,教 师可再次示范带读那些学生难以掌握的音素和单词读音。

4. 教师可用课件呈现更多学生已学过且含有这两组元音音素的单词,带领学生大声朗读,同时提 醒学生关注单词中黑体字母及字母组合的发音。例如:

/s:/ bird birthday	/ə/ under other
/ʌ/ f u n h u sband	/ɑː/ class fast

🤩 拓展活动:听音写词游戏

1. 课前,教师将活动1中所有单词以及课堂上补充的含有/3:/、/ə/、/ʌ/、/ɑ:/四个元音音素的单词 制作成单词卡片,打乱顺序后分成四组,每组卡片四到五个单词。教师将全班分成四个大组,每个大 组挑选四名学生参与听音写词游戏。教师在黑板上为每个大组列出四个元音音素,具体导现如下:

/3:/	/ə/	/^/	/a:/
	\cdot		

- 2. 教师解释游戏规则:各个大组参与游戏的学生需走到讲台前,全程背对全班同学。教师将展示 手中卡片,台下学生齐声读出卡片上的单词,讲台上的四位学生将听到的单词拼写出来,写在对应的 音素之后。例如: 教师展示单词卡片 bird, 台下的学生齐声朗读/bs:d/, 台上的学生在音素/s:/之后写 出单词 bird。教师读完第一组单词卡片,各组挑选的第二位组员替换第一位组员开始参与游戏;接着 是第三位、第四位组员, 直到所有单词卡片读完, 各组完成拼写任务。
- 3. 师生共同对各组组员的表现给予评价和反馈,除了修正错误的单词拼写以外,教师应当对单词 拼写完整且音素归类正确的同学提出表扬。

活动2 ------

- 1. 教师播放活动2的录音,让学生跟读,感知单词后缀-s的发音规律。
- 2. 教师再次播放录音, 并用课件展示活动2中所有单词及其音标, 提醒学生一边跟读一边关注单 词词尾的发音。
- 3. 教师可引导学生观察动词的第三人称单数形式后缀-s以及名词所有格后缀-'s有哪几种不同的发 音,并梳理它们在清辅音、浊辅音、元音,以及/s/、/z/、/ʃ/、/tʃ/、/dʒ/等后的发音规律。

清辅音后读/s/: likes, lets, walks, gets, Mike's, Kate's

浊辅音后读/z/: loves, reads, finds, Fred's

元音后读/z/: plays, Ella's

/s/、/z/、/f/、/tʃ/、/dʒ/后读/ɪz/; watches, closes, Alice's

注意:/ts/、/dz/是辅音连缀,但和/tr/、/dr/一样,读起来像一个音。

教学提示: 动词第三人称单数的发音实际上遵循的是"清一清,浊一浊"原则,即在清音(即清辅 音)后发清辅音/s/,在浊音(声带振动的音,包括浊辅音和元音)后发浊辅音/z/。在/s/、/z/、/ʃ/、 /tʃ/、/dʒ/后发/ɪz/是因为如果不加/ɪ/,末尾两个辅音的发音会不顺畅,为了让发音更流畅,一般会加 过渡元音/ɪ/。英语发音产生变化的原则之一就是为了让发音更省力、更顺畅。另外,"清一清,浊一 浊"原则同样适用于名词复数读音和名词所有格读音。

4. 教师呈现更多的动词第三人称单数形式和名词所有格, 让学生先自行认读, 然后教师随机点 名,请学生读出这些词。如果学生发音不准,教师可示范带读,并要求全班学生大声齐读。

- 1. 教师播放活动3的录音, 让学生跟读模仿, 感受双音节单词中的重读音节和弱读音节的发音特 点,如重读音节中的元音要发得响亮些,弱读音节中的元音要发得轻一些。
- 2. 为了让学生更加关注重读音节,教师可以指导学生在重读音节中的元音下面画线(因为音节的 主体是元音),如funny、begin。接着,教师让学生以同样的方式标记其他单词的重读音节。
- 3. 教师用课件或学案展示学生已学过的其他双音节词汇。教师还可视学生能力, 多利用教材后面 的小学词汇表,帮助学生复习整理小学应该掌握的词汇,比如让学生两人一组尝试根据重音的不同对 词汇进行分类:
 - other carrot classmate tennis hobby husband tidy yellow colour baby welcome
 - mistake guitar behind ago
- 4. 师生核对答案。教师可按座位前后顺序让学生依次朗读所列单词,并说出重音在第一个音节还 是第二个音节。学生发音有误的地方,教师需及时纠正,并适时带读几遍,以强化学生的记忆。

🤩 拓展活动:综合性读写训练

- 1. 课前, 教师可结合本单元语音部分的训练重点设计一些句子或小段落供学生进行综合读写训 练。课堂上,教师用课件或学案呈现这些句子或小段落,所列的句子或段落应具备以下特点:
 - 主语为第三人称单数,谓语动词词尾需要加后缀-s;
 - 部分单词含有/3:/、/ə/和/ʌ/、/a:/这两组元音发音;
 - 句子包含至少一个名词所有格;
 - 句子包含一些双音节词汇。

例如:

Emma is Ella's twin sister. She loves taking photos.

Jason is Vincent's father. He often takes Vincent to the park.

2. 教师要求学生先自行朗读这些句子, 然后用不同的符号标记句中带有语音特点的单词, 例如: 在第三人称单数的动词形式下写 " Δ ",在含有/3:/、/a/、/a/、/a/、/a:/的单词上方标注元音音标,用 " \bigcirc " 圈出名词所有格,为双音节单词加重音符号"1"等。

- 3. 教师将学生分成小组,要求每个小组讨论如何通过替换句中带有语音特点的单词仿写出新句子。
- 4. 各组活动结束后,教师请每组学生展示并朗读所写的句子,其他小组则根据所写句子的数量、正确率以及语音特点的丰富性给予合理评价。



② 内容分析

文本分析:本部分的对话情境是 Section A第二个听力对话的延续。此处的对话展现的是 Peter 应邀到 Teng Fei 家做客的情境。Teng Fei 家的客厅里摆放的一些物品引起 Peter 的兴趣,两人很自然地谈起这些物品属于哪位家庭成员。通过 Teng Fei 对这些物品的介绍(包括 ping-pong bats、fishing rods、piano等),Peter 对 Teng Fei 的家人的兴趣爱好也有了一些了解。从交谈的内容上看,听力对话主要介绍不同家庭成员的身份和关系,而该对话延伸到家人的日常爱好及感兴趣的活动,话题范围逐渐扩大,表述内容也更加丰富。这个对话起到了承上启下的作用,为后续阅读和描述所有家庭成员提供了细节支撑。从交际情境的设计上看,对话的过程非常贴近人们真实的生活体验。一般来说,每个家庭客厅的陈列物品往往折射了家庭成员的爱好、情趣甚至是审美。当首次到别人家中做客时,什么话题适合交流,同时又能很快拉近彼此的距离,这段对话能给学生一定的启发。因此,这个对话实际上也隐含了对交际策略的培养。值得注意的是,对话中呈现了询问物品所属关系的特殊疑问句"Whose … is this / are these?""Whose … are they?",答语自然融入名词所有格,还呈现了含有实义动词的一般现在时的用法,包括动词第三人称单数形式的变化。

活动设计:活动2a—2e是综合了听、看、读、说四项技能训练的任务链,最终需要达成口头输出任务。活动2a呈现了对话文本以及展示对话情境的插图,要求学生通过听录音补全对话。对话中的几个选项都符合该对话语境,学生只有通过听才能获得推确的答案。这一设计不仅是为了训练学生的听力技能,还希望学生学习和关注几组相似的表达法(如alot of与lots of、really与very),同时也为学生后面的口语输出提供了更丰富的语言表达。活动2b主要让学生利用表格梳理对话的关键信息。活动2c的目的是让学生边听录音边跟读模仿,纠正自己的语音语调。活动2d与2e是口语输出环节。活动2d主要为后续的活动2e搭建支架,这里不仅展示了女孩Li Xin的全家福照片,还展示了能体现她家人爱好的不同物品,同时还呈现了关于活动和爱好的短语,以及用于询问和回答所属关系的表达句式。学生需要结合所有的图片信息和文字信息与同伴对话,谈论Li Xin的家庭。2e要求学生通过谈论自己的家人来实现迁移运用。学生需要准备家人的物品照片,然后针对这些物品的所属关系进行询问和回答,继而自然地谈及自己家人的爱好、活动或习惯等。在这个活动中,学生需要学会运用一般现在时的各种句式,包括一般疑问句和whose引导的特殊疑问句,并特别关注动词第三人称单数形式的使用。

学习目标

- 能够通过听读对话分辨不同物品与家庭成员的所属关系,并在此基础上理解家庭成员的爱好。
- 能够识别并使用询问及表达物品所属关系的句式结构,包括一般疑问句,含有whose的特殊疑问句,以及名词所有格。
- ▶ 能够借助图片信息以及所给的语言支架谈论一家人的习惯和爱好。
- 📂 能够运用所学语言, 结合实际谈论家人的使用物品、习惯和爱好。

角 教学建议

1. 听前读图

- (1) 教师用课件呈现活动 lb 中的第二幅图片,引导学生回顾对话场景和 Peter 全家人的名字和身份。教师可提出问题"Where are Peter and Teng Fei? Who are the people in the photo?"。教师还可呈现目标句式"Whose family photo is it?",引导学生回答"It's Peter's."。 教师在黑板上写下目标句式和回答。
- (2) 教师呈现活动2a的图片,要求学生看图并回答以下问题,同时呈现对话中的部分生词,如 ping-pong bats、fishing rods、piano等。
 - Who are the two boys in the picture?
 - Where are they? How do you know?
 - What else can you see in the picture?
 - What is Peter looking at? What do you think they are talking about?

教学提示: 引导学生观察教材中的图片,根据图中人物的站位、表情、动作等非语言信息,结合背景知识对交际情境作出判断是非常有用的"看"的技能训练。比如: 教师可引导学生观察图中的场景细节,包括木地板、房门、储物柜以及各种私人物品,然后可推理出他们是在某人家里。插图中Peter看着Teng Fei家中摆放的物品,脸上露出好奇的神色,而Teng Fei姿态很放松,在一旁耐心地解释。根据这些细节,学生可推测出这可能是在Teng Fei的家里。

2. 听力理解

- (1) 学生阅读活动 2a 的指示语,明确听力任务。教师播放 2a 录音,学生圈选所听词汇,补全对话。
- (2)学生两人一组讨论答案,然后师生核对答案。在核对答案的过程中,教师引导学生观察和对比两个选择项的异同,理解其意义和用法,如 come in 和 welcome、a lot of 和 lots of、really 和 very等。同时,教师可以通过提问来确认学生是否理解对话中的其他生词。

3. 阅读理解

(1)学生阅读活动2b的指示语,明确阅读任务,然后认真阅读对话并完成表格。

- (2) 学生两人一组核对答案,然后师生核对答案。核对答案时,教师可呈现以下对话框架,引导学生使用所填的信息进行问答。
 - A: Whose ping-pong bat is it?
 - B: It's Teng Fei's.
 - A: What activity does Teng Fei often do?
 - B: He often plays ping-pong.

教学提示: 把核对答案的过程变成真实的语言交际过程, 可为学生提供更多口头表达的机会, 而适时融入目标语言, 则能丰富学生的感知和体验, 使学生在潜移默化中掌握语言。

4. 语言操练

- (1) 教师让学生从对话中找出带有动词第三人称单数形式以及名词所有格的句子,并说出-s和-'s 后缀的发音,然后教师示范朗读,学生齐声跟读。
 - (2) 教师再次播放录音, 学生逐句跟读并模仿对话的语音、语调、节奏等。
- (3)学生两人一组分角色朗读对话,完成活动2c。教师巡视并为学生提供必要的帮助和指导,确保他们语音正确,语流顺畅。
- (4)教师请几组学生尝试演练对话,要求学生尽量不看书。为避免学生过度焦虑,教师可用课件 呈现一些对话提示词。例如:

Teng Fei: Hi, ...

Peter: Thanks. Oh, these ... Whose ...?

Teng Fei: Well, this is ..., and the ... is ...

Peter: Do you ...?

Teng Fei: Yes, we ...

5. 口语表达

- (1) 学生阅读活动 2d 的指示语,明确该口语表达的任务要求。教师让学生观察 Li Xin 的全家福及代表家庭成员习惯和爱好的物品照片,复习词汇 basketball、*erhu*、books、pet dog、plants and flowers,学习生词 Chinese chess。教师可通过以下问题引导学生:
 - Who can you see in Li Xin's family photo?
 - What's this in the picture?
 - Whose ... is this / are these?
 - Does he / she like ...?
- (2)教师用课件或学案展示以下表格,要求学生利用表格梳理Li Xin 一家人的相关信息,同时利用所给短语和句式列出询问物品归属和家人爱好的疑问句。教师以Grandpa's Chinese chess 为例,请位同学与自己配合完成示范对话,然后在表格中列出相关句式。例如:
 - T: Look! Whose Chinese chess is this?

S1: It's Li Xin's grandpa's Chinese chess.

T: Does he like Chinese chess?

S1: Yes, he does.

People	Object	Whose is this? Whose are these?	Hobby / Activity	Does he / she?
grandpa	Chinese chess	Whose Chinese chess is this?	like Chinese chess	Does he like Chinese chess?
	basketball		often play basketball	
	books		read a lot	
	erhu		play the <i>erhu</i> well	
	pet dog		love animals	,
	plants and flowers		like gardening	

(3)学生两人一组,模仿所给对话提示,谈论Li Xin及其家人的所属物品和爱好。然后,教师请 几个小组展示对话。

教学提示: 在口语教学中,教师为学生搭建可视化的语言支架非常重要,可以帮助学生提供关键短 语或结构,厘清表达思路,增强学生自信心,从而提高口头表达的流利性和准确性。如果学生语言 能力较强,教师可以鼓励学生在表达的丰富性和得体性方面有所突破。

- (4)课前,教师要求学生准备好自己的全家福照片,以及代表家庭成员的习惯和爱好的物品图 片。在学生完成活动 2d 的对话演练后,教师让学生阅读 2e 的指示语,然后请他们拿出准备好的照片, 与同伴两人一组,相互询问家庭成员所属物品及其习惯和爱好。教师需提醒学生使用目标句式,并一 边巡视一边给予学生指导和帮助。
 - (5)教师请几个小组展示他们的对话,并适当点评。

Grammar Focus

🥝 内容分析

本单元的核心语法项目是含有实义动词的一般现在时的用法,单元语境中还融入了含有系动词be 的一般现在时,目的是巩固和复习上一单元所学内容。通过学习本册书的Unit 1和Unit 2,学生将对一 般现在时的功能、意义和用法有比较全面的理解。一般现在时是英语中比较简单的时态,但是要达到 熟练运用还需要反复练习和巩固,特别是动词第三人称单数形式的使用,即使是经验丰富的英语学习 者也难免出错,因此需要特别重视。

活动3a的表格主要呈现了含有实义动词的一般现在时的陈述句、一般疑问句、特殊疑问句及其回 答。该表格的呈现方式便于学生观察和对比一般现在时中不同人称与谓语动词形式的对应关系,引导 他们发现和归纳一般现在时的句子结构及动词变化规律,并初步建立主谓一致意识。另外,表格中还 融入了名词所有格的例子,如: Teng Fei's grandpa、Teng Fei's father等。活动3b聚焦名词所有格的结 构、功能与意义,通过单句练习让学生掌握单数名词的所有格、复数名词的所有格、两人共有事物的 所有格等多种情况。活动3c提供了一个小语篇,目的是训练学生在更丰富的语境中正确使用一般现在 时的动词形式,这里既包括系动词be,也包括不同的实义动词。该语篇是一则简短的家庭成员介绍, 作者介绍了自己的兄弟姐妹,也比较了各自的异同。他们的爱好和性格各异,但不影响他们相亲相 爱,和谐相处,这体现了家庭的温暖内涵。活动3d是开放性口语活动,旨在帮助学生巩固一般现在时 中含有实义动词的一般疑问句和回答,同时培养学生提问题的能力,促进学生对彼此家庭的了解。

学习目标

- 能够梳理和归纳含有实义动词的一般现在时的句式结构、表意功能和用法。
- 能在语境中根据不同人称选择使用不同的动词形式,掌握一般现在时态句子中的主 谓一致原则,并能正确使用一般现在时的句子询问和描述与家人相关的信息。
- 能够正确运用名词所有格表达物品与人物之间的所属关系。

廖教学建议

1. 语法探究

(1) 学生阅读活动 3a 的指示语,明确任务要求。然后,教师可利用活动 3a 表格和本册书语法附 录中的例句,为学牛提供以下探究表格,引导学生梳理和归纳含有实义动词的一般现在时的句式特 点。例如:

	一般现在时(当谓语动词是实义动词时)		
	例句	动词的变化	句式特点
	I often listen to music on the way.		
	You like apples.		
陈述句(肯定句)	Teng Fei's grandpa loves sport.		
	They have some nice ping-pong bats.		
	Teng Fei's father has a fishing rod.		

	一般现在时(当谓语动词是实义动词时))	
	例句	动词的变化	句式特点
陈述句(否定句)	You don't like oranges. She doesn't have a brother. They don't have a pet dog.		
一般疑问句	Do you often play ping-pong together? Do you play the piano? Does your father spend a lot of time fishing? Does your mother have a piano? Do they work hard?	ë	
一般疑问句的回答 (肯定)	Yes, I / you / they do. Yes, he / she does.		
一般疑问句的回答 (否定)	No, I / you / they don't. No, he / she doesn't.		

教学提示:采用"归纳法"进行语法教学不仅体现了以学生为中心的教学思路,还能有效发挥学生 的主观能动性,培养他们的探究精神。教师应鼓励学生主动发现和总结语言规律,避免被动接受语 法规则知识。

- (2)学生完成探究任务并总结出一般现在时的句式特点后,教师可让学生阅读教材附录中关于— 般现在时的内容,将自己的探究结果与之进行对比,以加深对该时态的理解。
- (3)教师让学生圈出活动3a中动词第三人称单数的形式,说出其词尾发音。若学生感到有困难, 教师可进行必要的解释和说明。然后,教师示范朗读这些句子,学生齐声跟读。

2. 语法练习

(1) 教师引导学生模仿活动 3a 中的句式通过替换主语人称进行造句练习。如:

原句: Teng Fei and his grandpa play ping-pong every week. (Yaming)

变换人称改为: Yaming **plays** ping-pong every week.

原句: Teng Fei's grandpa loves sport. (Teng Fei and his grandpa)

变换人称改为: Teng Fei and his grandpa love sports.

原句: **Do** you play the piano? (your mother)

变换人称改为: Does your mother play the piano?

原句: **Does** your father spend a lot of time fishing? (your parents)

变换人称改为: **Do** your parents spend a lot of time fishing?

教学提示:模仿造句是语言学习从感知理解到应用实践过程中必不可少的重要环节。教师可引导学生由局部模仿开始,逐步生成更加真实、语义更丰富的句子,让学生在造句练习中感知语法结构的表意功能和用法。

- (2) 教师引导学生阅读活动 3b 的指示语,了解该活动的目的是巩固学习名词所有格的用法。接着,教师用课件展示第一组句子,要求学生观察并总结名词所有格的构成形式(-'s或-')。
 - Emma is Yaming's classmate.
 - Ella is Emma's sister.
 - David is Peter's cousin.
 - Your parents' parents are your grandparents.
 - These are Teng Fei's and his grandpa's ping-pong bats.

然后教师展示第二组句子,让学生说出句子的意思,并思考这组句子中的所有格表达的意义与第 一组最后一句有何不同。

- Ms Gao is Peter and Fu Xing's teacher.
- Jim is Peter and Helen's brother.
- 9 Your uncle and aunt's child is your cousin.

学生给出回答后,教师可以简要解释: 几个并列名词共用一个所有格表示名词的共同所属关系,并列名词分别都带有-'s表示名词的各自所属关系。教师还可要求学生阅读语法注释中有关名词所有格构成的内容,然后示范朗读表格中的例词,学生跟读以加深记忆。

- (3) 学生先自主完成活动3b,然后师生核对答案。核对答案时,学生应读出完整的句子,并说出句子中名词所有格的构成形式及其读音。
 - (4) 学生浏览活动3c的指示语与短文内容,获取短文大意。教师通过以下问题引导学生理解短文大意:
 - What's the text about?
 - How many people are there in the text? Who are they?
 - What are they like?
 - What do they like doing?

在引导学生回答问题的过程中,教师可以通过给释义、举例等方式,融入本部分生词,如funny、laugh、different、violin、have fun等,确保学生正确理解语篇内容。

(5) 学生仔细阅读3c 小短文, 自主完成短文填空。学生先两人一组交流答案, 师生再核对答案。 核对答案后, 教师还可提出问题"What is the topic sentence of the passage?", 检测学生对短文的整体理解。

教学提示: 短文填空通常要求学生基于对短文内容的理解, 运用所给词汇的正确形式将信息补充完整。这类语言练习比较实用, 能很好地锻炼学生的综合语言运用能力。教师在处理这类练习时, 需要特别注意培养学生良好的学习习惯, 让学生先通读短文, 理解短文大意, 再选择词汇, 最后确定词形是否需要变化。学生对一般现在时态的学习可能没有达到熟练运用的程度, 教师需要提醒学生特别注意人称和动词形式的变化, 确保学生形成主谓一致意识。

3. 语言运用

- (1) 教师引导学生阅读活动 3d 的指示语及相关提示,明确活动目的。学生两人一组根据对同伴家 庭的了解,针对每个家庭成员至少提出一个问题。如有必要,可让学生将问题写下来。
 - (2)教师可请几组学生展示自己写的问题,确保这些语言表达正确无误。
 - (3)学生两人一组基于所写的问题开展问答,教师巡视课堂,及时给予支持和帮助。
 - (4)最后,教师可请几组学生表演对话,并给予评价。

Section B

What do you like about your family?



🝳 内容分析

文本分析: 本部分的阅读文本是爱尔兰女孩 Lily介绍自家的全家福照片。前面的 Section A 虽然涉 及全家福照片,但主要是对人物身份进行确认,且以口头文本形式呈现;此处的阅读文本也有明显的 口语特征,且以第一人称自述,但对全家福照片的介绍更加全面且完整。该阅读文本采用总—分—总 的结构,共有三个段落。第一段概述说话人的身份及照片的基本信息。第二段逐一介绍照片中的家庭 成员,相关细节信息包括每个成员的年龄、外貌、性格、爱好等,其中也描述了家人之间的互动和亲 情的流露,例如,"He (Lily's dad) often plays tennis with me." "She (Lily's mother) always reads me a story at night."。作者对家人的描述是充满爱的,文中使用了很多褒义的形容词,如handsome、beautiful and kind。第三段补充了照片之外的信息,引入了大家庭的其他重要成员,即Lily's cousin,最后以一句幽 默的话结尾:"They often say I'm their favourite grandchild, but I think they say the same thing to all of us!"。 这一表达不仅符合作者的年龄特点和心理状态,也能引发学生的情感共鸣。另外,在Lily的描述中, 她的家庭成员还包括一只名叫Oscar的宠物狗。在现代社会,人们将猫、狗等宠物视为家庭成员的情 况较为普遍,所以文中用的代词是his,而不是its,这也是值得了解的文化现象。

活动设计: 活动1a-1d是完整的阅读任务链。读前活动1a主要通过几个问题引导学生从家庭成 员的外貌特点、性格以及家庭趣事等方面谈谈自己的家庭。这些问题与阅读文本内容密切相关,能 帮助学生为接下来的阅读作准备。1b和1c是读中活动,1b要求学生在阅读文章后标出家庭成员名字, 1c要求学生根据文中内容判断句子正误,其目的都是训练学生从文中获取关键信息的能力。阅读语篇 配有爱尔兰女孩Lily的全家福照片,人物及拍摄场景与本单元主题图很类似,均展现了和谐幸福的家 庭画面,也暗示了家庭在不同文化中都具有重要意义。活动1d属于读后复述活动,要求学生以第三人 称的口吻介绍Lily的全家福照片,这一活动形式不仅能加深学生对文本信息和本单元目标语言的理解, 还促使学生灵活运用所学语言进行口头表达,实现迁移运用。

活动2a与2b是本单元的写作任务链,写作的内容与前面的阅读一脉相承,即描述全家福照片。考 虑到起始年级的难度, 教材采用仿写的设计。2a 先呈现了一篇简短的家庭成员介绍, 并提供了每个成 员的基本信息(包括人物的外貌、性格和爱好的核心话题词),要求学生挑选出合适的单词或短语补全介绍。这段文字以第一人称 Hu Xiao 的口吻介绍了她的家庭成员,包括爸爸、妈妈、她自己和弟弟。短文仍采用"总—分—总"的结构,但在前面阅读文章的基础上进行了简化,便于学生模仿。活动 2b 要求学生仿照这一短文,利用全家福照片介绍自己的家人。该活动还提供了核心句式供学生写作时参考。

学习目标

- 能够根据图片和阅读文本的呈现形态预测文本的核心内容,并能通过快速阅读验证自己的预测。
- 能够基于语篇中的细节信息识别全家福照片中的不同家庭成员,并能说出他们的相关信息,如名字、身份及互动关系等。
- 能够透过文本细节和描述用语体会作者对家庭成员的深厚感情,感受语篇所蕴含的和谐温馨的家庭氛围。
- 能够发现语篇隐含的家庭文化现象,理解家庭在不同文化中的深刻内涵。
- **** 能够归纳语篇的内容要点以及逻辑衔接的方式。
- 能够运用本单元所学核心句式完整地介绍和描写自己的家庭,包括家人的外貌、性格、爱好等。

🥏 教学建议

1. 读前准备

- (1) 学生阅读活动 1a 的指示语和所列问题,教师引导学生理解每个问题所聚焦的信息内容,主要包括家庭成员数量、身份关系、相貌、性格、爱好及家庭趣事等。
- (2) 教师可请一位学生向自己提出 la 中的问题, 教师根据自己的实际情况回答。同时, 其他学生 认真听对话并记录关键信息。例如:
 - S: How many people are there in your family?
 - T: There are ... people in my family.
 - S: Who are they and what are they like?
 - T: They are my parents, ... My father is a tall man. He is handsome and humourous. My mother is a ... She is
 - S: What do they each like?
 - T: My father likes reading and travelling. My mother likes dancing.
 - S: What is fun about your family?

T: ...

- (3)如果学生语言能力较强,教师可让学生两人一组相互询问,回答1a中的问题。
- (4) 教师请几组学生在班上进行问答,可以让学生了解彼此的家庭信息。教师对各组的表现给

予评价和总结。教师可以这样说: "Thank you so much for sharing so much information about your families. I think these four questions are very useful because they can help us to get more details about a family. Next, we are going to read a text about a family. Let's see if we can find the details that we just talked about." o

2. 阅读理解

- (1)观察插图,预测人物关系。教师用课件呈现活动1b的插图,要求学生仔细观察图片并回答以 下问题:
 - What kind of photo is it?
 - How many family members are there in the photo?
 - Can you guess who they are?

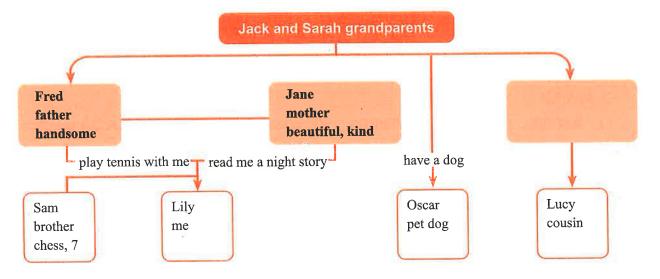
教师可指着图中人物,一边描述图中人物的特点,一边让学生猜测他们的身份以及与其他人的关 系。在描述人物时,教师可适当呈现文本中的生词,如 pink、hat、knee、handsome、grandchild 等。教 师可以指着图中的Lily说 "Look. I can see a lovely girl here. She wears a pink hat."。教师将pink、hat写 在黑板上,可让学生说出 pink 和 hat 的意思,并对生词进行示范朗读。教师可接着问 "Can you see the woman behind her? She wears a white hat. Can you guess their relationship?"。学生可能会回答: "I think the woman is her mother." o

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生对于家庭成员数量的回答可能有两种,一种是six(不包括宠物狗),另一种是 seven(包括宠物狗)。教师此处不予评价,留下悬念,可让学生从语篇中寻找答案。教师还可引导 学生将这张照片与开篇页中的主题图进行对比,说出两幅全家福照片的异同,比如拍摄场景、家庭 成员数量、几代人、家庭氛围以及照片所传达的关于"家"的情感信息等。

- (2)标记家庭成员。学生快速阅读课文,在图片中标出Lily、Fred、Sam、Jane、Jack and Sarah、 Oscar, 然后两人一组核对标记情况,最后师生核对答案。教师还可追问"Is Lucy in the picture?"。正 确回答是 "No, Lucy is not in the picture."。
- (3)获取细节信息。学生再次阅读课文,自主完成活动1c。学生先在小组内讨论,然后师生核对 答案。学生对于第二句 "Lily's father likes tennis." 的判断可能会存在争议。教师可以给学生充足的时 间讨论和质疑,要求学生基于对语篇的理解提出自己的想法。

教学提示: 语篇中虽然提到 "Lily's father often plays tennis with Lily." 这个事实,但并没有直接说 出 "Lily's father likes tennis." 这个观点。教师应提醒学生基于语篇的理解去判断,并学会区分语 篇中的事实和观点,这是阅读策略之一。在教学中教师还应鼓励学生质疑和争论,并学会倾听、尊 重、接纳别人的观点。

(4) 仔细阅读文本,梳理关键信息。教师利用课件或学案呈现简单的人物关系图或信息表格,要 求学生仔细阅读语篇,从文中找出每个家庭成员的关键细节,补充完成关系图或完成信息表格。以下 关系图和表格供参考:



Name	Relationship	What he / she is like	What he / she likes or often does	Fun thing
Lily	me	pink hat		
Fred	father	handsome	play tennis with me	
Sam	little brother	seven	like chess	
Jane	mum	beautiful and kind	read me a story	
Jack				They have a dog, Oscar.
and	grandparents			They often say I'm their
Sarah			٨	favourite grandchild.

学生完成关系图或者表格后,教师可通过提问来核对答案,如"Who is Fred? What is Fred like? What does Fred often do?"。

教学提示: 无论是利用关系图还是表格梳理语篇信息,其目的都是让学生基于语篇信息创建可视化、结构化的知识图,这样可以帮助学生提高理解文本的效率。

- (5) 探讨文本内涵。教师可提出以下问题供学生思考并讨论:
- Do you think Lily loves her family?
- Do you think Lily's family members love her?
- Can you find out the details that show their love?

教学提示: 透过字里行间去感受和休会作者的思想感情,也是一项非常重要的阅读技能和策略。本文作者并没有直白地写出"We love each other."这样的句子,但文中多处描述了父母陪伴孩子的活动,如"He often plays tennis with me.""She always reads me a story at night."。Lily 用来描述家人的形容词也都带有积极的情感色彩,如handsome、beautiful、kind、favourite等。当学生找出这些细节后,教师可鼓励学生联系自己的家庭,回顾生活细节,从细微处感受父母对自己的爱。

(6) 朗读好句好段。教师鼓励学生从文中找出感觉有趣或语言优美的句子或段落, 朗读给同伴 听。然后,教师可请几个学生分享好句好段,并让他们说出原因。

教学提示:通过朗读"好句"让学生感受语篇的语言和情感是阅读理解的最高层次——欣赏性理解。 在此过程中,学生与语篇中的某些信息、观点或态度等产生共鸣,与作者进行心灵沟通。如果学生选 择朗读语篇最后一段,那读出的是一种童趣;如果学生朗读第一段,那读出的是一种俏皮;如果学生 朗读的是含有描述家人积极词汇的句子,那读出的是一种骄傲。这些朗读都是美好的阅读体验,通过 朗读引导学生逐步体会单元大问题 "What does family mean to you?" 的意义。

- (7)复述课文内容。教师将学生分成小组,小组成员合作完成课文复述,依次介绍Lily一家七口 人的姓名、年龄、家庭身份、特征、爱好等信息。如:
 - S1: These are Lily's grandparents. Their names are Jack and Sarah, and they have a dog.
 - S2: This is Lily's father. His name is Fred. He's handsome, and he often plays tennis.

S3: ...

小组活动完毕, 教师可请几个小组在课堂上展示, 并给予评价。

- 3. 写前准备
- (1) 范文分析。教师引导学生快速浏览活动2a中关于Hu Xiao的四位家人的基本信息,让学生以 问句的形式说出每一行描述的重点,例如:
 - What does Hu Xiao's father look like?
 - What is he like?
 - What does he like doing?
 - (2)补全范文。学生阅读活动2a的短文,用所给词汇补全范文,然后师生核对答案。
- (3) 范文要点分析。教师请几位学生朗读范文中不同家人的描述,然后引导学生归纳和总结内容 要点以及前后的逻辑衔接。例如:

首尾句: I'm Hu Xiao. This is my family photo ... We love and help each other.

衔接句: Here's my dad ... Next to him is my mum ... The tall girl is me ... This is my little brother ...

<mark>教学提示:在七年级起始阶段,教师需要帮助学生初步建立谋篇布局的写作意识,为学生写作能力</mark> 的长远发展奠定坚实的基础。教师强化首尾句可以帮助学生建立"总一分一总"的文本结构意识, 强化衔接句可以帮助学生体会篇章内各句子之间的逻辑性、连贯性和句子表达的多样性。

4. 写作训练

- (1)写作准备。学生拿出自己的全家福照片,模仿活动2a的范文内容和结构特征,与同伴开展口 头介绍。教师应提醒学生使用活动 2b 所列的核心句式。
 - (2)写出初稿。学生独立完成初稿的写作。教师巡视课堂,及时为学生提供帮助和指导。
 - (3)同伴互评。学生两人一组交换初稿,教师提供评价量表,学生根据评价量表要点进行互评,

并写出修改意见。学生根据同伴的评价和意见进一步修改文章。以下评价量表供参考:

Checklist				
Theme	Clear	☐ Yes	☐ Need to be improved	□ No
Content	Complete	☐ Yes	☐ Need to be improved	□ No
Language	Correct	☐ Yes	☐ Need to be improved	□ No
Structure	Connected	☐ Yes	☐ Need to be improved	□ No
Handwriting	Clean	☐ Yes	☐ Need to be improved	□ No

- (4)完成终稿。学生在同伴评价的基础上修改初稿,并把全家福照片贴在旁边。
- (5)展示交流。学生把附有照片的文稿贴在教室内专栏墙上,让全班学生浏览并欣赏。

教学提示: 在七年级起始阶段,教师应注意培养学生良好的写作习惯和浓厚的写作兴趣,可通过提供仿写范文,为学生搭建足够的语言支架和结构框架,让学生有话可写、有话想写。对于语言能力较强的学生,则应多给予空间,让学生自由表达。

🚨 拓展活动

教师可鼓励学生利用AI工具将自己的全家福介绍内容转换成视觉图片,绘制出一张新的全家福图片。在使用AI工具的过程中,学生还可不断增加新的细节描述,使得最后的成品图片更加逼真和美观。

教学提示: AI绘画已经是人工智能领域日益成熟的技术,教师可以根据需要引入到课堂教学中,让学生体会人工智能对学习产生的影响。这既能激发学生兴趣,又能鼓励学生创新。



② 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是制作简单的家谱图并借用该图介绍每个家庭成员。家谱图有不同的呈现形式,其中包含的信息也各有不同。活动3a呈现了一个简单的图示,要求学生依照这个范例制作出自己家的图示,还可以贴上每个家庭成员的照片。活动3b要求学生根据家人的实际情况写一段话,逐一介绍自己的家人,提供具体的信息,可包括年龄、外貌、性格、爱好等。活动3c则要求学生结合3a和3b活动中已完成的图示和家庭成员介绍,以口头输出的方式向全班详细介绍自己的家庭。这个活动不

仅能促使学生去关注祖父辈的其他家庭成员,激发他们追溯家族历史的兴趣,梳理家庭成员之间的关系及其每个成员的相关信息,综合运用本单元所学语言进行表达,还有助于培养学生使用结构化图示的能力,拓宽学生的文化视野,加深对家庭社会属性的理解。

学习目标

- 能够理解家谱图的用途和基本结构,并结合自己的家庭情况,手工绘制图示或制作电子版的家谱图。
- ▶ 能够熟练运用本单元目标语言,以书面和口语表达的形式介绍家谱图中的每个家庭成员。
- ▶ 能够通过制作家谱图进一步理解"家庭"这一概念,借以增强与家人的亲情纽带关系。

🧐 教学建议

- 1.明确项目活动的目标和思路。学生阅读项目活动的标题和相关指示语,明确任务是制作家谱图,并向同学介绍自己的家人。教师可基于客观条件和学情提供两种制作思路:一是手工绘制,二是制作电子版。教师在征求学生的意见后,确认全班在课堂上开展项目活动的具体时间和地点,并要求学生提前准备相关素材,如家庭成员的纸质照片或者电子照片。
- 2. 确定家谱图的制作流程。在动手制作之前,教师可引导学生思考并讨论制作流程,比如教师可提问"What are the steps to make your family tree?"。获取学生的反馈后,教师可将学生确定的步骤写在黑板上,比如:
 - List the people in your family
 - Create a diagram to show the relationship among your family members
 - Fill in the diagram with the names of your family members
 - Stick the photos beside the names
 - Write the introduction to each family member
 - Stick the introductions to the people in the diagram
 - Decorate your family tree to make it more beautiful
 - Put your family tree on the classroom wall
 - Give a presentation on your family tree

教学提示: 在开展项目活动之前,教师一方面需要尊重学生,充分发挥他们的主观能动性,给予学生一定的选择权和决策权,另一方面要充分考虑到学生在综合实践活动中可能存在的困难,需要引

导学生明确任务目标、厘清活动思路、明确角色分工、细化活动步骤,这样既能提高学生完成活动 的效率,也有助于学生发展思维分析能力、解决问题的能力和动手能力。

3. 制作家谱图。教师鼓励学生展开想象,在制作图示时发挥创造能力,比如画一棵带有树干、树 枝和树叶形状的树。待学生画完自己的图示之后,小组之间互相交流、审看,并提出修改建议。

教学提示: 教师可以提供一些手绘图示范例供学生参考, 也可让学生上网查询制作手绘框架的工 <mark>具。当学生在便利贴上写家庭成员介绍时,对于语言能力较强的学生,教师可鼓励学生在便利贴上</mark> 写关键词,如mother、42、beautiful、long hair、quiet、smart、like watching films等。

4. 展示和介绍家谱图。教师让学生把各自的图示贴在展示区,供全班学生浏览和欣赏。教师可让 全班投票选出内容最丰富、设计最美观、风格最独特等最受大家喜爱的家谱图,然后请几组代表向全 班介绍自己的作品,教师及时给予激励性的评价和表扬。

Reflecting

Reflecting 部分的四个陈述句分别聚焦四个不同的维度。第一句聚焦家庭成员称谓的话题词;第二 句关注本单元核心语法项目,即用一般现在时描述家庭成员;第三句引导学生反思描述全家福照片的 语言目标的达成情况;最后一句引导学生关注本单元的大问题,聚焦单元的主题意义。

本单元的价值引领句 "Family is where life begins and love never ends."是一句英语谚语,意思是: "家, 生命之始, 爱永不止"。家是心灵的港湾, "家庭"是一个充满爱的主题, 亲情是人类最基本、 最真实的情感之一,对于初中学生而言,理解家的意义和亲情的价值,对于他们一生的成长和发展都 具有重要意义,这一主题意义将会在八年级上册第二单元 Home Sweet Home 中得到进一步提升和拓展。

教学建议

- 1. 教师让学生阅读 Reflecting 部分的表格,并针对学生理解有困难的单词或句子给予解释或说明 (如name、introduce、describe、express等),确保学生理解表格内所有内容的含义。
 - 2. 教师可根据第一栏所列的句子提出细化的衡量标准。例如:

How well can you do these things?	Tick the items you can do
I. I can name different family members.	□≥10 □9-7 □≤6
2. I can introduce my family members using the simple present tense.	 ☐ I can use be (am, are, is) correctly both in talking and writing. ☐ I can match am, are, and is with different subjects. ☐ I can use This is or These are to introduce family members in conversations.
3. I can describe a family photo.	I can describe myself and each family member's □ name □ age □ appearance □ hobby □ personality □ other:
4. I can express my love for my family.	 ☐ I can write one or two sentences about my love for my family. ☐ I can find the sentences about people's love for their family. ☐ I think I have a nice family.

学生自查并勾选表格中的内容, 然后两人一组交流评价结果。

3. 最后, 教师可请几个学生汇报反思评价的结果, 并针对他们在本单元学习过程中存在的困难或 问题提供一些解决或改善的建议。

三、课文注释

1. Whose are they? 它们(乒乓球拍)是谁的?

这句话是个省略句,完整的问句应为 "Whose ping-pong bats are they?"。根据前面的句子 "Oh, these ping-pong bats are nice."可知,这里they指代的是ping-pong bats,由于上下文逻辑清晰,为使句 子更加简练, whose之后省略了ping-pong bats。疑问词 whose表示"谁的",用于询问物品归属。例如:

Whose eraser is it? 这是谁的橡皮?

Whose books are these on the desk? 桌上这些书是谁的?

2. He spends a lot of time fishing. 他花很多时间钓鱼。

(1)此句中动词spend的意思是"花时间;度过",其常见结构"spend ... (in) doing sth"表示"花 (时间)做某事"。例如:

Little Cathy spends all her free time drawing pictures. 小凯茜把她所有的空闲时间用来画画。

Every year, we spend three days cleaning the house before the Spring Festival. 每年春节前我们都要花上 三天时间打扫房子。

(2)短语a lot of或lots of一般修饰名词,表示"许多;大量",其后既可接可数名词的复数形式,

也可接不可数名词。例如:

He knows a lot of people. 他认识很多人。

I eat lots of fruit. 我吃很多水果。

a lot可用作名词短语或副词短语。a lot用作名词短语时,表示"很多;大量",在句中可用作主语、宾语或表语。例如:

It sounds like a lot is going on. 听起来好像还发生着许多事。

We spent a lot on travelling last year. 我们去年花了不少钱在旅游上。

当 a lot 用作副词短语时,常用于表达频率、数量或程度等,意思是"特别;十分;非常"。同时, a lot 多位于句尾。例如:

Sally likes Chinese food a lot. 萨莉十分喜欢中餐。

Tom's father reads a lot. 汤姆的爸爸书看得很多。

3. ... they say the same thing to all of us! ……他们对我们每个人都这么说!

此句中same 是形容词,用在名词前通常有定冠词thc,表示"同样的;一样的"。例如: at the same time 同时 the same class 同一个班级

We go to the same school, and we are in the same class. 我们上同一所学校,在同一个班级。 same 还可用作代词和副词。例如:

We look exactly the same. 我们长得完全一样。(作代词)

My parents treat all of us the same. 我的父母对待我们每个人都一样。(作副词)

Unit 2 We're Family!

The theme of this unit is family. Students will gain a deeper understanding of how their family affects them. By exploring how family members are similar, they will also consider the importance of their family. This knowledge is then activated by having them describe their family members, including their hobbies, appearance, and personality, while using both photos and family trees. It is hoped that students can use the information in this unit both to realize the good points of their family and to be able to express their love for their family.

Opening Page

Suggested Answers (Look and share)

- 1. I think they are a family.
- 2. They look happy.
- 3. There are four people in my family—my mother, father, my sister, and me.

Section A

la	Male or Female 1. On the board, draw this table:					
	Male Female Either M or F					
141	2. Have students say where to put "mum, father, child, sister, husband, brother". Then have students classify the new vocabulary in 1a.					
Teaching Tip	Male Female Either M or F father mum child husband sister cousin brother aunt parent					
	uncle grandmother / grandma grandparent grandfather / grandpa					
	3. Tell students that we sometimes use the word "grandparent". Have students guess what the term means, and then provide an explanation as necessary. Have students decide where "parent" and "grandparent" should be placed in the table, and then write them in.					
Answers	1. D 2. A 3. B	4. E 5. C				

1b	
Language Tip	"Too" vs "Neither" We use "Me too" when we want to say we have the same opinion or are similar. For example: A: I have a sister. B: Me too. In this situation, we are really saying "I have a sister too". However, when the person says a negative statement, such as "I don't like hamburgers", we say "Me neither" to express the same opinion.
Culture Note	Addressing Extended Family When people talk about their "extended family", they are usually talking about their aunts, uncles, and cousins. In English-speaking countries, your father's brother and your mother's brother are both known as "uncle". Your father's sister and your mother's sister are both known as "aunt". To differentiate aunts and uncles, the first name is added (e.g. Aunt Sally or Uncle Jack). The word "aunt" is also a form of address. It is normal to say "Hi, Aunt Sally." Moreover, your aunts' and uncles' children are your cousins. The word "cousin" is not a form of address. People would not say "Hi, Cousin Tim." They would just say "Hi, Tim."
Answers	1, 2

1c						
Answers	1. classmate	2. sister	3. sister	4. cousin	5. brother	

ronunciation

1	
Optional Approach	 Fun with Pronunciation After students have practised the words, have them say each of the words as clearly but as softly as possible. Then have them say the words clearly but as loudly as possible. Next, have them say the words quickly, but monitor carefully. If their pronunciation becomes unclear, stop them. Emphasize the importance of fluency that does not sacrifice clarity.
	4. Finally, have students say the words again at a normal speed and normal volume.

2	
Optional Approach	 Analyzing the -s Sounds Ask students: "Does the -s / -es make the same sound each time?" (no) Say the words in Activity 2 again and have students identify each of the sounds (/s/, /z/, /iz/). Say some additional words and have students classify them. Then have students get into pairs and think of three more words for each sound. After students have had time to brainstorm ideas, have pairs share their ideas.

Practising Word Stress and Syllables

- 1. Have students listen to the recording and mark the stressed syllable. Play the recording again so students can check their answers.
- 2. Then point out that in their books, one of the dots is larger than the other one. Ask them to deduce why, providing the answer if necessary. (The larger dot represents the syllable that is stressed.)

Teaching Tip

- 3. Point out that some words have a stronger first syllable, while some have a stronger second syllable. Explain that when there are three or more syllables, the strongest syllable may be in the middle of the word.
- 4. To help students remember the word stress, play a short game. Have students get into pairs and take turns saying the words. As they say the stronger syllable, they should look up, and as they say the other syllable, they should look down. Do "funny" and "begin" as a class. Then have students get into pairs and play the game. Encourage partners to listen carefully and check that their partner's stress is correct.

2a

"A Lot of" vs "Lots of"

Language Tip

Both "a lot of" and "lots of" are informal ways to say the speaker expects a large number of items or a large amount of the item being discussed. Both are used with plural countable nouns and singular uncountable nouns. In contrast, we use "many" in a sentence when we have a lot of something and in negative statements and questions when we are emphasizing the amount is small.

"Really" vs "Very"

We use "really" to emphasize adjectives (for example, "really big") and verbs (for example, "I really like pizza"). We use "very" with adjectives (for example, "very big") and adverbs (for example, "He runs very fast") but not with verbs.

Answers

Come in.; black; week; a lot of; really

2h

Family Words

Have students learn the different terms that are commonly used for each family member. Write on the board:

Culture Note

Grandfather / Grandpa

- Grandmother / Grandma
- Mother / Mum
- Father / Dad

Explain that "grandpa", "grandma", "mum" and "dad" are less formal.

Suggested Answers

Family member	Thing	Activity
Teng Fei	ping-pong bat	play ping-pong
Grandpa	ping-pong bat	play ping-pong
Father	fishing rods	fishing
Mother	piano	play the piano

Personalizing the Conversation

Teaching Tip

After students have practised the conversation once, have them identify places in the conversation that they can personalize (for example, the names and relationships of the people, the items discussed and their colours, the abilities of the speakers). Then have students practise the conversation again, substituting more personal information. The goal of this activity is to give students confidence that they can speak with others without their textbooks, so it is important to only correct major mistakes. By avoiding over-correction, teachers also allow students to develop their fluency since they are not being interrupted.

2d

Western Chess and Chinese Chess

Culture Note

Western chess is played on the squares of the chess board, so there are 64 squares to move in and out of. Chinese chess is played on the intersections of the lines that make the squares, so there are 90 points for the pieces to move on. The Chinese chess board also has a river between the two players' sides. The goal of both Western chess and Chinese chess is to capture the other player's king.

2e

Things to "Play"

Language Tip

In English, we "play chess". This is similar to other games such as "play Go Fish" (a card game) and "play checkers". We also use "play" for sports, including "play basketball" and "play ping-pong", and instruments, including "play the erhu", "play the piano", and "play the drums".

- A: Whose camera is this?
- B: It's my father's camera.
- A: Does he often take photos?

Sample

B: Yes, he does.

- Conversation
- A: Whose bag is this? There are birds and trees on it. It's so beautiful.
 - B: It's my mother's bag.
 - A: Does she love nature?
 - B: Yes, she does.

Crammar Focus

Suggested **Answers**

The verb form changes depending on the subject of the sentence and also whether the subject is singular or plural.

3b

Answers

- 1. Kate's
- 2. Peter and Emma's
- 3. brothers'

- 4. grandparents'
- 5. Teng Fei's

3c	
Language Tip	"Fun" vs "Funny" We use "funny" when something makes us laugh or is interesting or amusing. We use "fun" when something is enjoyable to do. Non-native English speakers often confuse the use of "funny" and "fun".
Suggested Answers	has, makes, looks, likes, talk, play, are

3d "And" vs "Or" There is a small difference between "Do you have any sisters or brothers?" and "Do you have any sisters and brothers?" When the speaker uses "and", they know or Language Tip assume the other person has some brothers and sisters. When the speaker uses "or", the speaker is not certain the other person has any siblings at all, meaning they may be an only child. "Do you have any brothers or sisters?" is used much more often than the question with "and". **Expanding the Conversation** 1. Have students brainstorm additional yes / no questions to use in their conversations, writing them on the board. Provide more questions as necessary. For example: Does your (grandmother) play ping-pong / chess? Does your (father) play the guitar / drums? Does your sister laugh often? Do your grandparents speak English? **Teaching Tip** Do your cousins have a cat? Does your aunt like cooking / to cook? 2. Encourage students to also ask follow-up questions by choosing one question and working together to brainstorm ideas, writing them on the board. Examples for "Does your aunt like to cook?": Does she make cakes? What's your favourite food (that she makes)? When / How often does she make it?

Section B

1a	
Language Tip	"Are" vs "Do" We ask "What are they like?" when we want someone to describe others. To answer, someone might say, "They are very kind." We can also use this question to describe things. For example, in response to "What is the weather like?" we can respond "It's always warm and dry." We use "What do they like?" to ask about likes and dislikes. The topic is context-dependent. For example, someone might answer, "They like skiing." In another situation, however, the reply might be "They like Italian food."

Suggested Answers

- 1. There are four people in my family.
- 2. My mum is very beautiful and smart. My dad is a little serious. My sister is funny. She loves to tell jokes and do things to make people laugh.
- 3. My mum likes card games. My dad likes cooking. My sister likes outdoor activities.
- 4. My family always eats Sunday lunch with my grandparents, and after that, we play card games for many hours.

1b

Pets Are Part of the Family

Culture Note

In many countries, pets receive a lot of attention and care. Pets such as dogs and cats are often given the names of people (for example, Max, Bella) and treated as members of the family. In the text, Oscar is referred to as "he" since Oscar is a male name. Because of this, we can guess that the dog is male. If a pet is not given the name of a person, it might be given a nickname that represents its appearance or character (for example, Ginger, Speedy, Fluffy).

Many people have hamsters, rabbits, guinea pigs, goldfish, or small birds as pets. Some people also like to keep spiders and small reptiles such as lizards, snakes, or tortoises.

Answers

Back row, from left to right: Sam, Fred, Jack, Jane

Front row, from left to right: Sarah, (Oscar the dog), Lily

1c

Proving Answers

Teaching Tip

As you check answers, have students explain where they found each answer in the text. This allows you to make sure students did not just guess the answer. You can also see how they are analysing the text. You can also ask them to correct the false statements. Suggested corrections:

- Oscar is Lily's grandparents' dog.
- Lily thinks her grandparents say the same thing to all three grandchildren.

Answers

1. T 2. T

3. F

4. T 5. F

1d

Adding More Detail

Encourage fast-finishing students to add more detail to their descriptions, even if this means using their imaginations to make up information. For example, after describing Lily's hat, students could add "It's her favourite hat."

Teaching Tip

In mixed-level classes, before starting the activity, you may want to have students brainstorm the types of additional information they could add, such as where the picture was taken, what the family did on the day the picture was taken, and how often the family gets together. Then encourage students to add detail as they talk about the picture. As you monitor pairs, ask higher-level students to add more detail as they continue the task.

2a	
Language Tip	 "Like To Do" vs "Like Doing" We use "like to do" and "like doing" to express the same idea. Although there is a small grammatical difference between the two forms, Americans tend to use "to do" much more often than "doing". The "to do" form emphasizes what happened because of some action (in other words, the results of the action). It is also used to talk about habits and give preferences. The -ing form focuses more on the actual action or experience, and this form also hints at the amount of enjoyment.
Suggested Answers	handsome, football, kind, animals, big eyes, reading

2b	
Teaching Tip	Two Truths and a Lie Give students extra practice by having them play a game. Have students write three sentences about themselves. Tell them that two of the statements must be true but one should be false. After students have written their statements, have them stand up, find a partner, and read their sentences. The partner then guesses which sentence is incorrect, and if they guess correctly, they get one point. Pairs then switch roles. After both partners have guessed which statement is incorrect, they find a new partner and once again take turns reading and guessing. After calling time, ask students how many points they got. You might want to have the student with the most points tell the class some of their classmates' false statements. After finishing the game, have students list key words about family members and then use these key words as they introduce their family members with a family photo.
Sample Writing	This is my family photo. This is my dad. He's tall, and his favourite sport is basketball. He plays it every Thursday night. Here's my mum. She looks like her mum, my grandmother. She really likes to cook, and her food is amazing. The little girl next to my mum is my little sister. She is five years old.



3a	
Culture Note	Family Tree A family tree is a diagram that gives a visual picture of how people are related. Older generations are higher in the tree (at the top of the chart) while younger generations are lower in the tree (at the bottom of the chart).
	A family tree is particularly helpful in understanding the more distant relationships in an extended family. An extended family includes family members like aunts and uncles, cousins, and a grandfather's brothers' families.

Optional Activity: Compare Family Trees

Purpose	To help students use family vocabulary and compare their families to one of their parent's families.
Materials Required	One piece of paper for every student in class.

Procedure

- 1. After students make their family trees, have them make a family tree for either their mother or father. If necessary, brainstorm who would be included in this family tree (their mother's / father's parents and siblings, their mother's / father's grandparents).
- 2. While students are making their family trees, draw two family trees (use real or pretend information) on the board for "you" and "your mother".
- 3. After students have finished their family trees, say one statement to compare the two family trees.
- 4. Have students make other statements to compare the two families on the board. Once they are comfortable with the comparisons and language, have them get into pairs and take turns comparing their two family trees.
- 5. When students have finished, ask them to generalize what they noticed. For example, "both of our parents' families have more people".

Value Statement: Family is where life begins and love never ends.

	For Me
	Read the value statement and have students explain what they think it means.
	(Example: Our parents give us life, and their love lasts our whole life.) You might
	want to share other statements reflecting the idea of "family". For example:
	Family is our greatest gift.
Teaching Tip	My family is everything to me.
	Without my family, I am lost.
	Ask students to write their own sentences to explain their image of "family". This
	topic requires particular sensitivity. As students write their sentences, read through
	them. If some students appear to have broken relationships, collect the sentences
-	without having them share their ideas with their classmates.

*Reading Plus

1

Names in the UK

In English speaking countries, many people have three names: their first name, their middle name, and their surname. We also call the surname the family name since it is the name passed down in the family from generation to generation. When a father and son have the exact same name, the older person has "Senior" added to their name and the younger person has "Junior" added. In a few families, however, the same name is used for more than two generations. In those families, the oldest person has a I at the end of his / her name. So, for example, we write George Charles Wood I (which means the first). His son is George Charles Wood II (the second), and his grandson is George Charles Wood III (the third).

Culture Note

Traditionally, when women got married, they changed their last name to their husband's last name. However, in recent years, two other trends have also been popular. First, the woman keeps her last name, and the husband keeps his last name. When they have a child, they have to decide which last name to give the baby, or sometimes they use the second trend, which is to hyphenate. With this method, both the husband and the wife have a new last name. For example, John Smith marries Jane Jones. They decide to keep both their last names by becoming John Smith-Jones and Jane Smith-Jones (or they might decide to use Jones-Smith). In this case, the baby and the parents all have the same last name.

Answers

1. middle name

2. most

3. Wood

4. Wood

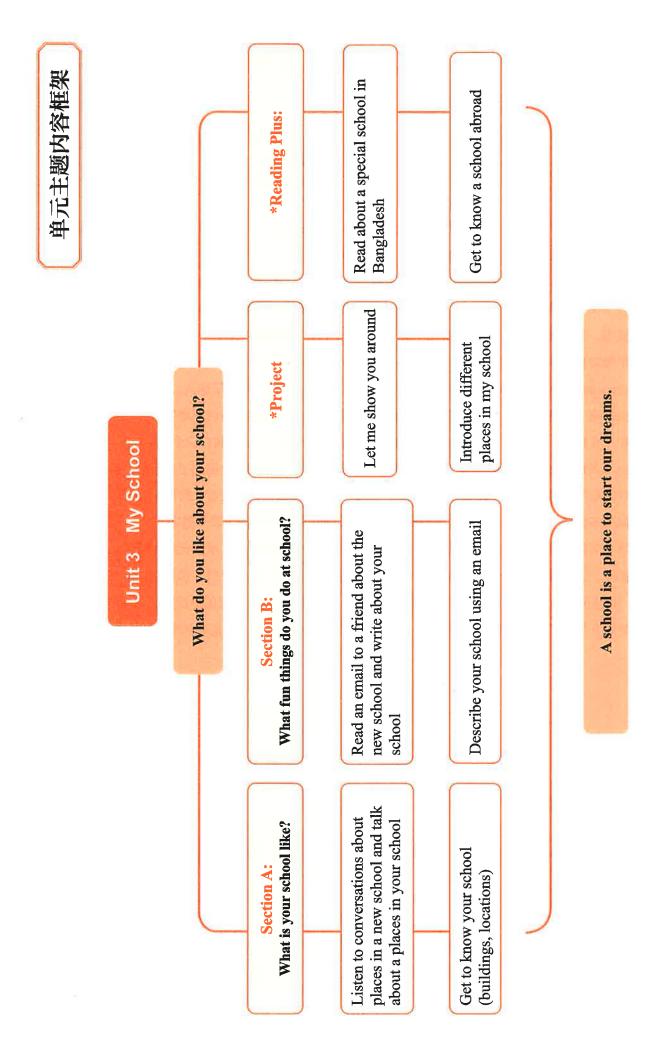
5. often

2

Suggested Answers

- 1. In English names, the last name is the surname or the family name, but in Chinese names, the family name is put first, and the given name is after the family name.
- 2. They put their good wishes and hopes in their children's names.
- 3. My name is Ai. It means a kind of useful plant, and it also has the same pronunciation of "love" in Chinese.

UNIT 3 MY SCHOOL



一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元围绕"学校"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的子话题"多彩、安全、有意义的学校生活"密切相关。通过前两个单元的学习,学生结识了新同学,并逐渐熟悉彼此的家庭情况。初中的新生活不仅包括人际交往方面,还包括日常的校园生活。因此,本单元主要帮助学生认识和熟悉新校园,让学生通过观察和描述学校,引导他们爱校爱班,努力营造良好的学习氛围。本单元的大问题"What do you like about your school?"启发学生思考自己与学校的联系,以及学校对自己人生成长的意义。Section A和 Section B分别以"What is your school like?"和"What fun things do you do at school?"两个引导性问题架构板块内容,并层层深入,指向单元大问题的回答。Section A首先呈现了中学校园里的常见建筑与设施,让学生通过听说活动学会围绕校园里"有什么"和"在哪里"展开讨论,聚焦描述"某处有某物"的there be 句型和方位介词两项核心目标语言。Section B的阅读语篇是 Peter给朋友 Flora 写的一封电子邮件,其中 Peter 描述了自己的新学校,包括他最喜欢的场所及原因。写作环节要求学生给一位外国朋友写邮件,描述自己的新学校。本部分侧重谈论校园内不同场所代表性的活动以及特殊之处,激发学生对新学校的了解与热爱。

本单元的语音部分聚焦四个后元音的学习,以及多音节词的重音。本单元的项目活动是为新校园画平面图,并模拟带领来访学生参观校园的场景对话。拓展阅读部分介绍了孟加拉国的"水上漂浮学校",用以开阔学生的视野,引导他们珍惜自己的学习环境。本单元末尾的价值引领句为"学校是梦想启航的地方",启发学生思考学校的重要意义,积极投入学校的学习,进而更加珍惜学校和学校生活。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- ▶ 识别并谈论校园里的建筑物、基础设施以及班级教室里的各种物品,并描述它们的位置;
- 通过观察文本形态了解电子邮件的基本特征及其格式体例,根据邮件内容获取主人公的学校生活的细节,并将其与自己学校的情况进行对比,说明两者的异同;能通过邮件介绍自己的学校,描述不同的场所及相关活动,分享最喜欢的场所并说明原因;

- ▶ 听辨并准确读出/3:/和/p/、/u:/和/v/ 两组后元音以及包含这些音素的常见词汇:准确 认读多音节单词重读音节,能意识到单词重音在语言学习和交流中的重要性;
- > 理解there be 的基本结构、表意功能,以及 be 动词单复数与其主语之间的关系;能正 确使用there be 结构和介词短语描述校园建筑、设施以及教室内物品的具体位置;
- > 发现日常校园生活中的闪光点,关注并乐于了解中外校园文化,开阔视野,提升对 国内校园文化的自信, 自觉关心集体、热爱班级、热爱学校; 珍惜自己的学习环境 和学习机会,深刻理解学校对自己成长和人生发展的价值和意义。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

What do you like about your school?

内容分析

本单元开篇页呈现了一幅我国中学校园的场景图。教学楼前五星红旗高高飘扬,国旗不仅彰显 了国家对教育、对下一代的关怀,寄托着青少年要为祖国的建设而努力奋斗的殷切期望,也表达了学 生对祖国的热爱、尊重和感激之情,同时增强学生的集体认同感和荣誉感。教学楼前是宽敞漂亮的操 场,包括田径跑道、足球场等不同区域,有几组学生在上体育课,几位老师在集中示范,跑道上还有 一些学生在跑步。这幅图不仅展现了一个生动的学校场景,而且能让人进一步联想,学习不仅仅是坐 在教室里学习科学文化知识,强身健体也是学习的重要内容,学校是培养学生德智体美劳全面发展的 家园。这一熟悉的校园生活场景容易唤起学生的共鸣,由此引发学生思考本单元的大问题"What do you like about your school?", 启发他们发现学校的可爱之处, 热爱自己的学校。

学习目标

- 能够识别单元主题图中学校内场所的名称、谈论图中人物的活动。
- 能够明确单元主题学习目标, 描述乐于在学校从事的活动。

教学建议

1. 明确单元主题。学生浏览单元标题 My School, 教师引导学生预测在本单元将学习哪些内容, 鼓励学生用英语说出有关学校的建筑和相关位置,激活学生已有知识和经验,为单元学习作准备。

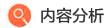
- 2. 观察并讨论主题图。学生仔细观察主题图,教师以问题引导学生描述主题图,组织学生讨论 Look and share 部分的问题。视学生水平,教师还可以补充以下问题:
 - What can you see in the picture?
 - Is there a national flag in the playground?
 - Do you like this school? Why?
 - What is this building used for?
 - Can you find something special in the playground? What is it?
 - What's the difference between this school and your school?
- 3. 了解单元主要学习内容。教师引导学生阅读、理解本单元学习内容导引,并思考单元大问题 "What do you like about your school?",引导学生关注本单元所蕴含的主题意义、所涉及的语言功能和语法项目,为单元学习作准备。

Section A

What is your school like?



活动1a—1d



文本分析:该部分的听力文本包括三段对话,主要展现了几位主线人物(Ella、Peter、Emma)由于还不太熟悉新校园的布局和环境,询问他人找目的地的情境。对话中出现了classroom(building)、sports field、teachers' building、school hall、student centre、science building等学校场所,同时呈现了询问方位、描述位置的句式,其中"Where's ...?""Is there ...?"以及方位介词behind、across from、between 都是本单元的目标语言。对话体现了真实的交际特征,不仅呈现了提供帮助、寻求帮助、表达感谢等常用交际用语,如"Can I help you?""Excuse me.""Thank you!"和"Thanks!"还提供了回应的表达用语,如"Behind the sports field. Oh, I see.""Great.""Oh, good.""Ah, yes. I can see it."。这些真实、自然、丰富的表达方式有助于学生学习模仿,并灵活运用到日常交际中。

活动设计:活动1a提供了一个完整的学校平面图,展示了一个设施完善、环境优美的中学校园,其中包括各种常见的学校场所。1a还呈现了本单元重点学习的五个方位介词,以及使用方位介词谈论不同场所的方位的对话示范。该步骤是听前语言准备环节。1b和1c的听力理解活动采用了自上而下(top-down)的设计,关注焦点从整体到细节,先让学生通过听了解说话人的目的以及询问内容,再借助学校平面图确认对话中谈论的不同场所的方位。1c为听后模仿输出活动,主要让学生练习和巩固对话中询问场所及位置的目标句式。

学习目标

- 能够识别和正确使用校园内不同场所的英文名称。
- 能够理解常见方位介词的含义,并使用这些介词描述不同场所的位置关系。
- 能够理解听力对话"新生寻找学校内不同场所"的场景,通过听关键词识别听力对 话中的不同场所和位置,并理解寻求和提供帮助、表达感谢等的交际用语。
- 能够使用"Where is..."和"Is/Are there ...?"句式询问学校不同场所的位置并作答。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)观察图片,说出学校各个场所的名称。教师呈现本校校园平面图,提出Section A 的引导性 问题 "What is your school like?", 让学生从自己熟悉的环境人手,说出各个场所的名称,教师将英文 名称写在黑板上,如school gate、library、playground、dining hall、dormitory、stadium、school hall、 sports field、student centre、pond、fountain等。教师可以继续追问,启发学生用英语表达自己对新校 园环境场所的认识。例如:
 - What else can you see in the picture?
 - How do you say it in English?

<mark>教学提示:</mark>学生熟悉自己学校各个场所的中文名称,但不一定知道英文。教师要引导学生关注身 边各类事物的英文表达,将英语学习融入日常生活,让学生体会语言学习的最终目标是学会运用 语言。

- (2)完成活动1a。教师展示1a的图片,引导学生阅读活动1a的指示语,并观察图中建筑的位置, 明确活动要求。教师将目标句型写在黑板上:
 - A: Where is ...?
 - B: It's in front of / behind / next to ...

教师可利用图片描述各类建筑物的位置,引导学生理解地点介词的意思。例如:

- A: Where is the sports field?
- B: It's next to the teachers' building.

It's between the classroom building and the science building.

It's in front of the classroom building.

教学提示: 因为参照物的不同,对同一场所可以有不同的表达。例如,如果说 "A is behind B",也可以说成 "B is in front of A"; 如果说 "A is between B and C", 也可以表达为 "B and C are next to A" 教师要引导学生注意不同表达法可以表示相近的意思,培养学生的空间感和逻辑思维能力。

2. 听力理解

- (1)学生阅读活动1b和1c的指示语,明确听力任务:一是通过听了解三段对话所谈论的场所并进行排序,二是通过听获取各个场所的具体位置,包括听取主语关键词。
- (2) 听前, 教师可让学生从图中找到1b所列的三处场所, 教师可提问题 "Where is the student centre / the classroom / Ms Gao's office?", 启发学生讨论。
- (3)教师播放第一遍录音,学生完成活动 1b。学生两人一组讨论答案,再全班核对答案。对于基础比较好的学生,可以让他们听时做笔记,记下有关地点和方位的关键词,如 classroom、behind、Ms Gao's office、across from、garden、between等。
- (4)教师播放第二遍录音,学生独立完成活动1c。学生两人一组讨论答案,再全班核对答案。对于能力强的学生,教师可以引导他们不看课本图片,边听边简要画出所听内容的方位图。

3. 听后活动

- (1) 听录音跟读对话。教师用课件呈现听力文本,并播放第三遍录音,学生跟读并模仿对话的语音、语调和节奏等。
 - (2) 关注目标句型。教师引导学生关注听力对话中询问方位的目标句式,并写在黑板上。如:

A: Is there ... at the school? B: Yes, there is.

A: Where is it?

B: It's ...

接着,教师可以针对听力内容与学生进行问答,让学生巩固复习所学的目标句型以及话题词汇。例如:

- T: Where is Ms Gao's office?
- S1: It's across from the school hall.
- T: Is there a garden behind the student centre?
- S2: No, there isn't. There's ...
- (3)关注交际用语。教师引导学生从三段对话中找出有关提供帮助、寻求帮助、表达感谢的常用交际用语以及其他常见表达,教师将这些句子写在黑板上,并根据学生情况适当补充。例如:

Offering help: Can I help you? / What can I do for you? / Do you need any help?

Asking for help: Excuse me, could you please tell me the way to ...? / How can I get to ...?

Expressing thanks: Thank you! / Thanks!

教师还可以让学生关注对话中的一些词或短句子,如 "Oh, yes." "OK." "Oh ..." "Oh, I see!" "Great." "Oh, good." "Ah, yes. I can see it.",引导学生思考这些语句的功能或作用是什么,如果删去这些表达,对话会有什么变化。教师可以稍作总结:这些表达能及时反馈说话者的情感,可以让说话者听起来更委婉或更有礼貌,同时也让对话听起来更自然、流畅。

(4) 学生仿照活动 1d 中的示范演练对话,两人一组谈论 1a 图片中各个场所的方位,也可以谈论自 己真实校园中各个场所的方位。教师可提醒学生注意使用让对话更自然流畅的交际用语。学生演练完 毕,教师请部分小组展示对话。教师可让学生课后总结已学过的表示方位的所有介词和短语。

Pronunciation

🤍 内容分析

本单元的音素学习内容是两组后元音/o:/、/p/和/u:/、/v/。这四个音都是圆唇音,应发音饱满。这 两对音除了发音的音长有别, 其发音部位和方式也不一样。

活动1提供的表格包含这两组音素及其典型例词,通过观察例词可以发现这些音素对应的常见字 母或字母组合。需要说明的是,在美式英语中,/o/一般发成不圆唇且舌位靠前的/o:/,例如,hot听上 去和 heart 差不多, clock 听上去和 Clark 差不多,如果不注意 heart 和 Clark 中的卷舌音,就容易发生混 淆。本单元活动2聚焦多音节单词的重音,此处列出的都是三音节词。三音节词常见的重音形式有三 种,分别是:第一个音节重读,第二、三个音节轻读,如该活动中的第一行例词;第二个音节重读, 第一和第三个音节轻读,如该活动中的第二行例词;最后一个音节重读,第一个音节是次重读音节, 第二个音节弱读,如afternoon/a:ftəˈnu:n/。由于前两种重读形式更常见,所以教材列举了符合这两种 情况的多音节词。

语音知识

学生在上一个单元已经学习了双音节词的重音,并学习了重音标注符号。对于音节,教师需要重 点了解三方面的内容:(1)音节对于单词学习非常重要。发错单词的重音可能会导致理解困难甚至是 理解错误。另外,音节也是学生读单词、记忆单词的重要工具。(2)重读音节有其发音特点。与弱读 音节相比, 重读音节读的音要高些, 发音也要长些, 发音更有力些。(3)英语双音节词和多音节词的 重读音节分布具有共性特征。一般来说,双音节词或多音节词的重读在第一个音节;绝大多数前缀和 后缀在词中是非重读的,如un happy、dis like、'careful、'illness等。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够听辨并准确认读两组元音音素/ɔ:/和/ɒ/、/u:/和/ʊ/,掌握它们的发音异同,以 及这些音素发音所对应的常见元音字母或字母组合。
- ≽ 能够识别并准确朗读多音节单词的重音,提高对英语多音节单词重读音节的关注 意识。

🧐 教学建议

活动1

- 1. 听音跟读,模仿发音。教师播放活动1的录音,学生边听边跟读,感受两组元音音素的发音特点。
- 2. 讲解发音要领,示范发音动作。教师一边讲解这两对元音的发音要领,一边示范、分解发音动作。学生观察教师的口型,模仿跟读,感知发音器官的变化。下面是这两对后元音的发音要领说明。

音素	发音要领
/ɔ:/	是长音。发/ɔ:/时,舌后部向软腭抬起,舌头肌肉紧张。双唇较/ɒ/更圆更小,向前
	突出。
/p/	是短音。发/p/时,舌后部向软腭微微抬起,舌头肌肉没有发/o:/那么紧张。双唇稍收
/Ɗ/	圆,口张大。
/u:/	是长音。发/u:/时,舌面后部抬起靠近最高点,舌位是后元音中最高的,舌头肌肉紧
/u:/	张。双唇收得很圆,比/ʊ/更圆更小,向前突出。
/ਹ/	是短音。发/ʊ/时,舌后部向软腭抬起,口腔肌肉放松。双唇收拢成圆形,但只是很松
	的圆形。

这两对长短音不仅有音长的区别,发音时它们的发音部位和发音方法也有区别,如口腔肌肉松紧程度不同、圆唇程度不同、口的开合大小不同等。教师也可以利用专业的语音教学视频资源向学生展示这四个音素的发音要领。

- 3. 寻找更多例词, 巩固音素发音。教师让学生在本单元或已经学习过的单元找更多包含这四个后元音的单词, 并关注单词中元音对应的字母或字母组合。如:
 - /ɔ:/: short sport author autumn four warm small talk
 - /p/: fox box want wash
 - /u:/: food room shoe do blue rule
 - /ʊ/: put full look good should could
- 4. 练耳游戏。教师可组织学生开展练耳游戏,设计成对单词,训练学生听辨易混淆的单元音。 例如:
 - Which sound do you hear, /ɔ:/ or /ɒ/? (sport, spot; shot, short; cost, caused; pot, port; lot, lord)
 - Which sound do you hear, /u:/ or /ʊ/?(Luke, look; pool, pull; fool, full; suit, soot; stewed, stood)
 教师也可以提供一些绕口令让学生练习。如:
 - I saw a saw saw a saw.
 - Sam's shop stocks short spotted socks.
 - I will choose two blue boots to take to school.
 - Captain Cook said to a cook: "Look at this cookbook. It's very good."

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在语音教学过程中,教师可以尽量多设计一些游戏、绕口令或歌谣之类的活动供学生模 仿练习,寓教于乐,让学生在丰富多样的活动中巩固语音知识。

- 1. 听录音跟读,识别多音节词重音。教师播放活动2的录音,学生跟读模仿,感受多音节单词的 重读音节和弱读音节的发音特点。
- 2. 补充单词重音游戏。教师可以把一些含有不同音节数量的单词写在黑板上,例如only、 another、interesting等,并通过拍手强度大小让学生感受单词的重音。例如,教师拍两下手,第一下 重, 第二下轻, 让学生说出教师拍手表达的是哪个单词。(答案: only)

<mark>教学提示:</mark>中文是单音节单词,说中文时每个汉字几乎都重读。由于受母语的影响,学生容易忽略 英语单词的重读和弱读。教师要清楚中文与英文的区别,让学生多听、多读、多模仿,感受单词重 读音节和非重读音节的区别。



🥝 内容分析

文本分析:本部分呈现了主线人物 Peter 和他的妈妈之间的一段对话,对话主要围绕学生最熟悉 的场所——教室展开。从前面的校园布局的描述过渡到具体场所的描述,都是为了响应 Section A 的引 导性问题"What is your school like?"。在该对话中,妈妈出于关心想了解Peter的新教室是什么样子, Peter 向妈妈描述了教室里面的物品及其位置。Peter 刚来到中国的一所新学校上学,妈妈关心儿子在 不同文化背景下的学校情况和生活情况是十分自然的,这种语境设置也符合生活逻辑。插图呈现了我 国中学教室的典型面貌,室内有学生的课桌椅、教师的讲台、并排安装的电子白板和黑板,以及教室 后面张贴着各种海报的黑板等。其中,白板和黑板上面的国旗,国旗两侧的标语"好好学习、天天向 上",以及讲台上的绿植等,这些都是我国学校教室里面的典型元素。

对话中 Peter 妈妈所提的问题包括 Peter 对新教室的印象是什么,Peter 坐在哪里,新教室有哪些特 殊之处,新教室里有没有储物柜等,这些问题从整体到细节,逻辑紧密、层层递进。对话中涉及教室 里一些典型物品,包括student desk、teacher's desk、smart whiteboard、blackboard、lockers等,并自然 复现了询问位置的句式 "Where ...?" "Are there ...?" 以及there be 结构的陈述句。此外,对话中还呈现 了一些方位介词,如 in front of、in the middle of、next to、at the back of等。

活动设计: 活动2a 让学生听录音并用介词补全对话。活动2b和2c 分别通过问答匹配和判断正误 的形式检测学生对对话内容的理解,并紧扣there be结构和方位介词的使用进行设计。活动2d是对话 的跟读模仿阶段。活动2e和2f是学生语言输出阶段,2d提供了教室里常见物品的名称,要求学生利 用表格整理信息,2e提供了含有目标句型的对话示范,让学生比较自己的教室与Peter的教室,引导学生模仿输出。

学习目标

- 能够通过听对话获取并记录有关物品位置的信息。
- 能够识别并列出教室内各种物品的名称。
- 能够正确使用 there be 结构和方位介词描述教室内物品的位置关系,并简要介绍班级教室布置。

参教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)观察2a图片,复习相关词汇和表达。教师引导学生观察2a中的图片,让他们尝试说出图片中教室里的各种物品,教师可将相关单词写在黑板上,如desk、chair、blackboard、whiteboard、curtain、national flag、notice board等。同时,教师可以通过以下问题启发学生进一步观察和思考:
 - What can you see in the picture?
 - Where is the teacher's desk?
 - Do you think it's a classroom in China? Why?
 - (2) 谈论图片中的教室。学生两人一组结合2a图片和上一步骤提出的问题练习回答。如:
 - S1: What can you see in the picture?
 - S2: I can see a teacher's desk.
 - S1: Where is the teacher's desk?
 - S2: It's in front of the classroom.

2. 听力理解

学生阅读活动2a的指示语,明确填空任务。教师播放第一遍录音,学生独立完成填空练习。听后 学生两人一组讨论答案,再全班核对答案。

教学提示: 对话中in the middle of 和at the back of 是难点,这两个短语是新的表达,在自然语流中存在连读和弱读现象,学生可能听不清弱读的单词,也可能不能区分连读单词的界限,导致不能写对或写不完整。教师可以给学生解释连读和弱读的特点,并根据学生情况决定播放次数。教师还需要指导学生学会记录关键信息,如in the middle of 可以记为middle, at the back of 可以记为back。在听力理解过程中,学会速记很重要,但用哪种方法速记并没有统一的规定,学生可以根据自己的习惯摸索适合自己的方法,哪种缩写更快且更易辨认就选择哪种。

3. 阅读理解

- (1)教师引导学生阅读活动2b和2c的指示语,明确信息匹配和判断正误的任务。活动2b中的问 句与答句均为本单元目标语言, 教师要引导学生关注。学生阅读对话, 独立完成活动2b。核对答案 时,可以让学生两人一组进行问答,这样可以帮助学生巩固目标语言的表达。如:
 - S1: Is there a smart whiteboard in the classroom?
 - S2: Yes, there is.
 - S1: Are there any lockers in the classroom?
 - S2: No, there aren't.

活动2c是判断正误活动,需要关注文本细节。教师引导学生从文本中找到相关证据,并画出对应 句子,养成良好的做题习惯。同时学生需要修改表达有误的句子,改为正确信息的句子。

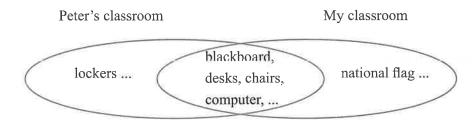
(2)阅读对话, 教师可以引导学生关注如何询问他人看法的表达, 即 "What's ... like?", 它相当 于 "How is / are ...?", 回答可以是表述看法的形容词或其他表达。

4. 角色扮演

- (1) 听录音跟读。教师播放第二遍录音,让学生跟读文本,注意模仿语音语调,完成活动2d。教 师可以把对话中的there be 结构句子写在黑板上,再把there be 的音标写在黑板上,并提醒学生:在 there be 结构中, there 是一个引导词,没有明确的实际意义,因而一般会弱读,there 弱读成/ðə/, there is会连读成/ðərɪz/, 缩略的there's读成/ðəz/, there are会连读成/ðərə/。
- (2)分角色朗读。教师播放第三遍录音,学生跟读模仿,再次体会对话中母亲和儿子这两个 不同角色说话时的语气。然后,教师可将全班学生随机分成两组,一组扮演Peter,另一组扮演Mrs Brown,两组分角色朗读。教师也可以让学生两人一组分角色朗读。为增加趣味性,角色朗读的形式 可以多样化,两人、多人、男女均可随机组合。

5. 口语表达

(1)找异同。学生阅读活动2e的指示语,明确任务,然后进行小组讨论,列出Peter和自己的教 室内的物品。除了2e提供的表格,教师可鼓励各小组自行设计可直观呈现相同和差异点的图表,如 下图:



教师也可以呈现两幅体现中外不同文化特色的典型教室图,给学生更多的词汇支持,让学生看图 找不同。

(2) 小组对话。学生两人一组,根据活动2e讨论的表格,参考活动2f的语言支架,与同伴共同 · 讨论自己和Peter的教室的异同,同时尽可能多运用本单元目标词汇和句式。学生讨论完毕,教师请 部分小组在班上展示对话,并适当给予评价。

Grammar Focus

内容分析

本单元重点学习表达"某处有某物"的there be结构句式,以及描述位置关系的方位介词。活动3a以表格的形式呈现了目标结构的典型例句,包含there be结构的一般疑问句、陈述句,以及where引导的询问方位的特殊疑问句等。3a活动引导学生关注例句中的there be结构中的be动词的单复数和方位介词,即behind、next to、across from、between和in front of等。

活动3b、3c、3d分别以控制性对话、语篇、半开放性对话的形式练习和巩固以上目标语言。其中3b关注目标结构中be动词的单复数形式,除了让学生填出is或are,有些句子还需要学生根据语境判断主语人称代词需用单数还是复数,即it或they。活动3c提供了一篇小短文,描述的是图中的英国教室,学生需选择正确的介词完成短文。文中多处提供了两个介词选项,旨在降低活动的难度。短文内容能开阔学生的文化视野,为文化对比积累素材。活动3d让学生比较自己的教室和3c中的教室,将there be句型和方位介词迁移运用到新的情境,学以致用。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够理解并正确运用问询方位的问句"Where is / are ...?"及其答语。
- 能够理解there be结构的构成特点,以及there be结构在不同语境中所表达的意义, 包含其肯定式、否定式,以及疑问式及其答语。
- ≥ 能够运用 there be 结构和表示方位的介词描述某场所内的物品位置。

廖教学建议

1. 语法探究

学生观察并讨论活动 3a 中的句子,标记出 there be 句型中的动词,圈出表示方位的介词。教师可以提供以下问题供学生思考:

- 问询地点的特殊疑问句要用到哪个疑问词? 回答此类问句的关键词是什么?
- 问询地点的疑问句如何体现主谓一致?
- there be 结构表达什么意义?
- 如何构成there be的否定句和疑问句?
- there be 结构中的 be 的单复数如何确定?

教师可以和学生一起总结本单元的语法重点:

(1)询问地点的特殊疑问句要用疑问词where,回答此类问句的关键词是表示地点的方位介词短语,如本单元介绍的behind the classroom building、next to the window等。询问地点的疑问句中be 动词的单复数由主语决定,如果主语是单数,be 动词用is,如"Where is the library?";如果主语是复数,

be 动词则用 are, 如 "Where are the bookcases?"。

- (2) there be 结构表示"某地存在某物或某人"的意义。该结构的否定句和疑问句不用借助助动 词,否定句中在be动词后加not,疑问句中把be动词放在句首。there be结构中be动词的单复数由be 动词后的主语决定。例如: 当主语是单数 a whiteboard 或 a teachers' building, 用的是 is; 当主语是复数 any lockers 或 some trees, 用的是 are。
- (3)关于some和any在there be结构中的用法,教师可以提供一些例句,引导学生找出这两个修 饰词的用法规律。如:
 - There are some pictures on the wall.
 - There aren't any pictures on the wall in my room.
 - Are there any pictures on the wall in your room? 从这些例句可以看出,some一般用于肯定句中,any一般用于否定句或疑问句中。

2. 语法练习

(1)学生独立完成活动3b的填空练习,然后两人一组讨论所填内容。师生核对答案。核对答案 时,教师应要求学生读出完整的句子。教师提醒学生关注句子中谓语动词的单复数问题和主谓一致问 题。教师还可以借助翻译这一形式,让学生体会中英文表达"某处有某物"语序上的差异。如:

There is a nice library behind the classroom building.(地点状语在后)

在教学楼后面有一个漂亮的图书馆。(地点状语在前)

- (2) 学生观察 3c 的插图并阅读短文,根据图片提示圈出短文中的正确介词,完成活动 3c。在学生 完成短文填空后,教师可以设计几个问题让学生回答,帮助学生更好地理解短文内容。如:
 - What's the text about?
 - What's in the classroom?
 - How do the students sit in the classroom?

3. 语法运用

教师组织学生两人一组,根据活动3c的内容和活动3d的关键句型,讨论中英教室的不同。为了 让活动更真实, 教师可以创设语境: 你向一名来自英国的交换生介绍你的教室, 并谈论中英教室的不 同。两人一组分角色,谈论各自教室的特点。学生在这种模拟真实的交流中运用 there be 结构和方位 介词,达成目标语法形式、意义和运用的统一。学生讨论完成后,教师邀请部分学生在班级里表演对 话, 师生及时给予评价。

· 拓展活动: 开火车游戏

教师组织学生用 there be 结构和方位介词造句,每人必须用到 there be 结构的陈述句、特殊疑问句 和一般疑问句中的任意两种。首先,教师随机指定两位学生对话,然后再由第二位学生随机选第三位 学生并与之对话。照此类推,尽量让更多学生有机会参加这个游戏活动。如:

- S1: Excuse me, is there a library at the school?
- S2: Yes, there is.
- S1: Oh, good. Where is the library?

S2: It's behind the classroom building. Excuse me, where is the teacher's desk? S3: ...

Section B

What fun things do you do at school?



内容分析

文本分析: Section B的引导性问题是 "What fun things do you do at school?",此部分从学习描述 学校内场所和教室物品的位置过渡到聚焦不同场所的常见活动,通过谈论不同场所中有意思的活动, 培养学生对新学校的热爱。阅读文本是 Peter 写给朋友 Flora 的回复邮件,Peter 在邮件中介绍了自己的 新学校,还谈论了自己最喜欢的几个校内场所,并说明了原因,这呼应了该板块的引导性问题"What fun things do you do at school?"。该邮件的排版方式体现了较为真实的邮件特点,其中包括收件人地 址(To)、发件人地址(From)、邮件发送按钮(Send),以及其他常见邮件图标。邮件文本包括称 呼语(Hi Flora)、导语(Thanks for your email ...)、正文、结束语(How about your school?)、结尾敬 语(Yours)、署名(Peter)等。在正文部分,Peter 首先对自己的新学校用了三个词作了总体评价,即 great、beautiful、modern,接下来Peter重点介绍了三个场所:操场、教室、食堂,包括每个场所的位 置、典型的学生活动,以及他最喜欢的场所及原因。由于Peter是外国学生,他对我国学校独特的活 动比较感兴趣,如学生在操场上做早操、每周一升旗、教室里每周学生换座位,以及食堂里的中餐 等,这些都是围绕新学校提供的细节信息,使文章的内容更丰富、更有层次。对于以上方面,Peter也 给出了积极肯定的评价,用了一些带有积极意义的词,如amazing、special、love、delicious等。

活动设计:本部分的1a-1d是完整的阅读任务链,1a活动让学生在读前讨论自己最喜欢的校园活 动场所,导入Section B部分的核心话题,关联阅读内容。1b活动让学生快速阅读全文并推测Flora在 上一封邮件问了Peter什么问题,此活动融入略读策略,要求学生在理解文章主旨的基础上概括关键 问题。活动 1c 关注邮件中形容词的运用, 让学生找出形容词描述的对象。活动 1d 的前三个问题进一 步挖掘文中细节信息,最后一个问题是基于语篇的拓展,让学生关联自己的学校,描述与Peter的学 校的相似之处。

本单元的写作任务依旧采用以读促写的仿写形式。阅读部分的电子邮件为学生提供了写作范文。 写作环节分两个步骤:活动2a让学生列出写作要点,记录相关信息,作信息和语言上的准备。活动 2b呈现了邮件的基本结构,学生只需将2a中列出的要点内容填入邮件中。这样设计降低了学生的写 作难度。

学习目标

- 能够观察、识别电子邮件的形态特征,了解邮件的内容结构和基本格式。
- 能够通过快速阅读了解电子邮件的内容大意,推断作者写回信的主要目的。
- 能够根据语篇中的各类形容词推断作者的情感态度,并能够用这些形容词描述自己 的学校。
- 能够反思自己在校园里喜欢做的事情,增强对自己校园的了解和喜爱。
- 能够模仿课文的结构和语言给朋友写一封电子邮件,介绍自己的校园。

教学建议

1. 读前准备

- (1) 教师播放学校宣传片,引导学生讨论最喜欢的学校场所,并简单陈述理由,完成活动1a。教 师可以提出以下问题,还可以提供语篇中的语言支架帮助学生讨论。如:
 - What's your favourite place at school? And why? (My favourite place is ... because ...)
- What fun things do you usually do at school? (do morning exercises together, raise the flag, change seats every Monday, etc.)
- (2) 读前预测。教师让学生观察活动 1b 中的三幅图片以及 Section B 的关键问题 "What fun things do you do at school?", 鼓励学生根据图片和关键问题预测文章可能涵盖的内容。如:
 - What can you see in the three pictures?
 - What do you usually do at these places?
 - What do you think the main idea is?

2. 阅读理解

- (1) 学生快速阅读全文,了解文章体裁和大致内容,并回答以下问题:
- What kind of text is it? How do you know?
- Who is writing to whom?
- What is the text about?
- What question does Peter answer? / What question did Flora ask? How do you know?

从 1b 指示语可以看出,这封邮件是一封回信。教师引导学生关注邮件组成部分,包括收件人、发 件人、主题、称呼语、导语、正文、结束语、结尾敬语、签名等。接下来,教师引导学生思考邮件 的核心内容之一,即Flora问了什么问题。从邮件的这句话 "To answer your question, my new school is great!"可以推测出,Flora在她给Peter的邮件中问了"What's your new school like?"这个问题。

- (2)学习快速阅读技巧。教师需要指导学生如何进行快速阅读,提醒学生注意以下技巧:
- 🎐 默读,心里也不要出声。
- 以意群为单位读,不要逐字读。

• 限定时间。根据文本长度和学生情况而定,让学生在规定时间内完成阅读。

教学提示: 默读可以加快阅读速度, 让学生养成默读习惯不是排斥朗读, 朗读可以在读后阶段进 行。以意群为单位阅读也是快速阅读的方法之一,如果逐字读会大大影响阅读速度。例如:

- A. All | the | students | go | there | and | do | exercises | together | in | the | morning.
- B. All the students | go there | and do exercises together | in the morning.
- C. All the students | go there and do exercises together | in the morning.

如果按A句标注的逐字读法, 意味着眼睛视距仅为一个单词, 眼睛需在每个单词上停顿, 且停顿 12 次。若按照B句标注的意群读法,视距就会扩大,一次读几个单词,眼睛在单词上的停顿减少到4 次。待学生阅读能力提高后,还可以要求学生加大视距,按C句标注的更大意群读。

意群是句子的意义单位。以意群为单位进行阅读可以大大提高阅读速度,而且还可以提高阅读 理解正确率,这是因为读者是以意义为单位加工文本信息。教师需要指导学生如何以意群为单位进 行阅读,培养正确的阅读习惯。

(3)仔细阅读,关注文本结构和细节信息。教师引导学生关注正文部分的结构,即先总体评价新 学校 (..., my new school is great! It's very beautiful. There are many modern buildings.),再重点介绍了三 个场所:操场、教室和食堂。接着,教师引导学生完成以下表格,梳理文本主要信息。

My new school is great! It's very beautiful.				
Place Location Activity Comment				
sports field	next to the school hall	do exercises, raise the flag	amazing, a special way	
classroom building	behind the sports field	spend most of the time, change seats every week	big and clean, next to my best friend	
dining hall	across from the sports field	eat many kinds of food	my favourite place, delicious jiaozi	

- (4)仔细阅读,关注局部细节。教师引导学生阅读活动1d指示语和四个问题,并要求学生用完整 的句子回答前三个问题,在文中找到答案的出处,做好标记,养成阅读时回归文本的好习惯。教师给 学生充足的时间讨论第四个问题。教师还可以启发学生思考更多深层次问题。如:
 - Why does Peter think raising the flag is a special way to start the week?
 - What does Peter think of changing seats every week? How about you?
 - What do you think of Peter's school?
- (5) 再次阅读, 关注语言知识。学生阅读活动1c指示语, 明确任务, 然后在文本中圈出相应形容 词。教师可让学生找出文本中所有的形容词,然后以表格的形式将形容词和其修饰的名词写在黑板上。

Adjective	Noun
great, beautiful	new school
modern	buildings
large	sports field
amazing	activities on the sports field
special	way to start the week
big and clean	classroom
best	friend
favourite	dining hall
delicious	jiaozi

教师引导学生观察这些形容词,并提问让学生思考,如 "Looking at all these adjectives, what does Peter feel about his new school?"。教师可以让学生用这些形容词造句,造句时既可以用邮件中的句子, 也可以造新句子。如:

Peter's new school is beautiful. / It's a beautiful school.

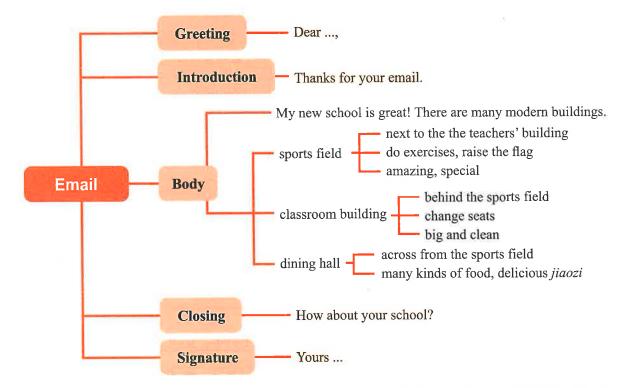
教师可以先让学生思考形容词的用法特点,然后总结:形容词是用来描述名词特点的词,可放在 系动词后用作表语,也可放在名词前用作定语。教师应鼓励学生在平常关注、积累这类词汇,丰富自 己的语言表达。

3. 读后活动

- (1) 听录音, 关注语流中的朗读技巧。教师播放录音, 让学生边听边关注哪些词重读, 哪些词弱 读,哪里出现意群停顿,哪里有连读。
- (2) 教师再次播放录音, 学生跟读, 体会语流中的朗读技巧, 并关注如何朗读表达强烈情感的形 容词。
 - (3)学生大声朗读,体会英语重读和弱读交错时的节奏感和文本表达的情感。

4. 写前准备

(1)总结邮件写作框架。教师引导学生复习阅读活动1b的邮件主体部分,让学生借助思维导图再 次梳理邮件的写作框架。如下图所示:



教师启发学生思考"How can you introduce your school?", 学生可以采用 Peter 的做法,即用总一分结构,先整体评价学校,再分别介绍每个场所,包括场所位置、典型学生活动、最喜欢的场所及原因等。学生也可以采用其他符合逻辑的文本结构模式。

(2)列出写作要点。学生两人一组讨论活动2a列出的写作要点,完成语块和句型的积累。学生讨论完毕后,教师可以请几位学生分享自己列出的关键词句,并将它们列在黑板上。如:

Places in my school	library, classroom building, teachers' building, dining hall
My favourite places	sports field, music hall, science building, art building
Where it is	It's across from / in the middle of / in front of / behind
Why I like it	Because it is beautiful / amazing / fantastic / big and clean
What I like to do there	I like to do exercises / read books / make friends / enjoy all kinds of food there.

5. 写作训练

- (1)补全信息,写出初稿。学生根据活动2b提供的半控制性写作模板,独立补全邮件信息,完成写作初稿。在起始年级,教师应注重培养学生的基本写作习惯,半控制性写作有助于学生养成良好的写作习惯。对于学习能力较强的学生,教师可以不提供模板,让学生自由写作。学生完成初稿后,教师可让学生观察自己习作,思考邮件正文段落的组织结构和句子之间的逻辑关系。
- (2)同伴互评。学生两人一组交换初稿,教师提供评价量表,学生根据评价量表进行互评,并提出修改意见。学生再根据同伴的反馈进一步修改作义。评价量表参考如下:

	Checklist		
Assessment	Total score	Your score	
Content (complete)	****		
Language (correct and concise)	****		
Structure (coherent)	****		
Handwriting (clean and clear)	****		
Punctuation (correct)	****		

(3)作文分享。学生完成文章修改后,小组讨论选出优秀作文,并通过投影展示或朗读分享。教 师对学生的作文给予评价,指出优点并提出修改意见。课后,教师可将优秀作文张贴在教室后面黑板 区域,供大家欣赏与学习。



🥝 内容分析

本单元项目活动设计了比较真实的情景模拟——带领来访学生参观自己的校园,要求学生综合运 用本单元所学语言完成任务。项目活动分三步进行:首先,活动3a要求学生画一张学校的平面图,并 计划参观的路线;活动3b呈现了介绍校园的各种句式,还给出了示范介绍的语言支架,并先让学生在 小组内练习以学生导游的身份介绍校园;活动3c让学生在班级展示带领来访者参观的情景,全班投票 选出最佳导游。三个步骤相互支撑,层层铺垫,最终达成模拟真实场景的语言运用目标。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够小组合作完成校园平面图的绘制,并合理规划参观路线。
- 能够根据校园平面图,运用本单元所学语言以模拟导览的方式介绍自己的学校。

教学建议

1. 项目准备

- (1)明确项目活动任务。教师引导学生阅读项目活动标题和3a指示语,明确项目活动主题和任务。
- (2)项目分工。教师可安排五至六名学生为一个小组,根据学生的优势进行分工合作。如:擅长 画画的同学负责绘制校园平面图,擅长书写的同学负责在平面图上标注场所,擅长设计的同学负责规 划游览最佳路线,擅长口语表达的同学负责担任导游,擅长资料收集与整理的同学负责编制文案。

(3)策划方案。教师可让学生进行小组讨论,确定小组组长,进行统筹安排。

2. 项目实施

- (1)搜索和整理信息。学生通过网络搜索与学校相关的图片,从建筑物特色、位置和游览路线图 几个方面选择要展示的内容,还可增加学校相关地标建筑和历史文化背景知识。
- (2)制作校园平面图。学生小组讨论确定校园平面图的风格、建筑物位置、配色和路线选择等, 小组成员开始绘制,电子和手绘均可,确保校园平面图美观、简洁大方。
- (3)语言操练。学生根据活动3b给的提示语,在小组内进行模拟演练。导游进行介绍时,要多与游客进行互动。如:

Guide: Hello, and welcome to our school! My name is ... and I'm your school guide today. Let's begin the tour. This is our classroom building.

Visitor 1: Wow, it's really big and clean! I like it very much.

Guide: Yes. Look, the big building behind it is our library.

Visitor 2: Amazing! It looks so beautiful.

Guide: Yes, the library is my favourite place. I enjoy all kinds of books there. Let's move on. The next place on our tour is ...

3. 项目展示

教师请不同小组向全班展示导览参观过程,各小组全部成员上台进行展示,一人为导游,其他学生为游客。导游与游客要根据本组平面图的风格进行恰当的互动。若课堂时间有限,教师可以让学生课后完成项目准备和实施阶段的活动,课堂时间留给小组上台展示,给每个学生展示自己的机会。

4. 项目评价

各小组展示完成后,教师要引导学生及时给予评价和反馈。待所有小组展示完成后,教师引导学生投票,选出最佳导游、最美导览图和最优合作小组等,并颁发奖状,以此鼓励学生。

Reflecting

🔘 内容分析

本单元的反思性评价表主要从词汇、语法、语言功能和产出任务几个方面引导学生回顾自己的学习过程和收获。前两句要求学生回顾本单元所学的教室里物品的名称,以及校园内不同场所的名称。第三句检查学生对单元语言学习目标与语言功能项目掌握情况,即运用there be结构和方位介词谈论物品和场所的位置。最后一句概括了本单元聚焦的语言表现任务,即运用所学语言介绍自己的学校、描述学校里自己喜欢的地方。

价值引领句 "A school is a place to start our dreams."揭示了学校的作用和意义。学校是人生旅程中的重要阶段,是一个人成长、学习、发展的重要场所。在这里,学生不仅获得了知识和技能,更重要的是发展独立思考、解决问题、创新和合作能力,健全品格。在这里,学生可以接触到各种各样的

人和思想,拓宽自己的视野和思路,遇到好老师,结交好朋友。总之,学校是梦想启航的地方。本单 元引导学生珍惜学校、爱护学校、鼓励他们为自己的梦想而努力奋斗。

教学建议

1. 在单元学习结束之际,教师引导学生回顾总结本单元学了哪些与校园相关的词汇,可以让学生 先说出来,然后再写下来。如:

	Here are some things in my classroom:
	Here are some places at my school:
	2. 教师让学生回顾本单元学习的语法结构,思考这个语法结构表达的功能和意义,再让学生独立
完月	成下面的填空练习。
	I can use prepositions "in front of, behind, next to, between, across from" to describe places at my
sch	ool. For example,
	To describe the existence, presence, or location of something, we use the structure
_	I can use the structure to describe the locations of school building. For
exa	mple,
	3. 教师让学生写出介绍学校场所的小段孩。并介绍自己最喜欢的地方。

- 4. 教师引导学生反思并说出在这个单元学习过程中的最大收获,除了上述语言和功能方面,谈一 谈对于学校的理解是否更加深刻。

三、课文注释

1. What's your new classroom like, Peter? 你的新教室是什么样子的,彼得?

"What's ... like?"通常用来询问对人、事、物的意见和看法,意思是"……是什么样子?",相当 于 "How is / are ...?"。例如:

What's your new friend like? / How is your new friend? 你的新朋友是个什么样的人?

What's the weather like? / How is the weather? 今天天气怎么样啊?

- 2. Oh, and there's another blackboard at the back of the classroom. 哦, 教室后面还有一块黑板。
 - (1) another 指同类人或事物中的"另一个;又一个;再一个"。例如:

We can't go there today. Let's go another day. 我们今天去不了了, 改天再去吧。

Would you like another piece of cake? 你想再吃一块蛋糕吗?

(2) at the back (of ...) 表示 "在……的后面"。例如:

I saw some keys at the back of the desk drawers. 我在书桌抽屉后面发现几把钥匙。

There are some trees at the back of the house. 房子后面有一些树。

3. Thanks for your email. 谢谢你的邮件。

"Thanks for …"和 "Thank you for …"都是表达感谢的方式,for后面接名词或动词-ing形式,表示感谢的原因。还可以用"Many thanks for …"表达感谢。例如:

Thanks for your question. 谢谢你的提问。

Thank you very much for your call. 非常感谢你打电话来。

4. All the students go there and do exercises together in the morning. 全体学生早晨去那里一起做早操。

此句中 do exercises 意为"做操", exercise 指"一套动作或训练活动"。exercise 作名词时还可表示"活动;锻炼;运动"。例如:

Running is good exercise. 跑步是有益的运动。

exercise 也可用作动词,表示"运动;锻炼;训练"。例如:

I exercise four or five times a week. 我每周锻炼四到五次。

Unit 3 My School

The theme of this unit is school. Students will learn about places in a school, how to describe them and their locations using prepositions and the "there is / are" structure. They will learn how to introduce and talk about their school as well as learning about how schools differ around the world with some interesting examples. This will lead them to creating a map of their school and providing a tour for visitors. The ultimate aim of the unit is to help students think about, discuss, and be able to answer the question of the unit: What do you like about your school?

Opening Page

Suggested Answers (Look and share)

- 1. The photos shows a view of a middle school in China.
- 2. The people on the sports field are doing various activities. Some are running on the track. Others are doing group exercises.
- 3. I like to do morning exercises on our sports field. It's a great way to be with my classmates at the beginning of the day.

Section A

1a	
Language Tip	"Sports Field" vs "Playground" A "sports field" is a large area with specific parts for different sports. They are often marked out with white lines, flags, or posts. A common layout is a central pitch for football or another ball game, and a running track around the outside of the pitch, as in the photo on the opening page of the unit. A "playground" is an outdoor area where children can play, usually in a school or in public parks. Playgrounds often have things for children to play and climb on, such as swings and slides. They are more likely to be seen in a kindergarten or primary schools than in middle and high schools. "Campus" is more common in the US but is used in the UK at universities and colleges of further education to refer to all the buildings and land that make up the institution. What would be called a "playground" in the UK would be called the "schoolyard" in the US.
Sample Conversation	A: Where's the art building? B: It's in front of the gym. / It's behind the dining hall. A: Where's the student centre? B: It's between the library and the gym. A: Where's the music hall? B: It's across from the science building.

1b		
Language Tip	Asking for Help It is important to be polite when asking strangers for help. In English it sounds impolite to just say: "Where's the library?" Here are some useful expressions to ask politely for directions: Excuse me. How do I get to the library? Sorry to bother you. Can you tell me how to get to the library? Please could you help me? I'm looking for the library. Could you please tell me the way to the library? It is also polite to express thanks when someone helps you: Thank you. / Thanks. / Thanks very much (for your help).	
Teaching Tip	Listen for Context Clues Have students listen to the conversations. Ask them about what they hear: What are the characters talking about? Where are they, at school or outside it? Then ask them which places in the characters are looking for before completing the activity.	
Answers	3 student centre 1 a classroom 2 Ms Gao's office	

1e

Suggested Answers

- 1. The classroom building is behind the sports field.
- 2. The teachers' building is across from the school hall.
- 3. The student centre is between the library and the gym.

1d

Teaching Tip

Teaching Tip

Map Directions

Have students work in pairs to ask and give directions using the maps they drew rather than referring to their textbooks. Encourage them to use their own words but also include the expressions above to ask politely for help.



1

Odd One Out

With books closed, read the following word groups slowly and ask students to listen for the word with the different vowel sound:

- sport, spot, short
- law, lord, <u>lot</u>
- floor, four, fox
- war, watch, want

Repeat the Odd One Out activity with the sounds /u:/ and /v/.

- book, boot, blue
- cool, cook, clue
- loop, loose, <u>look</u>
- soon, stood, school



Teaching Tip

Identify Syllables

Words contain one or more syllables. A syllable is a single unbroken vowel sound within a spoken word, with or without surrounding consonants. Help students identify how many syllables a word has by hearing the "space" between the syllables.

- 1. With books closed, write the word "family" / fæməli/ on the board, and say it with students. Repeat a few times and slow down each time to make the space between syllables clearer, e.g. "fam-i-ly". Elicit from students how many syllables the word has (three) and put dots for each syllable above each part of the word. Ask students which syllable they think is stressed, i.e. which syllable is said slightly stronger than the other syllables. The first syllable is stressed in "family". Draw a larger dot above the first part of the word.
- 2. Read another word from Activity 2 and write it on the board. Ask students to brainstorm ways to mark the stressed / unstressed syllables. (e.g. dots, lines, colours.)
- 3. Let students listen to the audio without looking at the book. Then ask students how many syllables the words have. (They all have three syllables.)
- 4. Write the first word on the board "library" and play the audio and ask students which syllable is stressed. They can take turns to come and mark the stress as they choose. Repeat for all words.
- 5. Open books and listen again with students repeating all words out loud.

Syllable Search

Ask students to look through the vocabulary list at the back of their book and see how many three-syllable words with the first / second syllable stressed they can find. Students can practise saying the words and write sentences using them to read to the class. Words from vocabulary list: different, delicious, similar, exciting, remember, everyone, excellent, instrument, scientist, musical, exactly, reporter, restaurant, celebrate, example.

2a				
Answers	in fron	t of, in th	e middle	of, next to, at the back of
2b				п
Answers	1. C	2. D	3. A	4. B
2c				R.
Answers	1. T	2. F	3. T	4. F

Fun with Conversations

It is fun to say things in different ways—fast, slow, loud, and soft. First, have students read the turns in the conversation very slowly with the correct pronunciation, emphasizing the sounds and stretching the words. Then, have students read the same turns as quickly and clearly as they can. Finally, have students read at normal speed.

Teaching Tip

Disappearing Conversation

A more challenging alternative to 1d involves helping students memorize and roleplay a longer conversation.

- First, write a longer conversation on the board.
- Then, assign roles and have students practise the conversation.
- Next, erase one or two words from each line of the conversation and have students practise the conversation again.
- As students continue to practise, gradually erase more and more of the conversation.
- Finally, erase the entire conversation, as students continue to practise.

2e

What Begins with the Letter ...?

Listing words that begin with the same letter can help students learn and become more confident with vocabulary.

Optional Approach

- 1. Ask students to look at the picture (on page 37) and see if they can find things that begin with the letters: "b" (board) or "d" (desk).
- 2. Then ask students to look around their own classroom and add to the lists (e.g. book, bag).
- 3. Encourage students to think of different things (e.g. blue pen)
- 4. Have students share their ideas with the class using "There is / are ..." for their things, e.g. "There are many bags in our classroom."
- 5. Extend the activity by having students write a list for each letter of the alphabet A-Z and see if they can find things in the classroom or around their school for each letter.

2f

Useful Structures

• The whiteboard in his classroom is in the same place in my classroom.

- There are exactly the same number of desks in both classrooms.
- There is a smart board in their classroom, but there isn't one in mine.
- His classroom is (very) similar to mine.
- His classroom is (very) different from mine.

Teaching Tip

Grammar Focus

Teaching Tip	Sentence Competition Before activity 3a, have students work in small groups to make as many sentences with "there be" as possible. Give teams five minutes and then elicit sentences and write on the board. Award one point for each sentence. Only give points for grammatically accurate questions. The group with the most points is the winner.				
Answers	Where is the library? Where are the bookcases? It is behind the classroom building. They are next to the window. Is there a whiteboard in your classroom? Are there any lockers? Yes, there is. / No, there isn't. Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.				
	There <u>is</u> a teachers' building across from the school hall. There <u>is</u> a student centre between the library and the gym. There <u>are</u> some trees in front of the sports field.				

3b			
Answers	1. are, They are	2. is / 's	3. Is, is, It is / It's
Answers	4. Are, aren't, are	5. is / 's, It is / It's	6. are

3c	
Teaching Tip	Describe Things in a Picture Before doing the activity, have students describe the things in the picture. Then write the descriptions on the board. Ask questions to elicit more things. For example: Is there a? Are there any? Where is the?
Answers	on, next to, behind, in front of, on

3d	
Suggested	Anayyara yyill yarra
Answers	Answers will vary.

Optional Activity: Is There a Post Office near Here?

Purpose	To help students use the target language correctly.		
Materials Required	Pencils or pens, paper.		

Procedure

1. Draw a map on the board:

1.		2.		HOSPITAL
		North Street		
3.	est Street	PARK	t Street	4.
	3	South Street	East	

- 2. Have students copy the map on their paper. Ask them to add four places to the map. Tell them not to show their maps to classmates.
- 3. Have students work in pairs. One student asks questions and tries to establish what places are at numbers 1-4 on their partner's map. For example:
 - A: Is there a bookstore near here?
 - B: No, there isn't.
 - A: Is there a library near here?
 - B: Yes. It's on West Street, next to the park.
 - A: Is number 3 a library?
 - B: Yes!
- 4. When the student has guessed the correct places and locations for 1-4 they should look at their partner's map to check, and then change roles.

Section B

IA	-		_
T	eachi	ng '	Гір

Give Reasons Using "Because"

When discussing their favourite places in school with their partners, encourage students to give reasons why they like those places, with "because". For example:

- My favourite place at school is the library, because it's quiet and I love reading.
- I like the science building most, **because** we do lots of interesting experiments there.

1b

Email Etiquette

Emails are a very common way of communicating in the modern world. They can be used for formal or informal communications, although informal communication is done more today with messaging. They are similar to letters in structure, but being digital are more flexible.

Language Tip

- Emails usually have a "Subject" line at the top of the message which gives the subject of the email (i.e. what it is about) and appears when all the emails are listed together in the "Inbox" to make it easier to identify them.
- Emails begin with a greeting line, such as an informal "Hi ..." (or similar) or more formal "Dear ..."
- The first paragraph often refers to a previous email or communication and can also contain other greeting questions, such as asking how somebody is.

• The following paragraphs contain the main message. Paragraphs are used to organize the text; each paragraph is made up of several sentences about a single subject. A new paragraph marks a change in subject. • The last part of the email is usually a formal / informal farewell, or "sign off" Language Tip followed by the sender's name. For example: Formal: (Yours) Sincerely, (Best / Kind) Regards, Respectfully (Yours) Informal: Best, Have a great day, Take care, Talk soon, Catch you later Often an email signature will also contain a person's information, such as their phone number, job title, etc. Skimming "Skimming" is reading a text quickly to understand the general ideas and meaning. It is not necessary to read every word when skimming. For example, with an article, looking at any pictures, reading the headline or title and subheadings, and the first sentence of each paragraph will give a good idea of what the article is about. Skimming works best with non-fiction texts, such as emails and articles. Read Silently and Read Aloud Most often the teacher has students read aloud in class. When reading aloud, students can be asked to read individually, in pairs, in small groups or with the whole class. Reading aloud can be beneficial as the teacher can check if all students are following **Teaching Tip** the text and all students are pronouncing the words properly. However, not all students read at the same speed or with the same accuracy and fluency. Teachers must be aware that some students will suffer from performance anxiety when reading aloud. Giving students a short time to read a passage silently before they read aloud will help ease some of that anxiety. When students read silently, they can read at their own pace. Asking students to close their books after completion of a silent reading task helps the teacher see who is taking a little longer and may need more support or help. Asking students to track the text with their fingers as they read silently can help the teacher see which words or phrases in the text students pause or struggle most with. Answer A. What's your new school like?

Scanning (for Detail / Specific Information)

Teaching Tip

Have students scan the email to complete the activity. Remind students that they should not read everything. They must look for just the information that will help complete the activity. Remind students that when scanning they should look for key words. In this case the key words will be adjectives that describe places and things in the school. They can highlight the adjectives first. When they find a key target word, they should read the full sentence (and possibly the sentences before and after) to see if it contains the information they need.

1. beautiful: the school 2. modern: the buildings		
Answers 3. large: the sports field		
	4. big and clean: the classroom5. delicious: <i>jiaozi</i>	

1d	
Teaching Tip	 Quiz Time Ask students to think of five more questions about Peter's email in an even number of small groups. Encourage students to look at all aspects of the email and think of as many different types of question as they can. For example: About locations at the school (e.g. Where is the sports field?) The times things are done (e.g. How often do they change seats?) Spellings of key words (e.g. How do you spell delicious?) Other details (e.g. Who is Peter writing the email to?) With books closed, have two groups quiz each other. The group with the most correct answers wins.
Suggested Answers	 Students in Peter's school do morning exercises on the sports field. He sits next to his best friend Han Lin this week. The dining hall is his favourite place because there are many kinds of food. Peter's school is similar to ours because the dining hall is across from the sports field. We also do morning exercises on the sports field.

2a	
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

7 MISTOCK S	
26	
	Dear <u>John</u> ,
Sample Writing	Thank you for your email. Your school sounds fun! I'd like to tell you about my school. There are many interesting places here. They're the library, sports field, science building, and garden. My favourite place is the library. It's behind the classroom building. I love it because it's quiet and full of interesting books. I like to sit and read there. Bye for now, Linlin



Design a Map

Teaching Tip

Have students sketch a rough map first to help them work out where everything is and how to space it well on the page. Then they can draw a better one. The map doesn't have to be as detailed as the map on page 36, but it should be clearly labelled. The map can be a more aerial view, looking directly down onto the school, as this is easier to draw.

3b

Useful Expressions to Introduce the School:

Here we have ...

This is where we ...

Let me show you ...

Let's look at ...

Over here / There is / We have ...

Questions Visitors Might Ask:

Where is ...?

Where do you (do something)?

Teaching Tip

What's that building / place?

Visitors are also likely to ask questions about things that are different from those in their country. Although buildings and classrooms may be quite similar, they may be curious about other details that differ. For example:

How many students are there in the school / each class?

When does school start / finish?

What time does school start and finish / is lunch?

How long are your lessons / is your break time?

Do you have all your classes in one classroom?

Where do you put your bags?

What sports do you do and how often / many times a week?

Best Tour Guide

Teaching Tip

After completing 3b, have students use their maps to give tours of the school. Have each student act as the tour guide using their own map. As students are all at the same school and will all be presenting from similar maps, encourage them to change their tour from previous students to avoid repetition. Use the examples above. Encourage students to speak as fluently and naturally as possible. Afterwards have students vote for the best tour guide and give reasons for their choice, for example, she was the best tour guide because she was friendly and answered all the questions well.

Teaching Tip

For those students who are listening, ask some questions about what they have just heard to ensure they are paying attention. The teacher must give each student who presents a passage one thing to work on. This should be one aspect of their presentation that can be improved (e.g. pronunciation of a certain sound, volume, speed, emotion, or common grammatical errors). Focusing on only one error at a time will not make students feel like they have done badly and yet it will give them one thing to really work on improving.

Value Statement: A school is a place to start our dreams.

Ask students what they think the statement means and how they think it is true. Then ask students to write their own sentences beginning with "A school is a place ..." For example:

Teaching Tip

- A school is a place to learn about the world.
- A school is a place to prepare for our lives ahead.
- A school is a place to make friends for life.
- A school is a place to find out what we are good at.
- A school is a place to discover our true potential.

...

*Reading Plus

1	
Culture Note	 About Bangladesh Bangladesh is a country in South Asia that borders India and Myanmar. It has a population of over 170 million people and is very densely populated. The rainy season or the "monsoon" season in Bangladesh lasts from June to October. Natural disasters such as floods happen frequently in Bangladesh, and it is considered a country severely threatened by climate change. When there are issues with flooding and the damage it can cause to infrastructure, using solar power is an effective way of generating power locally without having to rely on larger power networks.
Answers	☑ The "floating school" is open in the rainy season.☑ The boat picks students up in the morning.

2

Suggested Answers

- 1. The floating school is important to students in Bangladesh because it means they can get an education even when the climate and weather make it impossible for them to move about.
- 2. The floating school might face difficulties from the water and changes in the weather. It probably also needs to be looked after and fixed regularly to make sure it is still safe for use as a school.

UNIT 4 MY FAVOURITE SUBJECT

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元主要围绕学科学习这一主题展开。该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"多彩、安全、有意义的学校生活"和"自我认识、自我管理、自我提升"子主题密切相关。本单元通过创设真实的校园生活情境,展示了学生日常的学习与生活,让学生通过谈论在校学习的科目、各自最喜爱的学科及其原因,互相交流对不同学科的认识,反思自己的学习状态,理解不同学科的育人作用,进而学会采取有效方法解决学习中遇到的问题。

本单元的大问题 "Why do we learn different subjects?" 引导学生探究学习不同学科的意义。学生在初中起始阶段就应当主动思考和探究这个问题,因为只有当学生充分认识到学习不同学科的意义,才能调动主观能动性,自觉自愿地发展对各学科的学习兴趣。Section A 的引导性问题是 "Why do you like this subject?",该部分呈现了学生之间和师生之间有关所学科目的日常谈话,让学生通过听和模仿对话学会谈论每日学习的科目和自己喜爱的学科,并简单地阐述原因。Section B 主要围绕引导性问题 "What can you learn from different subjects?"展开,呈现了来自中国和加拿大的两名初中学生在网络平台上的发帖,他们交流各自学校本学期所学学科,以及自己最喜爱的学科和原因等。学生通过阅读并分析这两个帖子,提升对不同学科的理解,反思自己喜爱不同学科的原因,并通过写回帖介绍自己的相关情况,交流对不同学科的认识,从而理解学习不同学科的意义所在,发掘自己对各学科的学习兴趣。

本单元项目活动要求学生设计一周的课程表并陈述设计背后的理由。拓展阅读板块展示了四门选修课的课程招生广告,这些内容能够拓宽学生的文化视野,让他们深入理解学习不同学科领域课程的目的和意义。

总而言之,本单元旨在让学生理解不同学科的特点和作用,能对单元大问题"Why do we learn different subjects?"有更深刻的理解,同时也希望学生通过本单元的学习,正确理解价值引领句"Interest is the best teacher.",能够主动培养对各学科的兴趣,全面发展自己的能力,丰富自己的人生。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- > 谈论学校所学科目和自己最喜爱的学科,能使用恰当的形容词描述不同学科;
- ▶ 识别网络平台发帖的信息特点,并能回复别人的发帖;能从兴趣、能力、学科的课堂活动、任课教师或自己未来的职业理想等方面阐述自己喜爱某门学科的原因;
- ➤ 听辨并准确认读三组双元音音素 (/eɪ/、/aɪ/与/ɔɪ/, /əʊ/与/aʊ/, /ɪə/、/eə/与/ʊə/) 以及含有这些音素的常见单词;在语言交际中,随着语速的加快自然地连读单词;
- ➤ 正确使用 and、but、because 等连词连接句子中的不同成分或两个句子,使表达逻辑更清晰,语言更加连贯和流畅;
- > 了解不同国家初中阶段课程设置的情况, 比较所设科目的差别;
- ▶ 探究不同学科的特点,理解它们不同的学科价值和育人作用,有意识地培养自己对各学科的兴趣。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

Why do we learn different subjects?



单元标题My Favourite Subject开宗明义,点出本单元的主题。开篇页的主题图展现了学生上音乐课的日常画面:在窗明几净的教室里,老师手持阮并鼓励一名女生轻触琴弦,了解这一乐器的特点,其他学生带着好奇和专注的神情望向授课的老师和她手中的乐器。Look and share 部分的前两个问题与主题图紧密相关,主要让学生通过观察图片细节判断学生正上什么课,并发表对这一学科的看法。最后一个问题则引导学生谈论自己喜欢的学科,自然过渡到本单元的主题学习中。

开篇页呈现了本单元的大问题"Why do we learn different subjects?",目的是引导学生思考和探究学习不同学科的意义,调动学生的主观能动性,发展对不同学科的学习兴趣。开篇页还列举了本单元的主要学习内容和目标,包括谈论学校学习的各个学科、介绍自己最喜爱的学科并说明原因、使用连词 and、but、because 连接不同信息、探究学习不同学科的重要性等。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察图片判断主题图所展现的学科教学场景。
- 能够结合主题图所展示的学科简单表达自己的认识或看法。
- 能够说出自己最喜爱的学科及原因。
- 能够明确本单元的学习目标, 为本单元的主题学习作准备。

教学建议

- 1. 浏览开篇页,明确单元主题学习目标。教师呈现单元标题 My Favourite Subject,学生大声读出 标题、教师鼓励学生预测本单元的学习内容。接着、教师让学生阅读开篇页的学习内容导引、帮助他 们理解本单元的各项内容要求、包括单元主题、语言知识、语法项目和单元主题意义等。
- 2. 观察并讨论主题图。学生仔细观察主题图,教师引导学生讨论Look and share部分的三个问 题,让他们尝试描述图片所含主题信息,发表对图片所展示学科的看法,并谈论自己喜欢的学科。教 师还可以补充提问,帮助学生挖掘图片所传递的深层内涵,使学生初步感知不同学科的价值和意义。 例如:
 - What is the teacher holding?
 - Are the students interested in the instrument? How do you know?
 - What class are they having?
 - What subjects do you have at school?
 - What is your favourite subject, and why?
 - Why do we learn different subjects?

学生在回答这些问题时,教师可在黑板上列出不同学科的英文名称,如Chinese、maths、English、 history、geography、physics等。随后,教师可启发学生思考不同学科所蕴含的价值,即不同的学科能 培养不同的能力,这也是学生将要探究的单元主题意义。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在特定的教学情境中,根据学生当时的语言表达需求适当教授生词,能较好地满足学生 的求知欲,这样比直接生硬地讲解生词效果要好很多。比如,学生正想谈到某个学科,但又不知道 用英语怎么表达; 若此时教师能教授学科的英文名称, 学生的学习就变成主动学习, 从"要我学" 变成"我要学"。



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的听力文本包含两个对话,主要展现了学生之间和师生之间谈论学习科目的场 景,其中涉及学生喜欢或不喜欢的学科及其原因,以此来回应该板块的引导性问题 "Why do you like this subject?"。在第一个对话里, Fu Xing看到 Ella似乎有些低落,主动询问原因表示关心,由此展开 有关当日所学科目的谈论。Fu Xing的询问在一定程度上让Ella意识到周二上午的大部分课程都是她 所喜欢的。该对话虽然简短,却自然融人了积极心理学。对青春期的学生而言,适时引导和鼓励他们 将关注点放在积极的、美好的、快乐的体验和事情上,有助于他们形成乐观、开朗的生活态度。第二 个对话发生在Peter和Ms Gao之间, Ms Gao通过询问Peter当天的课时安排以及他对不同学科的喜好 了解Peter的学习情况和感受,同时引导他理解不同学科的重要性。这两个对话主要围绕三个关键问 题展开,即当日的课时安排(What classes do you have today?)、最喜欢的科目(What's your favourite subject?)以及喜欢的原因(Why?)。对话中汇集了不同学习科目的名称(如history、maths、art、IT、 PE等)以及用于描述这些科目的形容词(如hard、fun、boring、exciting等)。除了谈论喜爱的学科 及原因,对话中的学生也提及了不喜欢的学科及原因。每个学生的喜好、关注点和擅长科目都有差 异,这符合生活实际。教材也借Ms Gao之口表达了对待不同学科应持有的态度,即"Every subject is important."。教材通过人物对话呈现丰富的话题词汇和目标语言,为后面学生进行口语对话、阅读 理解和写作表达作铺垫,更重要的是启发学生思考学习不同学科的意义,深入理解学习不同学科的 原因。

活动设计:活动1a—1d是一个完整的听说任务链,其中1a是听前活动,1b—1c是听中活动,1c是听后活动。活动1a集中呈现了初一年级需要学习的学科名称,为后续的活动铺垫词汇。听中活动分为两步:首先,活动1b让学生通过听对话找出所提及的学科名称,训练学生对关键细节信息的获取能力;然后,活动1c让学生通过听对话了解Ella和Peter对不同学科的喜好和感受,选出与学科对应的形容词。活动1d呈现了本部分的核心句式,让学生模仿听力对话,与同伴交流彼此喜欢的学科及原因,为探究不同学科的特点作准备。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够熟练说出不同学科的英文名称以及用于描述这些学科的形容词。
- 能够通过听获取关键信息,理解对话中两个学生各自喜欢的学科及其原因。
- ▶ 能够关注并初步感知连词 and、but、because 的表意功能,理解它们在句子中的作用。
- 能够与同伴谈论对不同学科的喜好并简单说明原因。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1) 学习各学科的英文名称。教师用课件呈现不同学科的课堂教学场景, 让学生猜测并说出对应 的学科名称,可包括art、biology、Chinese、IT、English、geography、history、maths、music、PE等。 教师用课件呈现所有学科名称或将它们写在黑板上,先示范朗读这些单词,再让学生集体朗读,确 保其发音正确。有几个单词的重音不在第一个音节,教师可以在黑板上标注其重音位置,如biology、 Chinese、geography, 提醒学生注意。
- (2) 匹配图片与学科名称。学生观察活动1a中的图片,然后将方框中的学科名称与图片进行匹 配,以实现词汇音、形、义的统一。师生共同核对答案。

2. 听力理解

- (1)教师引导学生阅读活动1b和1c的指示语,确保他们理解两个听力活动的具体要求。
- (2) 学生阅读活动1c中的四个句子,预测活动1b中Ella和Peter所谈论的学科。
- (3) 教师播放第一遍录音, 学生勾选出 Ella 和 Peter 提到的学科名称, 完成活动 1b。学生两人一 组核对答案, 然后全班核对答案。
- (4)教师播放第二遍录音,提醒学生关注有关学科喜好的关键信息,如具体的学科名称以及描述 性形容词。学生独立完成活动1c, 师生核对答案。核对答案时, 教师应要求学生读出完整的句子。
- (5) 教师可针对听力文本进行补充提问,一方面引导学生利用文本信息实现语言转换,另一方面 训练学生的思维能力和口头表达能力。例如:
 - What does Ella think of history? Why?
 - Does Ella like maths?
 - What classes does Ella have today?
 - Does Peter like Chinese?
 - What classes does Peter have today?
 - Why does Ms Gao say every subject is important?

3. 听后活动

(1)教师用课件呈现听力文本,选取文本中较为复杂或学生理解有困难的语言现象进行解析,确 保学生理解并掌握一些地道的表达。例如:第一个对话中包含两个so,教师可启发学生思考这两个so 的用法和含义。然后提供简单解释: "So?"是一个省略的问句,说话人一般使用升调,表示期待对方 继续说下去;而 "So, what's your favourite subject?"这句话中, so 的功能是引出新话题,或用在提问 前引起别人的注意, 意思是"噢; 那么"。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在英语中,一个词或一个短语后加问号就可以构成一个问句,这种简略问句在英语口语 比较常见。第一个对话中的"Why?"也是省略后的问句,完整的问句是"Why is it your favourite subject?"。此外,英语中陈述句后加问号也可变为疑问句,如 "You don't like history?",意思是 "你不喜欢历史吗?",说这句话时,句尾用升调。

- (2)教师再次播放录音,学生边听边跟读,尤其需要注意模仿说话人的语音、语调、节奏等。然后,学生两人一组演练对话。最后,教师可选几组学生在课堂上表演对话。
- (3) 学生阅读活动 1d 的指示语,明确口语活动的要求。教师可用课件呈现 1d 中的目标句型和一些形容词(如useful、important、fun、exciting、interesting等),以便学生能顺利开展口语训练。
- (4) 学生两人一组运用所给目标句型和形容词演练对话,询问对方最喜欢的学科并说明喜欢的原因。演练结束后,教师邀请几组学生在课堂上表演,并适时给予点评。

Pronunciation

🔘 内容分析

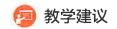
本单元的语音板块包含两个活动。活动1通过听读训练帮助学生掌握/eɪ/、/aɪ/和/ɔɪ/, /əʊ/和/aʊ/, /ɪə/、/eə/和/ʊə/这三组双元音音素的发音,同时建立字母、字母组合和三组双元音音素的对应关系。活动2提供了一段幽默对话,让学生通过听感受英语语流中常见的连读现象,再通过朗读模仿逐步掌握连读的规则和技巧,从而形成流畅连读的能力。

🕛 语音知识

连读是一种语音加工,它发生在同一意群中相邻的两个单词间。如果前一个单词词尾是辅音,后一个单词词首是元音,可以将前一个单词末尾的辅音和后一个单词词首的元音连起来读,这种现象叫连读。连读并不是强制发生的,而是在语言交际中随着语速的加快而自然产生。除教材所列举的"辅音+元音"的连读情况,常见的连读还发生在前一个词的词尾是r或re,后一个词的词首是元音时,如在短语 a pair of glasses 中,a pair of 读作/əˈpeə rəv/,pair 和 of 中间要加一个/r/音。

学习目标

- 能够听辨并正确朗读双元音音素 /eɪ/、/aɪ/、/ɔɪ/、/əʊ/、/aʊ/、/ɪə/、/eə/、/ʊə/以及含有这些音素的单词。
- ▶ 能够通过听读模仿训练感受连读现象,了解连读规则,在自然流畅的语流中自然使用连读。



- 1. 教师可在课堂上播放有关双元音发音的教学视频, 让学生通过观看视频了解双元音的发音要 领,并进行跟读模仿。同时,教师可将视频中出现的单词按照不同音素分类逐个写在黑板上,并在相 应的字母和字母组合下方画线, 为后续归纳发音规律作铺垫。
- 2. 教师播放活动1的录音,让学生跟读模仿。接着,教师给学生讲解双元音的发音要领以及需要 注意的问题。具体见下表:

音素	发音要领			
/eɪ/		● 发/eɪ/时,由/e/向/ɪ/滑动,下颚向上合拢。		
/aɪ/	1	● 发/aɪ/时,由/a/到/ɪ/滑动,口腔由全开到半合。		
/01/	发音前长后短,	● 发/ɔɪ/时,由/ɔ/到/ɪ/滑动,由圆唇变成扁唇。		
/əʊ/	口形由开到合。			
/aʊ/	● 由/a/向/ʊ/滑动,前面的/a/更清晰、响亮,发音时间较			
		长,后面的/ʊ/发得模糊、较短。		
/ɪə/、/eə/、/ʊə/	发音前长后短,从/ɪ/、/e/、/ʊ/向中元音/ə/滑动。			

教学提示: 学习双元音发音时, 教师应特别提醒学生注意以下问题:

- (1)发音时嘴形有变化。
- (2)双元音是长音,发音要有一定的长度。双元音是一个音节。
- (3)发/aɪ/音时,不要读成汉语的"爱"。读汉语的"爱"时滑动很小,嘴张得也小些。
- (4)不要把/२७/读成汉语的"欧",读"欧"时几乎不滑动,口张得太小。
- (5)双元音后接/n/、/m/时,中国学生容易漏读最后的辅音,这是因为汉语的音节一般以元音 结尾,而英语的音节以辅音结尾却很常见。以单词 pain 为例,教师可提醒学生先发 /peɪ/,再发出鼻 音/n/。教师可以让学生反复练习这类单词的发音,如tone、zone、down、mountain、lain等。
- 3. 在学生初步掌握双元音音素的发音后, 教师可呈现生词, 让学生尝试拼读, 增强其成就感。如 活动1中音素 /eɪ/下面已经呈现了name、face、day, 教师可再呈现tape、May、rain, 让学生尝试拼 读。教师对学生的表现给予反馈和鼓励、增强其学习的兴趣和自信。

- 1. 教师先让学生独自朗读活动2的句子,再播放录音,让学生多次模仿,感受幽默对话中连读的 特点。接着,学生两人一组讨论在什么情况下可以连读。
- 2. 学生讨论完毕, 教师可让他们阅读教材附录中关于连读的内容介绍, 并根据学生情况适当补充 说明,然后带领学生朗读该部分的例句。

3. 教师再次播放活动 2 的录音,学生跟读模仿,感受语调和重弱读变化,理解说话人表达的意图和情感态度。

教学提示: 教师需提醒学生在连读时应该保持自然和流畅,不要强行连读或过度连读。此外,不同的英语方言和口音可能会有不同的连读规则和习惯,因此教师可以提示学生多听、多模仿英语母语者的发音,以便更好地将连读技巧应用到实际的交际中。

4. 学生两人一组,根据对活动2的内容理解,尝试分角色朗读和表演该幽默对话,教师可鼓励学生根据内容设计合理的动作和表情。学生演练完毕,教师可请几个小组在课堂上表演。师生共同给予评价。



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的对话文本仍然围绕"最喜爱的学科及其原因"展开。对话展现了Binbin、Emma 和Meimei 三人在课间聊天的场景。Binbin 询问 Emma 并得知 Emma 和 Meimei 的下一节课是历史课,而历史课是 Emma 最喜欢的学科,由此他们三个人开始谈论各自最喜爱的学科及其原因。该对话文本比前面的听力对话中的内容更加丰富,尤其是三个学生在陈述原因时,不仅使用了形容词,还给出了更为具体的解释,如"It's interesting to learn about the past.""It's useful, and my English teacher is really nice.""Because I'm good with numbers."等。学生喜爱一门学科的原因多种多样,除了学科本身的特点和学生能力、爱好,教材还特意提及了情感因素,那就是因为喜欢一个老师而喜欢一门学科。这些原因真实可信,对话语言简练易模仿,为学生完成后续的口语输出任务提供了必要的语言支架和内容要点。另外,在对话中,Emma发现Binbin擅长的科目是数学,而数学恰好是自己的弱项,于是积极地向他请教,这一细节反映了Emma积极好学、认真对待所有学科的态度。因此,该对话文本中还渗透了学习策略和学习态度的培养,教师需适时引导学生反思自己对待不同学科的态度,学会互帮互助,进一步完善自己的学习策略和学习方法。

活动设计:活动2a—2f是包含听、看、读、说等技能训练的任务链。活动2a让学生听录音并根据 所听内容补全对话文本。对话中需填写的二个单词都是描述学科特点的形容词。该活动既是对前面听说活动所学语言的复习巩固,又是对该对话文本细节信息的考查。活动2b则聚焦对话文本内容的阅读 理解,要求学生以表格的形式梳理对话的内容要点。活动2c是基于2a对话文本的角色扮演活动。学生需先听录音并关注其中的连读现象,将前面语音板块所学的朗读技巧与对话演练有机结合起来。活动2d—2f是本单元的口头输出部分,是培养学生表达性技能的任务链,分为三个步骤。活动2d让学生将已学的话题词汇进行分类并构建词汇网络,以加深学生对词汇的理解和记忆,培养学生的认知策略。活动2e通过创设小组访谈的情境,让学生运用所学话题词汇和核心句式进行交流。活动2f让学生以口头汇报的形式转述小组访谈的内容,包括不同小组成员所喜爱的学科及相关原因,这一活动不仅要求学生充分运用Section A 所学的语言进行表达,还旨在巩固和加强学生对动词第三人称单数形式的运用。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察图片细节推测对话语境及人物活动。
- 能够通过听读对话获取文本关键信息,理解对话中人物喜欢的学科及其原因。
- 能够通过听对话发现其中的连读现象,在连贯、流畅的语流中正确使用连读。
- 能够就不同学科发表自己的看法,理解不同学科的价值。

教学建议

1. 听力理解

- (1)教师通过与学生问答的方式帮助学生复习已学内容,并导入新课。教师可先问全班 学生 "What's your next class?", 然后选取个别学生提问 "Is it your favourite subject? Why or why not?" "What's your favourite subject? Why?"。最后, 教师引导学生关注 2a 的对话: "Now we're going to listen to a conversation between Binbin, Emma, and Meimei. Let's find out what their favourite subjects are." .
- (2) 教师用课件呈现2a的插图,引导学生仔细观察图片,包括图片中的人物角色、动作、表情, 以及场景等,然后提出问题供学生思考并讨论,如 "Where are they?" "What are they probably talking about?" "What are they probably going to do?" 等。教师可利用这些问题引导学生推测对话内容,比 如,根据图中人物手里的书本,学生可以猜出对话发生在学校,而且是下课时间。
- (3)学生阅读活动2a的指示语与对话文本,明确活动要求。在播放录音前,教师可引导学生根据 上下文推测需填写的内容,以帮助学生提高信息获取的准确性。比如,文中Binbin询问Emma为什么 喜欢历史课, Emma 的回答是 "It's ______ to learn about the past."。根据这一句式, 学生能大致推 断出空格处可以填写interesting、exciting、fun 这类形容词。
 - (4)教师播放第一遍录音,学生边听边完成活动2a。
- (5)教师播放第二遍录音,学生两人一组核对答案。随后,教师可请三位学生分别扮演Binbin、 Emma 和 Meimei,以角色扮演的方式核对答案。

2. 阅读理解

- (1) 学生阅读活动2a的对话内容,在对话中圈出三个学生喜欢的科目,找到他们喜欢的理由,将 信息填入活动 2b 的表格。教师巡视课堂, 获取反馈。
- (2)教师先请一名学生与自己展开示范问答,核对活动2b表格中有关Emma的答案,然后让学生 两人一组核对其他答案。具体示范如下:
 - T: What is Emma's favourite subject? S1: Her favourite subject is history.
- - T: Why does she like it?
- S1: Because it is interesting to learn about the past.
- (3) 教师还可提出更多问题以检测学生对该对话文本的理解程度。例如:
- Emma thinks it's interesting to learn about the past. What does "past" mean?
- What word do the students use when they give reasons?

- How many reasons does Meimei give?
- What word does she use to connect the two reasons?

教学提示: 教师可基于学情对教学内容进行适当补充和拓展,对文本中的语言现象进行解析,这样能激发学生主动探究的意识,并能帮助学生更加深入地分析和理解文本,掌握所学语言。此外,教师应有单元整体意识,根据教学需要适时渗透本单元的重点学习内容。比如: 在教学2a对话文本时,教师通过提问引导学生感知 and、but、because 这三个连词的用法,为下节课的语法教学作铺垫。

3. 语言操练与角色扮演

- (1)学生先尝试自己读一读2a的对话,关注对话中的连读现象,并把连读的部分标出来。接着,教师让学生说出含有连读的句子,并把学生说的句子板书在黑板上,且标出须连读的地方。例如:
 - Why do you like it?
 - It's interesting to learn about the past.

教师先示范如何自然地连读, 然后学生跟读模仿。

- (2)教师再次播放对话录音,学生跟读并模仿说话人的语音、语调、节奏等,体会说话者的情绪变化。教师可重点播放含有连读的句子,让学生逐句模仿。
- (3)学生三人一组分角色朗读并演练对话,尽量做到流利自然。教师巡视课堂,获取反馈并适当给予指导。
- (4)教师请几个小组分角色表演对话,鼓励他们不看书进行表演。若学生需要帮助,教师可用课件呈现对话文本的关键词或部分句式。各小组表演完毕,师生共同给予评价。

4. 口语表达

- (1)学生阅读活动2d的指示语,明确任务要求。教师带领学生回顾所有学科的英文名称和已学的描述性形容词,让学生作好词汇上的准备。学生结合自身实际情况将各学科名称填入不同的区域中,完成活动2d。
- (2) 教师可向学生提问"What subject do you think is fun / easy / difficult / ...?",并根据学生的回答给予反馈。对于学生感觉困难或不太喜欢的学科,教师应积极鼓励、正向引导,让学生深入理解不同学科的价值和意义以及全面发展的重要性。
- (3)学生先浏览活动2e和2f的指示语和相关内容,教师适当说明和解释,确保所有学生理解两个活动的步骤及任务目标。
- (4)学生自行选择班上两位同学展开访谈,用活动2e表格中的问题提问,并将所获得的回答填写在表格中。供访谈时使用的关键句式如下:

A: What's your favourite subject?

B: My favourite subject is ...

A: Why do you like it?

B: I like ... because ...

A: What other subjects do you like?

B: I also like ...

(5) 学生根据活动2e表格所填写的信息以及活动2f所提供的目标句型,将访谈结果整理成小短文,准备向全班汇报。教师巡视课堂,及时为学生提供语言支持和帮助。

(6) 教师请部分学生汇报访谈结果, 师生共同给予评价。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在口语表达环节,教师应鼓励学生根据自身实际发表个性化的看法。对于学有余力的学 生,教师应鼓励他们采用多样化的句式来丰富自己的口语产出。

Grammar Focus

🥨 内容分析

本单元的核心语法项目是连词 and、but、because 的功能和用法。活动 3a 列举了包含连词 and、 but、because 的典型句式,让学生观察并归纳三个连词的表意功能。活动3b是句子层面的练习,要求 学生根据句子意思将两个分句组成完整句子,同时关注三个连词不同的表意功能。活动3c是短文填空 练习,短文紧扣单元主题,以一位学生的口吻讲述了自己喜欢的学科,文中特别提到,他(她)虽然 不擅长学习科学,但是因为一位好老师喜欢上了生物学科。该活动要求学生在理解短文内容的基础上 正确运用三个连词(and、but、because)连接句子。活动3d是开放式的口头输出活动,主要让学生基 于所列问题对同学进行口头调查,了解他们最喜欢的上学日及原因,包括当天的课程安排和喜欢的科 目等。最后,学生将灵活运用本单元的核心语法项目,完成调查问答。

学习目标

- 📂 能够理解并归纳连词 and、but、because 的表意功能和用法。
- 📂 能够尝试使用连词 and、but、because 连接句子,使句子逻辑顺畅。
- 📂 能够在语境中合理使用连词 and、but、because 进行表达,做到自然得体。

教学建议

1. 语法探究

(1) 学生观察3a表格中的句子,理解各句句意,感知连词and、but、because 的句式特点,尝试 归纳其功能意义和用法。例如:

并列连词	含义	表示关系	连接成分
and	和;而且	并列	前后均为同层次的单词、短语或句子
but	但是	转折	前后均为同层次的单词、短语或句子
because	因为	因果	其后接表示原因的句子

(2) 学生根据自己观察得出的结论,完成活动3a表格下方的连词用法总结。

2. 语法练习

- (1) 学生阅读活动 3b 的两列句子,根据句子意思及其内在的逻辑将句子进行匹配。教师需要引导学生关注句子的内在逻辑,找出前后关联的提示词。比如,第一句中的 bicycle 可让人联想到 ride a bicycle,这与选项 E 中的 walk 都属于交通方式,将这两部分用 but 连起来,语句连贯,逻辑通顺。该句的意思是"我有自行车,但是我经常走路上学",but 表达转折关系。
- (2) 学生自主完成活动 3b, 然后全班核对答案。接着, 教师将完整的句子根据连词 and、but 和 because 进行分类, 分析连词在句子中的作用, 加深学生对其功能和用法的理解。
 - (3) 学生阅读活动3c的小短文,了解文章大意。随后,教师可提出以下问题检测学生对短文的理解:
 - Why does the writer like Thursday afternoons?
 - Why does the writer like biology class?
 - What can the writer learn in biology class?
 - Who is the writer's favourite teacher, and why?

在学生回答问题时,教师可适时引导学生回顾小学已学的词汇,如afternoon、then、Miss、work、sometimes、feel等,以帮助他们更好地理解短文内容。

- (4)学生再次阅读小短文,并根据上下文逻辑选择合适的连词补全文章,使文章通顺、连贯。学生两人一组讨论答案,随后教师带领全班核对答案。核对答案时,教师可结合语境对文中出现的生词进行解析,如动词remember。
- (5) 学生仔细读短文,教师引导学生从中提炼出作者的叙事要点及相关的句式结构,为下一步的口头输出任务作准备。例如:
 - Favourite school day: I love Thursday afternoons because ...
 - Favourite subject: It is ... class, and it is exciting.
 - Favourite teacher: ... is my favourite teacher because she makes everyone in the class feel special.

3. 语法运用

- (1) 学生借助活动 3d 的问题框架,在班级中展开调查。若时间有限,教师也可让学生四人一组进行组内调查。学生在小组内互相问答,并将调查信息记录下来。教师可以将答语句式写在黑板上,供学生参考使用。例如:
 - ... is my favourite day because ...
 - On that day, we have ...
 - 🧖 I like ... because ...
 - In our group, ... likes ... too. He / She likes it because ...
- (2) 学生将记录的小组成员信息进行梳理,整理成报告,为交流汇报作准备。教师需提醒学生在口头与书面表达中,应合理运用连词 and、but、because,使语句史通顺、连贯。
- (3)教师选取几组学生向全班汇报调查结果,然后针对学生的汇报情况给予评价与反馈,同时鼓励其他学生发表评价或给予建议。



🝳 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的阅读文本是网络留言板(message board)上的两篇帖子。通过留言板,发帖 人可以分享自己的意见或信息供人阅览,阅帖人可作出相应回复,这样就可以集中呈现某话题的多方 面意见和信息。这两篇留言板发帖带有网络媒体文本的一些形态特征,如呈现了发帖人的姓名和昵 称、发帖日期和时间,帖子下方有可供回复的表情符号和对话框等。由于是主题讨论留言板,这两 篇文本围绕"最喜爱的学科"展开。两篇帖子的语篇结构也大致相同,首先发帖人介绍自己来自哪 里、学校这学年(期)的课程有哪些,然后介绍自己最喜爱的学科及原因。Mike Davis最喜爱的学科 是音乐,他从课堂活动、老师和未来的职业理想等方面给出了喜欢音乐的原因。作为发帖人的Mike Davis 在帖子末尾抛出三个问题,即 "How about you? What do you study? What's your favourite class. and why?",希望大家互相交流看法。后续回帖的Wu Binbin介绍了自己最喜爱的学科是数学,他也从 自己的能力、课堂活动、数学的作用和未来的职业理想等方面给出了喜欢数学的原因。此外,两个人 的帖子里都谈到了从他们各自喜欢的学科里能够学到什么,以及他们将来打算做什么,从而回应了该 板块的引导性问题 "What can you learn from different subjects?"。值得注意的是,这两位发帖人的昵称 都与他们各自喜欢的学科有着密切的联系。

由于两位发帖人来自不同国家,阅读文本还蕴含丰富的文化信息。Mike Davis 是加拿大学生,他 的语言课程包括法语和英语,这是因为法语和英语都是加拿大的官方语言:而 Wu Binbin 的母语是汉 语,英语是一门外语。另外,Mike Davis学习的科学课是一门融合了地理、生物等学科的综合课程, 而中国学生则分别学习这几门学科。在科目名称的表达上,中国学生通常称体育课为PE;而加拿大学 生称体育课为gym,上体育课为have gym。这些细节都体现了文化差异。这些内容不仅能开阔学生视野, 增长见识,而且能让他们增进跨文化理解,培养跨文化交际意识和能力。

活动设计: 该板块包含两条任务链, 活动1a—1d是阅读任务链, 活动2a—2b是写作任务链, 体 现了教材以读促写、读写结合的设计理念。活动1a是读前活动,学生通过写课程表,复习关于学科名 称的话题词汇,为后续的阅读作准备。活动1b-1d是阅读理解活动,主要训练学生对语篇细节信息的 获取能力。活动1b关注两位发帖人学习的所有课程,而活动1c则聚焦他们最喜爱的学科和相关原因。 活动1d采用问题链的方式进一步帮助学生梳理语篇信息,最后一个问题围绕语篇主题,让学生结合自 身实际,就发帖人喜欢的两门学科发表看法并说明原因。

写作任务链分为两个步骤。活动2a将写作内容要点以结构图的形式呈现,要求学生思考并列出自 己所学的科目、最喜欢的学科及其原因等。活动2b则基于阅读文本的内容要点和语篇结构提供了完整 的写作支架: 先介绍自己来自哪里, 再列举学校这学年(期)的课程有哪些, 最后介绍自己最喜爱的 学科及原因。学生可结合自身情况补全句子,也可补充更多细节,完成网络留言板回帖。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察阅读文本的形态特征识别网络新媒体语篇。
- 能够有效运用阅读策略获取关键信息,了解发帖人的身份、喜欢的学科及原因。
- ▶ 能够利用思维导图梳理出两篇留言板发帖的语篇结构和内容要点。
- ▶ 能够对比分析两位发帖人的课程信息,大致了解加拿大和中国的初中课程设置的 异同。
- ▶ 能够深入思考并谈论不同学科的价值和意义,并对自己未来的职业有初步设想。
- ▶ 能够利用思维导图整理写作要点,厘清写作思路。
- 能够灵活运用所学的话题词汇与目标句式描述自己喜爱的学科,并陈述具体原因。

🧐 教学建议

1. 读前准备

- (1)教师引导学生浏览活动 la 的指示语及表格内容,引导学生猜测 AM 与 PM 的含义。教师确认 学生理解活动要求后,让学生自主完成 la 表格的填写。
 - (2) 教师可提出几个问题, 询问学生有关上午和下午的课程。例如:

How many classes do you have in the morning / afternoon? What are they?

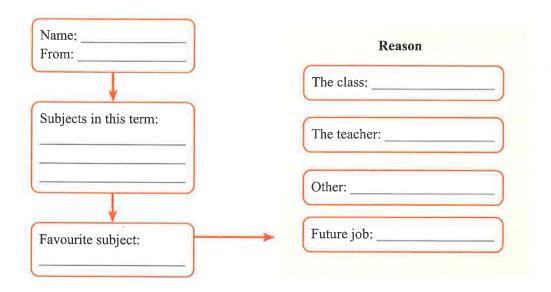
2. 阅读理解

- (1)根据文本特征识别语篇类型和讨论主题。教师可用课件呈现阅读语篇的文本框,引导学生观察文本特征,识别语篇类型。学生识别出这是网络新媒体语篇后,教师再呈现活动1b的指令语,引导学生一起朗读,然后提问"Where is the text from? What's the topic of the text?"。
- (2)利用关键信息预测语篇内容。教师引导学生关注两篇帖子的作者昵称,猜测他们最喜爱的科目是什么。通过观察昵称 musicfan、戴着耳机的人物头像等设计元素,学生能够猜出 Mike 最喜爱的科目可能是 music。同理,通过昵称 mathswhiz,学生可推测出 Wu Binbin 最喜爱的科目可能是 maths。在后续的阅读过程中,教师也可以结合语篇内容,让学生猜测单词 fan 和 whiz 的意思,感受鲜活的语言表达。

教学提示: 阅读前, 教师应充分利用特定阅读文本的文体特征, 引导学生对语篇作出有效预测, 培养学生"看"的能力。读前预测, 读中验证, 能够激发学生对文章的阅读期待, 提升阅读的兴趣。

- (3)快速阅读,验证预测。学生快速阅读两篇帖子,圈出加拿大学生Mike Davis和中国学生Wu Binbin最喜欢的科目和他们所在学校开设的所有课程,完成1b活动,验证读前的预测是否准确。
- (4) 仔细阅读,完成信息梳理。学生再次阅读语篇,在1c表格中填写两位发帖人最喜欢的科目及其原因,师生核对答案。接下来,教师可仿照2a的思维图引导学生梳理阅读文本信息,以加深学生对

文章的理解,同时也为后续的写作作准备。



教学提示: 思维导图能帮助学生梳理语篇信息,将零散的信息结构化,建立知识脉络体系,有助于 学生从宏观上把握语篇信息的内在逻辑。该思维导图也呼应了后续的写作任务,体现单元教学的整 体性。同时,该思维导图还能帮助学生归纳学生喜欢某一学科的不同原因:如兴趣、任课老师、课 堂活动以及未来职业设想等,从而深刻理解"Why do we learn different subjects?"这个大问题。

- (5)对比分析语篇细节。学生先阅读活动1d所列问题,再阅读两篇帖子,与同伴讨论活动1d的 四个问题。学生讨论时,教师可提醒他们观察和对比两位发帖人所提供的信息有什么相似与不同,了 解两国中学生课程的差异。学生讨论完毕,师生核对答案。
- (6) 关注文本中的连词用法。教师可将两个帖子中含有连词 and、but 和 because 的句子用课件或 学案展示给学生,并将连词挖空,供学生填写,如下所示:

I study maths, music, French,,	have gym.
--------------------------------	-----------

My favourite subject is music ______ the class is fun, _____ we learn a lot of new songs.

教师要求学生不看课本,独立完成句子填空。完成填空后,教师再让学生翻开书对比原文,核查 答案。教师可再次引导学生回顾并说出这三个连词的用法。

(7) 朗读课文, 关注连读。教师播放课文录音, 学生跟读模仿, 教师可提醒学生特别关注句子中 的连读、重读、弱读等。

3. 读后活动

学生根据阅读理解部分的思维导图转述文章。教师可提供语言支架,让学生尝试复述阅读文本内 容。例如:

is from	. This term, he has	at school. His favourite subject is
He likes it because _		In the future, he wants to be a

4. 写前准备

学生利用思维导图,谈论自己喜爱的学科及原因。教师提出以下问题,供学生结合自身实际梳理信息,仿照活动2a制作思维导图。

- What subjects do you have this term?
- What is your favourite subject? Why do you like it?
- What is the class like?
- Who is your favourite teacher, and why?
- What do you want to be in the future, and why?

教学提示: 真实的驱动性任务可以激发学生的学习动机,有助于他们积极、主动地参与到学习活动中。对已学知识的复习能为学生完成写作任务搭建语言支架,而基于思维导图构建自身真实的信息框架则能为写作提供内容要素。写前的铺垫步骤足够充分,学生就更有信心完成写作任务,能够有条不紊地以合理的逻辑将相关内容写成句、组成篇。

5. 写作训练

(1)细化写作要求和评价标准。教师可根据学生实际的语言能力水平设置不同的任务目标。对于语言基础和表达能力一般的学生,可鼓励他们尽量模仿教材中的模板和句式进行写作;对于语言能力较高的学生,可鼓励他们加强内容要点和句式结构的丰富性。教师还可提供写作评价表供学生参考。例如:

Checklist						
	Name my school subjects	☐ Yes	□ No			
Content	Talk about my favourite subject and the reasons	☐ Yes	□ No			
	Talk about my future job	☐ Yes	□ No			
	Use different sentence patterns	☐ Yes	□ No			
Language	Use adjectives to describe subjects, classes, and the teacher	☐ Yes	□ No			
	Use and, but, and because to express opinions	☐ Yes	□ No			
Level	Level					
Suggestion:						

- (2)完成初稿。学生将自己的信息填入活动2b语篇框架的相应位置,独立完成初稿。教师提醒学生不一定要照搬2b的语篇框架和句式,可根据自己的语言水平和表达需求对内容进行适当调整,鼓励多样化的表达方式。
- (3)同伴互评。学生两人一组交换初稿,根据评价量表进行互评,并写出具体的修改意见。若有 疑难问题,可以组内讨论,也可以问教师寻求帮助。
 - (4)修改定稿。学生根据同伴的反馈和建议修改并完善初稿,确保作文在内容和语言表达等各方

面都达到最佳状态。

(5)展示交流。教师让学生把作文贴到黑板上,也可用投影仪展示一些学生作品。若条件允许, 教师可在学校内部学习平台上发起主题为"My favourite subject"的讨论,鼓励学生将作品以帖子的 形式发布到校园网, 供所有学生浏览欣赏。



🝳 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是设计一周的课程表,并向全班介绍课程安排的理由。活动3a让学生谈论目前 课程表中各学科的特点,旨在帮助学生巩固本单元所学的话题词汇和关键表达。活动3b提供了一张空 白的课程表,让学生设计一周的课程表。学生设计时需要综合考虑学科特点、劳逸结合、能力发展等因 素,因此,该项目活动看似简单,只需要填写学科的名称,但背后是对学生的逻辑思维和批判性思维能 力的训练和培养。活动3c是口语输出环节,主要培养学生的综合语言运用的能力。学生在活动中不仅 需要条理清晰地介绍本组设计的课程表,还要陈述设计过程中需要权衡的各种因素、编排逻辑并提供合 理的理由。这个过程也是在回应本单元的大问题 "Why do we learn different subjects?"。

学习目标

- 📂 能够从课程安排的角度深入思考各门学科的特点,并灵活运用形容词和丰富的句式 谈论对各门学科的看法。
- 能够小组合作完成课程表的设计和制作。
- 📂 能够提升对各门学科价值的理解,科学合理地安排一周的课程,并用英语介绍课程 表的设计理由。

教学建议

1. 明确项目活动要求及实施路径

学生阅读项目活动标题,理解3a和3b的活动要求。教师分发给每个学生一张空白课程表,在表 格最下方画有横线,供学生写理由。教师引导学生明确项目活动实施路径:小组合作,商讨出心目中 最合理的周课时表。最后,每个小组派代表展示项目成果,并用英语解释设计理由。

2. 制订计划,实施任务

为了设计出大家认同又科学合理的课程表, 小组成员各司其职, 互相帮助, 共同完成课程表的设 计。在课程表初稿形成后,小组成员讨论课程表的合理性,确保各门学科时间分配合理和学科分布平 衡。小组成员共同协商,撰写设计理由。

教学提示: 小组需要制订详细计划,包括任务分解、时间安排、资源分配等,确保每个学生都清楚 自己的任务和责任。学生可根据自身的兴趣和能力选择合适的任务。学生根据项目计划完成各自的 任务。在这个过程中, 学生需要运用所学的知识和技能, 共同商讨, 学会合作解决问题。

3. 协助与指导

在项目活动开展过程中,教师要起到协助和指导作用。首先,教师要为学生提供相应的资源,如 教材中未提及的学科英文名称、相关的教育网站等。同时,教师应及时关注学生的活动进展,了解各 小组的情况,为学生提供必要的建议与帮助。在学生用英文撰写设计理由时,由于词汇量有限,教师 可提供相应的词汇和句式。

4. 成果展示与交流

教师鼓励各小组对课程表进行个性化的设计,可以添加一些学生喜爱的元素,使课程表更美观、 更符合学生的年龄和心理特征。在项目活动完成后,各小组派代表上台展示项目活动成果,将制作好 的课程表张贴在黑板上或以投影形式向全班同学展示,同时用英文介绍该表的设计意图。其他学生认 真观察各个小组的课程表的设计,聆听展示作品的设计理由,给予合理的评价并提供改进建议。教师 可选择其中几张比较有代表性的课程表, 在班级集中展示。

5. 反思与评价

各小组根据同学与教师提出的建议对课程表进行优化改进。最后,学生需要进行自我反思和评 价、思考自己在项目活动实施过程中的表现和不足、在下次项目化学习中加以改进。同时,教师也需 要对学生的作品和表现进行评价,并指导学生如何评价其他小组的作品,给予反馈和建议。

Reflecting

🥝 内容分析

本单元反思板块主要从单元主题、话题词汇、目标结构以及主题意义等维度设计自我评价内容, 学生需要回顾并反思自己是否已掌握并能灵活运用本单元所学的内容,其中包括: 学校课程中各学科 的英文名称,用于描述这些学科的形容词,带有连词 and、but、because 的句式功能与用法,探讨不同 学科的意义和价值等。

本单元的价值引领句 "Interest is the best teacher." (兴趣是最好的老师。) 旨在引导学生以正确的 态度对待所有需要学习的科目,尝试从不同学科中寻找兴趣点,挖掘学习的潜能,充分理解不同学科 的价值和意义。在本单元教学结束时,教师可以让学生根据本单元的主题内容和主题意义自行选择或 编写自己的价值引领句。由于每个人对单元内容的理解不同,他们会从不同的角度来设计能够体现单 元主题意义的价值引领句。

教学建议

- 1. 学生阅读Reflecting表格中的句子,针对难理解的词汇或表达,教师可适当给予说明或解释, 以确保学生理解所有句子。
 - 2. 教师可适当增加或细化列表中的项目, 启发学生回顾本单元所学内容。例如:

0	These are the subjects I study	at school:	
0	My favourite subject is	because	
	I can use conjunctions		ences. For example,
9	I think	_ (subject) is important becaus	e
	I know more things about the	e school subjects in other count	tries. For example,
•	I find	are good at	_ and I think I can learn from him / her.
3.	. 学生根据上面的列表进行自	我检测,教师巡视,获取反	馈。

- 4. 教师可请几个学生分享自己的评价表,并适当给予评价和鼓励。

三、课文注释

1. It's interesting to learn about the past. 了解过去是有趣的。

"It is + adj. + to do sth" 是英语中一个常见句型,用于表示"做某事是……的"。it是形式主语, 指代后面的 to do sth。例如:

It is interesting to learn English. 学英语有趣。

It's exciting to watch the race. 看这场竞赛令人兴奋。

句子中的learn about表示"了解;学习"。再如:

She wants to learn about Chinese culture. 她想了解中国文化。

learn 既可用作不及物动词,也可用作及物动词。learn 用作及物动词时,其后常接名词作宾语,也 可接(how)to do作宾语,表示"有意识地学习(种语言、一项技能、一门手艺或做某事的方法)"。 例如:

My brother wants to learn French. 我弟弟想学法语。

Tom is learning to dance. 汤姆正在学习跳舞。

We learn how to cook at home. 我们在家学做饭。

2. Music always makes me happy. 音乐总是让我感到快乐。

动词make在此句中意为"使; 让", 常构成"make + sb / sth + adj"结构, 表示"使某人或某 物……"。例如:

Mr White can always make his class easy to understand. 怀特老师总能让他的课明白易懂。

The rainy weather always makes me sad. 阴雨天气总让我忧伤。

3. My music teacher is excellent. He lets us play all kinds of interesting instruments. 我的音乐老师非常出色。他让我们演奏各种有趣的乐器。

此句中play意为"演奏"。如果play后面接具体的乐器名称作宾语,通常在乐器名称前加the。例如:

Alice plays the violin every morning. 爱丽丝每天早上拉小提琴。

My mother plays the piano well. 我妈妈钢琴弹得好。

play后面还常接运动名称,运动名称前不加冠词the,如play ping-pong(打乒乓球)、play football(踢足球)、play basketball(打篮球)等。

4. We learn how to work out maths problems in class. 在课堂上,我们学习如何解决数学问题。

这句话中problem意为"问题",英语中question也译作"问题",但两者有所区别。problem指待解决的问题,强调"困难",数学、物理等学科中的难题通常也用problem来表示;而question指需要回答的问题,强调"疑问"。problem常与work out、solve等词搭配使用,而question则常与ask、answer等词搭配使用。例如:

The problem is that we have no time. 问题是我们没有时间。

May I ask you some questions? 我能问你几个问题吗?

- 5. It feels like magic and is really fun. 感觉就像变魔术一样,非常好玩。
- (1)这句话是并列句,并列连词 and 连接两个分句。由于两个句子的主语都是it,因此第二个分句省略了主语it。
- (2)第一个分句中的 like 用作介词,意思是"像……一样",后面通常接名词,表示相似的对象。 学生需要注意 like 用作介词时与作动词时的用法区别。例如:

They are like brothers. 他们像兄弟一样。(like用作介词)

He likes his brothers. 他喜欢他的兄弟们。(like用作动词)

That doesn't sound like music. 那听起来不像音乐。(like 用作介词)

Alice likes folk music very much. 爱丽丝很喜欢民间音乐。(like用作动词)

Unit 4 My Favourite Subject

The theme of this unit is the subjects that students study at school. Students will learn about school subjects and how to ask about and describe their own preferences in the classroom. They will learn to construct more complex sentences about school subjects by adding further information and reasons using conjunctions. This will lead them to designing their own weekly class timetable.

Opening Page

Suggested **Answers** (Look and share)

- 1. The students are probably having a music class because the teacher is showing students a ruan.
- 2. I think the subject is interesting because music always makes me happy.
- 3. My favourite subject is science because I like learning about how things work.

Section A

1a					
	Related Vocabulary				
	It can be helpful to learn related words when learning new words. Suggest and elicit				
	frome students the words related to school subjects. For example:				
	PE: running, football, gymnastics, badminton				
	art: pottery, painting, drawing				
Teaching Tip	science: chemistry, biology, physics, microscope				
	music: band, song, musical instruments				
	maths: add (+), subtract (-), multiply (×), divide (÷)				
	oforeign languages: English, French, Spanish, Russian, Japanese				
	geography: countries, oceans, mountains, rivers				
	history: the past, famous people, memorable events				
Answers	A. IT B. history C. maths D. biology E. art F. geography				

1b	
	Wh-Questions
	1. Write the following questions on the board:
	What's your favourite subject?
	Which subject do you prefer, or?
Teaching Tip	Why / How do you like?
	Who is your teacher?
	When do you have?
	Elicit from students a list of all the wh-questions and write them on the board:
	what, where, when, which, why, how

	2. Ask students to complete the questions by adding the correct "wh-" words. Ask them if they can think of any other related questions. Then have students ask each other the questions in pairs.
Culture Note	Compulsory Subjects In many countries there are subjects that students of certain ages must study at
	school. For example, in the UK, students aged 11–16 (known as Key Stages 3 & 4) must study the following subjects: English, maths, science, history, geography, modern foreign languages, design and technology, art and design, music, PE, citizenship, and IT.
Answers	Ella: history, maths, art, geography Peter: Chinese, maths, IT, PE

Teaching Tip	Description Words Elicit from students the name for a word that describes something: adjective. Then ask them to list adjectives to describe school lessons and subjects, e.g. hard, boring, fun, important, interesting, exciting, and useful. Then ask them which subjects they think match each one.
Answers	1. history, hard 2. maths, fun 3. maths, boring 4. PE, exciting

Optional Approach	Guess My Favourite Subject Rather than having students ask each other explicitly what their favourite subjects are, have them guess. In pairs, students take turns to give their partner clues about their favourite subjects, using only adjectives. For example: S1: It's useful. S2: Is it English? S1: No, it's not English. It's hard. S2: Is it maths? S1: Yes, it is!
Sample Conversation	 S1: IIey, Sam. What's your favourite subject at school? S2: I think my favourite subject is maths. S1: Why do you like maths so much? S2: Because it's easy for me to understand. The answers never change! What about you? What's your favourite subject? Maths? S1: No, I don't like maths much. My favourite subject is IT.

Drills

1. Write the following words and draw the table on the board:

say, clear,	sure,	out,	make,	open,	enjoy,	where
-------------	-------	------	-------	-------	--------	-------

/eɪ/	/aɪ/	/21/	/əʊ/	/aʊ/	/19/	/eə/	/ʊə/

Optional Approach

- 2. Say the words aloud with the students. Then ask them to write them in the correct columns.
- 3. Ask students if they know any other words that fit in the columns. Then listen to the audio and repeat.

Chants

- /eɪ/ Say your name, say your age. Say your name, say your age.
- Why not try my idea? Why not try my idea? /aɪ/
- /oɪ/ The toy brings the boy joy. The toy brings the boy joy.
- /פט/ Oh, I don't know which road to go down!
- /aʊ/ My house is in the south of the town.
- Put your ear here. What can you hear? /iə/
- /ea/ There! Where? There! There on the chair!
- /ਹਰ/ Are you sure there's a tour?

2

Optional Approach

Acting Up!

Ask students to act out the chant in Activity 2. Different pairs can take turns to play the lazy sleeper and the person trying to wake them up. Pay particular attention to the linking words marked in the text.

2a

What Happens Next?

Prediction and anticipation of what is to come is a good way to build confidence with language learning, and can also be a fun way to approach an activity. With books closed, play each speaker's line then pause the recording. Ask students to predict what will be said next. Encourage them to make general guesses about what type of word is needed for each blank. It can also be fun to see if someone gets the right answer. For example:

Teaching Tip

Binbin: What's your next class? (PAUSE)

S1: It must be a subject.

S2: Maybe it's maths?

S3: I think it's history.

(PLAY) Emma: History ...

Listening for Linking 1. Have students listen to the conversation again while following the conversation in Activity 2a. Ask students to listen for linked words and look for links (where consonants at the end of words are followed by beginning vowels), and then show the links by marking the connection as in the above Activity 2. Examples from 2a: Why do you like it? (the final "e" is silent) ... to learn about the past. My favourite subject is English. My English teacher is really nice. **Teaching Tip** I like all the subjects my favourite is maths. (the final "e" is silent) Hey, look at the time. 2. Listen as many times as necessary, and play and pause the recording when reviewing the linked words. How do they sound when read by students from the book compared to how they sound on the recording? 3. To extend the activity, have students role-play the conversation paying particular attention to these links. interesting, useful, difficult Answers

Signposts

Teaching Tip

When listening for details, it is sometimes helpful for students to listen for "signposts". These are key words related to what students are looking for; in this case, the column headings: "favourite subject" and "reason". These might not be the exact words used (for example, we don't normally ask for a reason, but say "Why ...?") but will be related words, such as "because", because we know that word is used to give a reason.

Suggested Answers

Name	Favourite subject Reason	
Emma	history	It's interesting to learn about the past.
Meimei	English	It's useful, and her teacher is really nice.
Binbin	maths	Because he's good with numbers.

_		•	
-	ы	•	
		۰	
•	ъ.	₹.	

Suggested Answers

Answers will vary.

Sample Conversation

- S1: Hey, Xiaoyu. What's your favourite subject?
- S2: Well, I like lots of subjects, but my favourite is probably history.
- S1: Why do you like it so much?
- S2: Well, for lots of reasons. It helps me understand the world today a bit better.
- S1: That's true. What other subjects do you like?
- S2: I really like art and science. Art is very relaxing and fun, and science is interesting because we learn how the universe works.

2f

Sample Report

Xiaoyu's favourite subject is history. He likes it because it helps him understand the world better. He also likes art and science. He thinks that art is very relaxing and fun, He thinks science is interesting because he learns how the universe works.

Grammar Focus

3a

Conjunctions

We use conjunction words to join other words, phrases, or clauses together.

- We use "and" to add more information or another idea that agrees with what came before the conjunction. For example: We have IT, maths, and French this afternoon.
- We use "but" to add different information or a different idea that contrasts with what came from before the conjunction. For example: *I like history, but I prefer geography.*
- We use "because" to give a reason for what came before the conjunction. For example: I like PE because it keeps me fit and healthy.

Conjunctions are not usually used at the start of a sentence in writing but are more often used in speech.

● Be

Teaching Tip

Commas and Conjunctions

- Because: In most cases a comma should not be used with "because" as it is a subordinating conjunction. This means it connects a subordinate clause (a group of words that are dependent on the main clause and can't stand alone) to an independent main clause: I like geography because it's interesting. A comma can sometimes be used with "because" when clarification is necessary to avoid ambiguity, for example when the clause is non-essential to the meaning of the sentence: I nearly missed class, because I woke up late, but I got there just in time.
- **But:** A comma is used as this is a co-ordinating conjunction which means it connects two main independent clauses. The comma goes where there would be a full-stop for the first clause. For example:

You like sweets. They (sweets) aren't very good for you. You like sweets, **but** they aren't very good for you.

• And: Using commas with "and" depends on the sentence. It is also a coordinating conjunction, so a comma is placed before it when it connects two main independent clauses:

3b	
Teaching Tip	 Tips for Matching Sentences Context: Read all the sentence halves (clauses) first. This will give a good idea of the context of each. What words do they include? Are they similar themes? (e.g. geography / travelling) Grammar: What do the sentence halves (clauses) say? Which conjunctions do they use? Do they agree or disagree? Are they adding different or similar information? Are they giving a reason? Eliminate: What parts can definitely NOT fit together? This will help reduce the options, making it easier to find the right one.
Answers	1. E 2. F 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C

3e	
Culture Note	Science in UK Schools In the UK, science is a mandatory part of the curriculum from a young age. Depending on the school, it is usually taught as Combined Science, or as Individual Science, divided into three subjects: biology, chemistry, and physics. At around 16 years old, all students must sit GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education) exams. English, maths, and science are the only compulsory subjects at GCSE level, meaning that every student must take those subjects, as well as others of their choice.
Answers	because, and, and, but, because

Suggested
Answers will vary.

Optional Activity: My Favourite School Day

1. Write the following conversation on the board:		
S1: What's your favourite school day?		
S2: Guess!		
S1: What lessons do you have on that day?		

S2: I have _____ and ____.

S1: Is it _____?

S2: No! I do	n't have	on	
S1: Is it	?		
S2: Yes, it is	! My favourite	school day is	

- 2. Elicit from students what words should fit in each gap. (subject or day)
- 3. Model the conversation with a student, filling in the gaps with your own choices.
- 4. Ask students to guess the favourite school days of their classmates.
- 5. In pairs, have the students take turns to guess each other's favourite subjects. Have students swap partners to extend the activity.

Section B

1a	
	School Timetables from Other Countries
	Find weekly timetables from schools in other countries. Print copies of the timetables
	and hand them out to the students. Ask them questions about the timetables to help
	them understand the timetables. For example:
	What days does it cover?
Tooching Tin	How long do lessons last?
Teaching Tip	How long is break time / lunch time?
	What do you think "Tutor time" is?
	• Which subjects are the same / different as those in your timetable?
	How many times a week do they study?
	Extend the activity by giving students a blanked out copy of the timetable that they
	can fill in with their own classes.
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

1b	
Culture Note	School Subjects in Different Countries In schools around the world, many similar subjects are studied, for example, maths, science, history, geography, and PE (physical education). The standard subjects that are studied at school form what is known as the curriculum. Of course, what is taught exactly in those classes will differ between countries, for example, by focusing more on the country's history. The additional languages learnt in schools also differ depending on the country. Schools might study one of the other widely spoken languages in their country, or the languages of their neighbours. For example, in the UK, French is often the second language studied in schools.
Suggested Answers	Mike Davis: maths, music, French, history, English, IT, science, gym Wu Binbin: Chinese, history, maths, English, PE, IT, and so on

	Name	Favourite subject	Reason
Suggested Answers	Mike Davis	music	the class is fun, he can learn a lot of new songs, music makes him happy, his music teacher is excellent, the teacher lets students play all kinds of interesting instruments, he wants to be a singer in the future
	Wu Binbin	maths	he is good at numbers, it is really fun and useful, he wants to be a scientist in the future

1d	
Teaching Tip	Read All the Questions First! Although students are often reminded of its importance, they often forget to read "all" the questions before trying to answer the first. It is important to do this as it prepares the students properly for the reading. It is also a good opportunity for students to underline any important words in preparation for reading, for example, the wh-question.
Suggested Answers	 Mike and Binbin both have maths, history, English, and IT. Mike feels good about music because it makes him happy. Binbin learns how to work out maths problems in his maths class. I like both maths and music, but I prefer music because however I feel it can make me feel better.

2a	
	Mind Maps
	Mind maps are visual tools for helping understand things. They help to show a series
Tagahing Tin	of "thoughts" and how they connect with each other. Therefore, they are probably
Teaching Tip	most effective when displayed well. The board is one of the best tools for doing this,
	so drawing the mind map on the board will help students. There are many ways to
	draw them: as a flow, a tree, circles, or bubbles.
	 Subjects in this term: Chinese, maths, English, history, geography, biology,
	morality and rule of law, music, art, physics, IT, and PE.
	Favourite subject: English
Suggested	Reason
Answers	The subject: useful in our life
	The class: role-play conversations with partners, learn about different cultures
30.	The teacher: nice and helpful
	Future job: <u>diplomat</u>

Predict and Create

Predicting what is likely to follow in a reading passage will help students become more fluent readers.

1. Have students look at the cloze passage and predict the types of words that might go in the blanks. Write the following passage on the board or have it printed in a handout:

Dear Jackie,

Teaching Tip

Wednesday is my busiest day of the week! At 1 I have 2. It is really 3. Then at $\underline{\mathbf{4}}$ I have $\underline{\mathbf{5}}$. It's $\underline{\mathbf{6}}$ but $\underline{\mathbf{7}}$. Then I have $\underline{\mathbf{8}}$. I think it's $\underline{\mathbf{9}}$, but my teacher says it is $\underline{\mathbf{10}}$. After that, I have 11 at 12. It is 13. 14 is from 15 to 16, and after that we have 17. It's my favourite subject. Our teacher is 18. My classes finish at 19, but after that I have 20 class for two hours. What a day!

How about you? When are your classes? What is your favourite subject? Your friend,

Paul

- 2. Elicit from students the numbers in the following categories:
 - Subjects: (Answers: 2, 5, 8, 11, 14, 17, 20)
 - Times: (Answers: 1, 4, 12, 15, 16, 19)
 - Description words: (Answers: 3, 6, 7, 9, 10, 13, 18)
- 3. Have students rewrite the passage by filling in the blanks with their own choices.
- 4. Ask students to read their passages and compare them with other students.

Peter Stewart

7:08 PM 20 February

Sample Writing

I'm from Scotland. This term, I have maths, English, history, geography, biology, physics, chemistry, French, Spanish, and PE. I like science and geography, but my favourite subject is Spanish. I like it because I love to learn new languages. In the class, we learn new vocabulary and have many conversations in Spanish. This helps build my fluency and confidence, so I can become a tour guide in Spain for a future <u>job</u>.

*Project

Suggested **Answers**

Every week I study Chinese, English, maths, geography, science, PE, history, IT, art, and music. English is useful because it helps me understand things in films and music. I like maths because it's also useful in life. Geography is very interesting because I like learning about other countries. I like PE because it keeps me healthy. History is interesting. I really like art because it is different from all the other subjects, but it can be difficult. And I like music because it is relaxing and fun.

3b	
Culture Note Schedules vs Timetables Class schedules are a type of chart that specifies times for various subject. In they are called "schedules", and in the UK "timetables".	
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

3c

Sample Introduction

This is our group's weekly class timetable. We chose these subjects because we think they are the most useful and interesting for students to study. We have also added several double lessons, because we think it is important to have longer classes so we can get more done in the class.

Value Statement: Interest is the best teacher.

Teaching Tip

It might be said that a mind that is always interested is the best suited for education and learning, because it will naturally seek new information and knowledge. The interest is what pushes the person to learn new things, and therefore acts like a teacher to us.

*Reading Plus

1

Noticeboards

Noticeboards are a common sight in schools, offices, and public places. They are a quick and easy way to show information to people locally that doesn't require any technology beyond making a poster or "flyer" (a small poster advertisement either handed out or pinned to a board).

Teaching Tip

Because the information needs to be understood quickly, it is often presented in a short form. A brief introduction is given, often beginning with a question to pique the interest of the readers, followed by a short description of what exciting things are done at the class. Then any reader's immediate questions (Can I attend it? When is it? Where is it? What do I need to bring?) are presented in a way that can be read or checked easily:

- Age:
- Where:
- When:
- Materials / Things to bring:

Culture Note	After-School Classes Classes often take place after the normal school day has finished, hence the name, although some can take place at lunchtime or during break time. Some can just be extra classes to help students with their school subjects. However, depending on the school and location, there are a wide variety of different classes and activities available, from sports and physical activities to craft and skill-based ones. These help students to gain wider knowledge of many different things outside the curriculum and start to develop skills and interests for later in life.	
Answers	 two music studio speaking, computer 45 / forty-five 	

Suggested Answers

- 1. I think Mike should go to the Easy Carpentry club on Mondays, because he can learn how to make many things there.
- 2. I would like to take the Yoga and You class, because it will help me keep fit and well.

UNIT 5 FUN CLUBS

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元围绕"学校社团"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"多 彩、安全、有意义的学校生活""自我认识,自我管理,自我提升"子话题,以及"人与社会"主题 范畴中的"交流与合作,团队精神"子话题密切相关。本单元旨在引导学生主动了解学校开设的各种 社团,并能结合自己的爱好、特长等多种因素来选择合适的社团,积极参与社团活动。这是对前一个 单元(My Favourite Subject)内容的有机拓展,从学校的课程学习延伸到课外活动,其目的是进一步 激发学生的学习兴趣,促进他们全面发展。本单元 Section A 和 Section B 分别通过"How do you choose a school club?"和"What can you learn in a school club?"两个引导性问题架构板块内容,引导学生 层层深入地理解学校开设不同社团的意义,积极探究本单元大问题"Why do we join school clubs?"。 Section A 的听力对话展现了学校社团招募新成员的情景,示范对话的内容是儿个朋友商量一起加人 社团。这些对话呈现了选择社团时需要考虑的几个因素:是否有兴趣、是否具备相关能力,以及时间 是否合适等。Section B的主篇阅读是学校三个社团发布的招新广告,文本语言简洁且有号召力,聚 焦社团活动内容以及学生能获得的收获。三则广告都使用了疑问句吸引、启发读者,同时用感叹句激 励和号召读者。三则广告比较精练,语言难度与学生能力匹配。在读后写作部分,学生需要根据自己 的意向选择向社团负责人写一封邮件,申请加入该社团,并说明理由。本单元项目活动是建立自己的 社团,学生需要自主创建一个既有新意又有意义的社团、制作招新广告,并招募合适的成员。在拓展 阅读部分,本单元呈现了一个视频博客文本,主人公 Alice 用视频的方式介绍自己加入的戏剧社。采 用视频博客形式的目的是让读者有身临其境之感,另外,戏剧社的介绍能够开阔学生的视野,帮助他 们了解国外学生社团的情况。本单元语篇选择和活动设计注重引导学生对单元主题意义的探究,在谈 论学校社团活动过程中,让学生体会并感悟培养健康兴趣的意义。好的兴趣能帮助学生发展天赋和特 长、促进身心健康、培养自信、提高创造力、结交益友等,进而丰富他们的人生。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

🤛 说出常见学校社团的名称,介绍社团的常规活动,积极探索不同社团在促进学生发展 方面的意义, 梳理选择社团时需要考虑的因素, 基于综合考虑选择适合自己的社团;

- ➤ 使用情态动词 can 谈论能力,理解 can 的意义,掌握 can 的基本句式和语用特点;
- ▶ 通过观察、阅读校园社团招新广告,了解这类广告的文体特点,包括语言特点和版式特点,理解社团招新广告中包含的内容要素,学会制作社团招新广告,并通过写邮件申请加入自己感兴趣的社团;
- ▶ 听辨并准确读出四对清浊相对的辅音音素/p/与/b/、/t/与/d/、/k/与/g/、/f/与/v/,了解爆破音发音的特点,并在自然的语流中读出不完全爆破的音;
- ▶ 积极参与本单元的讨论,发掘自己的才能和爱好,理解参加社团活动的意义,积极参与社团活动,丰富自己的校园生活。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

Why do we join school clubs?

② 内容分析

本单元的标题是"有趣的社团"。当前我国中学广泛开设各种特色社团,充分利用学生课余时间 开展丰富多彩的社团活动,满足学生个性化的需求,拓宽学生的学习渠道,为学生提供广阔的发展空 间,不仅能提高学生的整体素质,也为校园文化建设注入了活力。

本单元主题图展现的是学生在机器人社团活动的一个场景。该社团主要学习机器人的设计与制作。学生需要完成模拟现实场景的各项任务,是涉及数学、物理、计算机、电子、仿生学等多学科的综合应用实践活动。画面中的几位学生正在测试自行设计并编好程序的机器人完成项目任务的情况。从学生专注的眼神、期待的表情和微笑的神态可以体会到他们的投入和所获得的成就感。学校开设机器人社团的目的是普及科学知识,通过参与科技活动培养学生对科学的兴趣,在兴趣的基础上拓展学生思维,培养他们的独立思考能力、动手能力、团队协作能力、探究和创新能力,让他们在课程学习中涵养终身受益的品质,激发对科学的兴趣。科技改变未来,机器人社团的升设符合当前国家对跨学科人才和科技人才培养的需求。本页通过大问题"Why do we join school clubs?"引导学生思考加入不同社团的意义,并让他们在本单元后续的学习中,结合自己的经历和体验,深入探究和理解单元的主题意义。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察主题图和单元标题了解本单元的主题,并根据主题图猜测其展示的社 团性质。
- 能够简单描述主题图,通过图片人物的表情,感知主题图所传达的积极情感态度、 并表达对加入该社团的兴趣。
- 能够了解本单元学习目标和重要学习内容,把握单元学习的全局。

教学建议

- 1. 明确单元主题。教师引导学生浏览开篇页的单元标题 "Fun Clubs", 让学生预测本单元学习内 容,并用英语说出学校开设的各种特色社团的名称,以激活学生已有的知识和经验。
- 2. 观察并讨论主题图。学生仔细观察主题图,教师通过提问引导学生描述主题图,讨论Look and share 部分的内容,帮助学生理解主题图所表达的情感信息。教师可以补充以下问题:
 - What can you learn from a robotics club?
 - Do you think the students are interested in this club?
 - What do you think of this club? Why?
- 3. 明确单元主要学习目标。学生阅读本单元的大问题"Why do we join school clubs?", 思考加入 社团的意义和理由。接着,学生浏览本页左下方的单元学习内容导引,了解单元主要学习目标和内 容,包括本单元所蕴含的主题意义、所涉及的语言功能和语法项目等,为单元学习作好准备。

Section A

How do you choose a school club?



活动1a—1d

内容分析

文本分析: 该部分的听力文本共有三段对话, 分别是三个学生参加不同社团招新活动的对话。三 个对话基本采用相似的话轮结构: 首先,应招者向招募者打招呼并介绍自己,然后表达想加入社团的 意愿;接着,招募者通过几个问题了解应招者的能力,自然融入情态动词 can 表示能力的用法;对话 结束时,招募者宣布应招者能否加人社团。在第一个对话和第三个对话末尾,招募者还说明了社团活 动的时间和地点。听力对话内容回应 Section A的引导性问题 "How do you choose a school club?",即 选择社团需要考虑哪些重要因素, 既包括主观因素(如是否有兴趣), 也包括客观因素(如是否具备 某方面的才能,或时间是否合适等)。

活动设计:活动1a通过图文匹配练习呈现了不同社团的名称,其中包括文艺类社团(art club、music club)、语言表演类社团(drama club)、体育类社团(ping-pong club)、益智类社团(science club、chess club),教材所选插图体现了这些社团的典型活动场面。活动1b和1c涉及1a中的三个社团:乒乓球社团、棋社和戏剧社。就听力技能而言,活动1b训练学生抓取核心信息的能力,活动1c训练学生把握关键细节的能力,尤其是对话中出现的can和can't。这三段对话主要呈现含有情态动词can的一般疑问句及其肯定、否定回答。活动1d为口头输出环节,要求学生分角色表演听力中的社团招募对话。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够捕捉和记录听力录音中的关键信息,能分辨出 can和 can't 的发音区别。
- ▶ 能够说出学校里常见社团的英文名称,谈论不同社团的常见活动。
- 能够通过听社团招募对话理解 can 表达能力的不同句式,并在口语对话中模仿使用相关句型展开交流。
- 能够根据所听内容简单归纳加入一个社团需考虑的基本要素。

角 教学建议

1. 听前准备

- (1)导入话题,教授新词汇。教师展示班级学生参加社团活动的照片或视频,通过提问与学生互动。例如:
 - Look at the picture. What are they doing? What club is it?
 - What clubs do we have in our school?
 - Can you play Chinese chess?

在互动过程中,教师可呈现一些新生词,以帮助学生在真实的情境中理解新单词和语块,例如 drama、play Chinese chess 等。

- (2)看活动1a图片,完成图文匹配练习。教师可根据学生的能力水平开展分层教学。对于语言基础较弱的学生,只需让他们将图片和社团名称匹配。对于学习基础较好的学生,可要求他们用完整的句子描述图片和社团名称之间的联系,完成图文匹配练习。以图B为例,教师用完整的句子描述图片,并说出它与社团名称之间的联系,如 "This boy can play chess. He is in a chess club."。学生仿照教师的示范完成其他图文匹配内容任务。在此过程中,教师可根据学生实际情况考虑是否拓展calligraphy works(书法作品)、do experiments(做实验)等语块的学习。
- (3)开展比赛,巩固所学。教师事先把学生社团活动的照片存入电脑,制作成快闪动画。课堂上,教师播放动画并随机暂停,学生快速说出社团名称和该社团的代表性活动,回答次数最多且准确的学生小组获胜。教师也可以在黑板上给出关键句型,让全班学生尽量用完整句表达,全班一起巩固

提高。例如:

- It's ... (music club).
- Students can ... (sing) in the club.
- Students can ... (play musical instruments) in the club.

2. 听力理解

- (1) 听录音,填写社团名称。学生阅读活动1b的指示语,观察活动1b中的表格,明确听力任务。 教师播放第一遍录音,学生听对话并填写表格。教师可提醒学生在听的过程中运用速记策略。
- (2) 听录音,完成活动1c。学生浏览活动1c中的听力任务,并大声朗读can和can't,体会can和can't的发音区别。教师播放第二遍录音,让学生仔细听对话,用can和can't完成句子,最后师生核对答案。
- (3) 关注 can和 can't 的发音。教师再次给学生播放录音,让学生闭眼静听,注意 can和 can't 在句子中是否重读。学生说出自己的答案,教师再总结:情态动词 can在句子中一般弱读,发弱读音/kən/; can在句子末尾或强调的时候需要重读,发重读音/kæn/; 否定式 can't 需要重读,读音为/kɑ:nt/(美式英语发/kænt/)。

教学提示:英语中情态动词、助动词(do或does等)在语流中有其独特的发音规律:在陈述句或疑问句中一般需要弱读,在句子末尾或强调时需要重读。教师需要提醒学生注意这些词的强读音和弱读音,建立音和形的正确联系,帮助提高学生的听力技能,同时也能帮助他们在口语输出时做到发音准确、流畅。

- (4)模仿跟读。教师再次播放录音,让学生合上书,闭上眼睛专心听对话录音,感受整个对话的语流、语速与情感。然后,教师让学生打开书,边听边跟读,模仿对话中的语音语调。
- (5) 关注更多对话细节,讨论本部分引导性问题。教师再次播放录音,让学生进一步丰富1b的表格内容。

Who	What club	Ability	When to meet	Join or not
Teng Fei	ping-pong club	can play ping-pong	at 5 o'clock every Tuesday	× (have drum class on Tuesday afternoons)
Sam	chess club	cannot play Chinese chess or weiqi		V
Lin Hua	drama club	can read words with feeling	at 12 o'clock every Thursday	V

接着, 教师引导学生思考 Section A 的引导性问题 "How do you choose a school club?", 让学生说出选择社团时需要考虑的因素。教师把学生的回答写在黑板上。例如:

When you choose a club, it is best that ...

- you are interested in it;
- you have some talent or ability;

you have time;

• the club has a good teacher / guide and good friends ...

教师最后总结:选择社团时,学生应考虑兴趣是否匹配、是否具备相关能力、时间是否合适等因素。

3. 听后活动

- (1)复述对话。教师让学生根据前一步骤的表格复述对话内容,可以先让准备好的学生示范,如 "Teng Fei can play ping-pong. He wants to join the ping-pong club, but he can't go to the club at 5 o'clock every Tuesday because he has drum class on Tuesday afternoons."。复述对话可以锻炼学生的英语口头表达能力和概括大意的能力。
- (2)表演对话。教师让学生结对分角色表演"社团招募"对话。教师提出以下角色扮演要求:学生可以参照上面的表格内容,但尽量不要依赖教材上的原话,把注意力放在如何真实自然地进行对话,如要有眼神交流、根据对话背景和人物特征灵活运用必要的身体语言和语气等。学生可根据情景适当添加细节,使对话内容更加丰富。让几组学生上台表演,教师及时评估他们的表现。
- (3)学以致用,创编对话,完成活动1d。学生两人一组,自选活动1a中的图片作为社团招募的场景,使用目标句式或参考对话范例自编对话,并在班内展示。教师给出语言支架,提醒学生使用目标句式"My name is ...""I want to join ...""Can you ...?""We meet ..."等完成对话。最后教师进行评价。



🥝 内容分析

通过前面四个单元的语音学习,学生应基本了解了英语元音音素。本册最后三个单元重点学习英语辅音音素。与元音音素的发音不同,发辅音时,呼出的气流通过口腔或鼻腔时要受到一定的阻碍。发音时声带不振动的辅音称为清辅音,发音时声带振动的辅音称为浊辅音。分辨清、浊辅音有助于读准一些涉及语法现象的词缀的发音,如名词复数、动词第三人称单数形式、名词所有格和动词过去式词尾的读音等。本单元重点练习四对辅音:/p/和/b/、/t/和/d/、/k/和/g/、/f/和/v/。其中前三对是爆破音,最后一对是摩擦音,每一对由两个对应的清、浊辅音组成。活动1呈现了这些辅音的典型例词,需要学生听录音跟读模仿。表格中的例词的辅音字母分布在单词中的不同位置,这样便于学生体会这些音素在不同位置的发音。

活动2练习的是朗读技巧中的不完全爆破。不完全爆破涉及本部分介绍的三对爆破音,这也是教材将爆破音和不完全爆破放在一起的原因,学习爆破音是学习不完全爆破的基础。活动2提供了一些含有不完全爆破发音的典型短语和句子,要求学生边听录音边跟读模仿,不仅要理解不完全爆破的朗读规则,还要能在日常口头表达中正确运用。

语音知识

不完全爆破是英语口语语流中一种重要的语音现象。在实际交流中,人们不会把单词中的每个音 都逐个清晰地发出。受语速等多种因素的影响,人们往往会有吞音或省音的现象,因此产生了英语中 不完全爆破现象。要理解不完全爆破,首先要了解爆破音的发音特点。发爆破音时,发音部位形成阻 碍,阻止气流从口腔出来,接着解除发音部位的阻碍,让气流释放,产生很小的爆发音。简而言之, 这个发音过程可以分为"成阻—持阻—除阻"三个阶段。

不完全爆破是指没有最后的除阻阶段,而直接发后面的音。也就是说,当一个爆破音和另一个辅 音相邻时,受后面辅音的影响,前面的爆破音在发音时形成发此音的口型,但不送气,因此并未把音 发出来。这种要发但未发出的音就是我们所说的"不完全爆破"。不完全爆破发音更省力,是自然语 流中常发生的现象。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够听辨并准确认读三对爆破辅音音素/p/与/b/、/t/与/d/、/k/与/q/和一对摩擦辅音 音素/[/与/v/; 能够准确读出含有这些辅音音素的常见单词; 能够了解爆破音/p/与 /b/、/t/与/d/、/k/与/g/和一对摩擦辅音/f/与/v/的发音特点,并掌握清浊相对的音最 重要的区别, 感知这四组辅音的清浊关系。
- 能够理解在语流中不完全爆破现象的成因和发音特点,并通过反复模仿、跟读,有 意识地使用这种发音技巧。

教学建议

- 1. 听音感知爆破音和摩擦音的发音特点。学生听活动1的录音,感受这些辅音的发音特点。接着, 教师示范朗读这三对爆破音和一对摩擦音,让学生尝试用自己的话描述爆破音和摩擦音的发音特点。
- 2. 对比分析, 感知发音要领。教师通过分解发音动作示范读出这四对辅音, 让学生观察教师的发 音部位和发音方式,模仿跟读,还可提醒学生把手放在声带上,感知对比发清辅音和发浊辅音时发音 器官的振动与变化。

音素	发音要领			
/m / /ln /	发/p/时,双唇紧闭,然后突然放开,让口腔内气流冲出,爆破成音,发音时声带不振动。			
/p/ /b/	/b/的发音部位和发音方法与/p/相同,不同的是发/b/时声带需要振动。			

音素	发音要领
	发/t/时,舌尖紧贴上齿龈,形成阻碍,然后舌尖突然放开,让口腔内气流冲出,发音时
/t/ /d/	声带不振动。
	/d/的发音部位和发音方法与/t/相同,不同的是发/d/时声带需要振动。
	发/k/时,舌后部隆起,紧贴软腭,形成阻碍,然后突然放开,让口腔内气流冲出,爆破
/k/ /g/	成音,发音时声带不振动。
	/g/的发音部位和发音方法与/k/相同,不同的是发/g/时声带需要振动。
/f/ /v/	发/f/时,下唇轻触上齿,让口腔内气流从唇齿间通过,形成摩擦音,发音时声带不振动。
	/v/的发音部位和发音方法与/f/相同,不同的是发/v/时声带需要振动。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在教学辅音时,教师需要充分重视学生的一些常见发音问题,耐心给予示范和指导。例 如,为了让发音更清晰,学生容易重读单词末尾的辅音并加上不必要的元音,把cap读成/kæpə/, 教师需要及时纠正这种错误的发音。再比如,一些学生可能由于受到母语的影响或干扰,无法分清 /f/和/h/。教师可建议学生准备小镜子,观察自己发音时的嘴型以及唇齿的位置,以便在教师示范时 进行模仿。

就辅音而言,分辨清辅音和浊辅音比较重要,这是理解英语中一些发音规则的基础。例如,有 些单词的语法屈折词缀(如名词复数、名词所有有格、动词第三人称单数形式、动词过去式等)的 读音遵循"清—清,浊—浊"的规则,即在清辅音后发清辅音/s/或/t/,在浊辅音或元音后发浊辅音 /z/或/d/。

- 3. 语音巩固训练。教师呈现下面的歌谣,并组织学生一起唱,注意粗体字母的发音。学生彼此之 间相互帮助纠正发音错误。教师请多名学生在全班大声歌唱,教师评价学生发音的准确性。
 - ① See a pin and pick it up,

All the day you'll have good luck.

See a pin and let it lie,

You'll be sorry by and by.

② Stir the soup in the pot.

Make it nice and hot.

Round, round,

Round and round,

Stir the soup in the pot.

3 Look, look,

That good old cook,

Took out a pudding,

And cut it with a hook!

(4) The plane is up in the sky.

Moving so fast, and ever so high.

Over the land, and over the sea.

But we always come back for tea.

教学提示: 教师在给学生示范发音之后,可开展各种游戏活动帮助学生巩固发音,如快速认读游戏、快速听辨音游戏、根据发音匹配对应音标的"找朋友"游戏等。教师还可以带领学生朗读绕口令、歌谣等,让音素学习更有趣。

活动2 -----

- 1. 听录音,感知不完全爆破现象。教师播放活动2的录音,提醒学生注意括号内的爆破音是否发生了爆破。
- 2. 理解不完全爆破现象。教师示范不完全爆破的发音方式,让学生更加直观地感受其发音特点。教师引导学生观察并思考"一般什么情况下会发生不完全爆破?",最后师生一起总结:当爆破音与爆破音或其他辅音相邻时,前面的爆破音只形成阻碍,不发生爆破,稍停即发后面的辅音。不完全爆破是连贯语流中常见的语音现象,目的就是使发音更流畅、省力。值得注意的是,语音教学应避免过度讲解,可以根据学生接受能力决定讲解的详略程度。
- 3. 听录音跟读模仿。教师再次播放活动2的录音,学生跟读模仿。接着教师可以请几位学生朗读并给予评价。



🥝 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的文本是一段对话,对话中三个同学商量一起加入学校的音乐社团,互相交流各自拥有的音乐才能。其中Emma由于不会弹奏乐器,显得有些不自信,但朋友们一致认为她歌唱得好,鼓励她加入音乐社团。三人还谈到Emma的双胞胎妹妹Ella的才能,希望她一起加入音乐社团。对话中呈现了与弹奏乐器相关的动词短语,如play the guitar、play the violin、play the drums等。

该对话自然融入了can表示能力的核心句型,包括肯定句、否定句和特殊疑问句,涉及的人称也很丰富,包括 I、you、she。此外,该对话还包括生动、地道的口语语言,如"Hi there!""I have no idea.""I'd love to, but ...""What about you?""How about you?""Exactly!""That's great!"等。对话很好地展现了朋友之间互相鼓励、互相支持的生活情境,同时也让学生体会到参加社团的好处之一就是能够和朋友在一起做喜欢的事情。对话右下方的插图呈现了三个朋友在校园里交谈的场景,三人头上的气泡里分别是他们在对话里谈到的乐器,有助于学生预测对话的内容。

活动设计: 2a—2e的任务链综合了听、看、读、说等技能训练。活动2a让学生听录音并补全对话。这里要填的内容都是日常交际用语,目的是引导学生关注对话中地道的口语表达。活动2b以表格的形式检测对话中的关键信息。活动2c是听录音跟读模仿和角色扮演环节。该活动结合语音练习,要求学生关注对话中的不完全爆破现象,让学生体会不完全爆破现象在真实交流中的运用。2d和2e是口语产出任务链,在示范对话语境的基础上,让学生创编类似的对话,与朋友一起讨论想要加入的社团。2d提供了学校社团招新的信息表,表中列出了不同社团以及加入社团所需的相关能力,学生通过勾选相关内容确定自己想加入哪个社团。该步骤为学生提供了更多内容选择和语言表达,为2e对话的

开展搭建了支架。2e则提供了对话的基本框架,主要包括对话中要使用的核心句型"What club do you want to join?"和"Can you ...?"等。

学习目标

- 能够有意识地关注和记录听力对话中常见的口语表达,理解其语用功能及意义,并 得体地运用在新语境中。
- 能够利用表格梳理对话中的关键信息,把握内容要点。
- 能够有感情地分角色表演示范对话,掌握不完全爆破的发音方式,使语流自然。
- ▶ 能够熟练运用情态动词 can表达自己和他人所具备的才能。
- ▶ 能够根据社团招募新成员的要求,综合分析选择社团的理由,结合自身实际情况选 择合适的社团。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

学生观察和描述活动 2a 的插图, 教师通过提问引导学生预测对话的内容。如:

- What can you see in the picture?
- Who are the people?
- What musical instruments are they talking about?
- Can you guess what they can do?
- What club are they talking about?
- 2. 听力训练

教师播放第一遍录音,学生边听边理解对话内容,并快速记录2a空格处的相关语句。学生补全2a 的对话后,师生核对答案。如学生完成活动有困难,教师有必要再次播放录音,让学生完整理解对话 大意, 获取关键信息。

- 3. 阅读对话, 梳理信息
- (1) 学生快速阅读对话并填写活动 2b 表格。核对答案时, 教师要求学生用完整的句子谈论表格的 信息,例如"Peter can play the guitar."。教师还可以让学生采用问答形式核对答案,培养学生口语表 达的规范性和完整性。例如:
 - S1: What can Peter do?
 - S2: He can play the guitar.
- (2) 关注常用口头表达。教师把对话中的部分常用表达写在黑板上,让学生思考这些表达的意 义,并鼓励学生说出具有相似意义的其他表达。例如:
 - Hi there! / Hi! / Hello!

- I've no idea. / I don't know.
- What about you? / How about you?
- I'd love to, but ... / I'd like to, but ...

- Exactly! / That's right!
- That's great / wonderful / nice / terrific / awesome!

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在日常教学中,教师可多鼓励学生用另一种说法表达相似意义,这种训练能够有效提 升学生的口语表达能力。需要注意的是,不同说法表示的意义只是相近,并非完全相同。例如,Hi there 和 Hi 或 Hello 都是非正式的问候,但 Hi there 显得更加随意,常用于熟人之间。

4. 操练对话, 分角色扮演

- (1) 听录音,关注对话语流特征。教师在播放录音前,可让学生朗读对话,复习已学过的朗读 技巧。例如,教师可提示学生思考哪些词宜重读、哪些词宜弱读、哪些地方会出现不完全爆破等。然 后,学生听录音,将录音与自己的朗读作比较。对于不一致的地方,教师可引导学生思考采用哪种方 式更合适。
- (2)分角色操练对话。学生三人一组操练活动2a的对话,模仿录音中的语音语调。教师提示学生 可先关注口语表达的准确性,再提升语言的流利性。操练熟练后,教师可请几组学生表演对话,然后 给予适当评价。

5. 口语表达

- (1)填写2d信息表。学生独立完成活动2d中提供的学校社团招生信息表。教师可提示学生在教 材基础上拓展其他社团及对应的能力,同时思考不同社团对应的能力应该如何表达。
- (2) 联系实际,实践运用。学生根据活动2e的对话基本框架创编对话,与同伴一起讨论想要加入 的社团。教师可提醒学生使用核心句型 "What club do you want to join?"和 "Can you ...?"开展对话。 学生可以依据自己的实际水平自由发挥,围绕既定话题展开真实的交谈。学生交流时,教师巡视,给 学生提供语言上的帮助。最后,请几组学生为全班示范表演,师生共同对表演者的语音、语调、拓展 内容、交流的自然流畅程度等方面给予评价。

Grammar Focus

🤘 内容分析

本单元的核心语法项目是情态动词can表示能力的用法。活动3a是目标语言的发现和归纳环节, 表格中呈现了含有情态动词can的一般疑问句及肯定、否定问答,以及肯定句、否定句,体现了can与 不同人称主语搭配的情况。情态动词与助动词do的最大区别是前者没有人称和数的变化,后面直接用 动词原形。活动3a的问题"Do they change form?"旨在让学生发现这个规律。此外,否定句在其后直 接加not,一般疑问句不借助助动词,直接把情态动词放在句首。活动3b至3d是目标语言的巩固和运 用环节。3b选取了学生感兴趣的动物话题,让学生将两部分文字组合成逻辑合理的句子,这些句子表 达的是不同动物具备的技能。需要说明的是,有些句子的答案不是唯一的,这有助于培养学生的发散 性思维。在活动3c的小语篇中,主人公介绍了自己多才多艺的好朋友Linda。文章虽短,却可以划分 出"总一分一总"的结构。该短文填空活动融合了系动词be和实义动词do以及情态动词的使用,学 生需要读懂上下文,用适当的词语补全短文。活动3d要求学生采访同学,主动开展交流,了解同学具 备的才能和特长,增进同学之间的了解。

学习目标

- >> 能够归纳含有情态动词 can 的句子结构特点。
- 能够理解情态动词can描述能力的表意功能。
- ▶ 能够准确使用 can 的各种句式来描述能力。

🧐 教学建议

- 1. 探究含有 can 的句子结构及其表意功能
- (1)看例句,找规律。学生阅读3a的活动要求和方框内例句,思考can在句子中的意义,并观察 can后黑体动词的特点。教师提出下面问题,引导学生边观察边思考:
 - can 在句子中表达什么意义?
 - can后的动词形式有什么特点?
 - can 随人称变化而变化吗?
 - can 的否定形式是什么? 有缩略形式吗?
 - can在一般疑问句和特殊疑问句中需要借助助动词吗?
 - can在句子中一般重读还是弱读?
 - (2)总结规律。学生可以先讨论以上问题,然后师生一起总结如下:
 - 在语义与语用上, can 的基本意义是"能够", 可以用来表示能力。
 - can 后的动词用原形,是因为 can 是情态动词,而情态动词后面的动词一般用原形。
 - can不会随人称的变化而变化,即不管主语是单数还是复数,是第几人称,can保持不变,这一 点与实义动词的用法不同。
 - can 的否定形式在正式文体中通常是 cannot,缩略形式是 can't。
 - 含有 can 的疑问句不需要借助助动词, can 可以直接放在句首。
 - can 在句子中一般弱读成/kən/,句末例外,肯定回答时的 can 和否定回答时的 can't 需要重读。

2. 用 can 造句

- (1)学生阅读活动3b的指示语,将句子的主谓部分组合成逻辑正确、意义完整的句子。需要注意 的是,有些主谓组合比较灵活,如 "A parrot can speak."或 "A parrot can fly."。另外,学生还可以发 挥创造性,用 can 造出更多句子,如 "A fish can swim far. A fish can swim fast. A fish can live long."等。
 - (2)教师可以先示范,将活动3b中的句子改编成歌谣,然后鼓励学生发挥想象力,创编歌谣。

例如:

Little fish, little fish, can you swim? Can you swim?

Yes, I can. Yes, I can. I can swim.

Parrot, parrot, can you swim? Can you swim?

No, I can't. No, I can't. But I can fly.

Parrot, parrot, can you speak? Can you speak?

Yes, I can. Yes, I can. I can speak Chinese and English.

3. 短文填空

(1)完成活动3c。教师引导学生快速浏览活动3c中的小短文及框内词语,在整体理解语篇信息的基础上完成短文填空。教师可以指导学生利用上下文的搭配信息或逻辑信息等完成语篇填空。例如,从上文She is good at so many things可判断,在English前的空格处需要填肯定形式,即can speak。

教学提示:语篇不论长短,都需要语句通顺、层次清晰、逻辑合理、上下文衔接流畅。学生完成短文填空时,教师可引导学生充分挖掘短文中的上下文线索,训练学生关注语篇结构和语言衔接,培养学生的语篇意识。

(2) 研读 3c 短文。师生核对 3c 答案,然后教师可让学生找出短文中的主题句和细节句。短文的主题句是 "She is good at so many things."。描述 Linda 才能的细节句有 "She can speak English …" "Linda can play the guitar …" "She can play ping-pong …" "She can make delicious cakes!"。教师可以给学生简要解释主题句和细节句的功能: 主题句说明文本大意,细节句支撑说明主题句,让文本内容更丰富、生动。教师可以提醒学生关注这两种句子的功能,并鼓励他们在写作中灵活运用主题句和细节句。

4. 采访活动

学生浏览活动3d中的指示语和表格,明确活动要求。教师根据学生情况分组,一名学生充当记者,采访组内同学,了解同学具备的才能和特长,并把采访结果填入表内。学生可用的采访问题有 "Can you play a musical instrument? What musical instrument can you play? Can you swim? Can you cook?" 等。采访结束后,教师请小组代表在全班汇报组内学生的才能和特长。小组自评、互评,最后教师评价学生表现。此活动可以训练学生在真实语境中运用目标语言的能力。根据学生的基础,教师还可以让学生拓展和补充一些动词,以增加活动的趣味性。

🚨 拓展活动: 句子接龙

教师指导学生使用情态动词 can 描述各自的能力和特长, 开展"句子接龙"游戏。例如:

- S1: I can sing.
- S2: S1 can sing. I can dance.
- S3: S1 can sing, S2 can dance. I can play chess.
- S4: S1 can sing. S2 can dance. S3 can play chess. I can play the violin.



🝳 内容分析

文本分析: Section A侧重谈论怎样选择社团,在此基础上, Section B侧重探讨加入社团的意义 与收获,在话题、语言和技能等方面都有所拓展。此部分的读写任务链是读社团招募海报和写信申 请加入社团,其中1b的阅读文本是核心内容。本单元阅读文本是以海报形式发布的学校社团招新广 告。这类招募海报通常包括一些基本要素,如应招者的条件、社团的主要活动和活动时间、联系人 和联系方式等。三个招募海报还有很多个性化设计,包括标题的突出处理、字体、颜色、文字背景、 插图的使用等。作为广告,文本语言应具有号召力和感染力,并体现很强的互动性。三篇广告都以 一般疑问句开头,用以吸引读者的兴趣,如 "Do you love Chinese food? Can you cook?" "Do you like reading?" "Do you love nature? Can you take good photos?"。文本中还使用了祈使句热情邀请读者加 人社团,如 "Join our cooking club! Let's learn to ..." "Join our book club!" "Come hiking with us every Sunday afternoon!"。这些句子多以感叹号结尾,表达强烈的感情。在中间部分,三篇广告以不同方 式说明了社团的活动内容(learn to cook Chinese food ...; act out stories, talk about books, and make new friends; hiking, watch birds, take photos, and collect plants and insects; visit nature parks),最后再次邀 请读者加入。为了吸引读者加入,广告中还谈到加入社团后的收获,如"You can soon cook for your family." "Books can open your mind and make you think." "Discover wildlife right under your nose!"。这 些句子从不同侧面体现了社团的价值和意义,呼应了Section B的问题 "What can you learn in a school club?".

活动设计: la—ld是阅读任务链。la是一个读前活动,读者需要根据三个学生对自己兴趣、爱好和特长的自述,为他们选择合适的社团。这既是对Section A引导性问题的回顾和运用,也为后面的阅读作铺垫。lb将读前活动与阅读三篇广告联系起来,让学生回顾并修正 la的选择,并用文中信息说明为三人选择某个社团的理由。lc梳理了三篇广告中的细节信息,学生可以通过完成表格发现三篇广告的共同点,从而归纳此类广告包含的基本要素。以表格的形式对语篇内容进行梳理也是对语篇内容结构化的一种处理方式。活动 ld是基于阅读语篇的拓展讨论活动,每个问题都将文中内容与学生自身关联起来,同时这些问题与后面的写作任务也有关联,为学生完成后续的写作作准备。

2a—2b是写作任务链。写作任务是对阅读文章的回应,也是阅读理解的深化和拓展。写作过程分两步进行,活动2a提供了申请邮件的框架,在降低写作任务难度的同时,提醒学生关注语言结构,并为写作提供范文。这封申请邮件的主体部分包含几层信息:首先陈述加入该社团的意愿,然后表达自己的兴趣、爱好或特长,说明想加入社团的原因,最后礼貌询问自己是否能够加入社团。在2a的铺垫下,2b要求学生仿照这封邮件,根据自己的真实情况,给社团负责人写邮件,申请加入社团。本单元通过对学校社团多方面的学习和探讨,让学生了解不同社团活动的特点以及从中能获得的乐趣,对照

自身的能力和特长,进一步认识自我,拓展自己的兴趣爱好,积极参与社团活动,结交朋友,从而丰富自我,形成乐观、积极的人生态度。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够通过观察文本版式设计和细读文本, 归纳、总结三篇广告的共同点, 并概括社 团招募广告包含的基本要素。
- 能够基于这三篇广告,梳理和归纳社团招募广告的文体特征,包括语篇特征和语言特征。
- 能够结合自己的真实情况,撰写一封申请加入社团的邮件。
- 能够分析自己的爱好和所长,在充分了解自己以及清楚社团意义的基础上,选择加入合适的社团,提升自己的校园生活质量。

物学建议

1. 读前预测

(1) 学生阅读活动 la 中 Alice、Lin Hui 和 Jack 的自述,边阅读边找出描述每个人兴趣爱好与特长的语块,完成关键信息的提取。如:

Alice: good at telling stories, act out stories at home;

Lin Hui: interested in nature, love hiking, read maps;

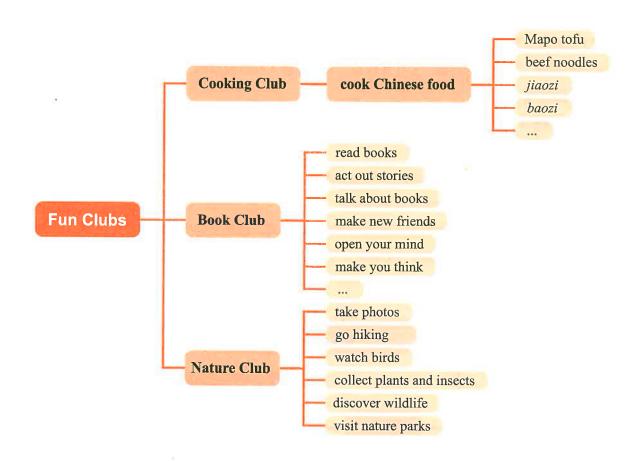
Jack: love great food, cook for my family.

(2) 学生预测适合这三人的社团,教师把学生说出的社团名称写在黑板上。

2. 阅读理解

- (1)快速阅读,验证预测。教师引导学生浏览1b的语篇形态、标题以及插图,了解阅读文体体裁,并回答以下问题:
 - What kind of text is it?
 - Where or when do you find this kind of text?
 - What do people use it for?
- (2) 仔细阅读,理解细节。学生仔细阅读活动 1b 中的三则广告,获取文本信息,填写 1c 的表格。 教师可先与一名学生采用问答形式核对表格第一行的信息,然后让学生两人一组采用问答形式核对表格余下的信息。
 - T: What club is it?
 - S1: It is a cooking club.
 - T: What do students usually do in the club?
 - S1: They learn to cook Chinese food.
 - T: Where do they usually meet?

- S1: In Room 303.
- T: When do they meet?
- S1: At 4:30 p.m. on Wednesdays.
- T: If you want to join the club, who do you need to contact?
- S1: I can email Ma Xiaohui.
- (3)阅读课文,制作社团广告主题词汇网。教师可以为学生提供词汇语义网的框架,引导他们以 小组形式共同设计词汇语义网。如下图:



教学提示: 词汇学习有多种方式, 如关注词的搭配、在语境中学习词汇、组建某个主题的语义网络 等。通过语义网学习词汇有助于学生掌握根据意义分类的词汇策略,更好地记忆词汇。

(4) 朗读广告,体会广告的感染力。教师让学生假设自己是其中一个社团的负责人,需要在班上 口头介绍自己的社团、招募新成员、然后启发学生思考怎样朗读才能加强号召力、感染力和互动性、 例如哪些句子应读得充满感情,哪些词或句子可以读得夸张些,个别关键词可以加重强调等。学生可 分组练习朗读, 然后教师邀请几位代表在班上表演。

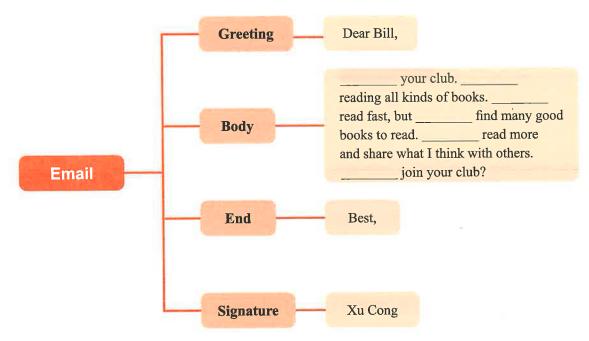
3. 读后活动

学生分组讨论活动1d的问题,然后教师请不同组的学生在班上分享自己的观点。教师应鼓励学生 大胆表达,积极与他人分享信息,以培养自信心,提升表达能力。

4. 写作准备

- (1)完成邮件填空。学生浏览活动 2a 的活动要求、方框内的语块和邮件框架,根据上下文语境填空。例如, I love和 I'd love to看似相近,但两者意义和用法大不相同, I love后可接名词、带to的不定式或动词的—ing形式,表达"我特别喜欢……",而 I'd love to中to是不定式符号,后面接动词原形,表示"我想要……"。根据这两个语块的意义和用法特点,就能够判断下面这两句中缺失的部分用哪个语块。
 - <u>I love</u> reading all kinds of books.
 … but <u>I'd love to</u> find many good books.
 学生完成 2a 后,全班核对答案。教师要求学生集体朗读该邮件,进一步熟悉邮件格式和内容。
- (2) 梳理邮件结构。教师提出问题,引导学生根据信息梳理邮件主体部分的结构:首先陈述个人加入社团的意愿,接着分享兴趣、爱好或特长,并解释加入社团的原因,最后确认是否有资格加入社团。以下问题供参考:
 - What club is Xu Cong interested in?
 - What does Xu Cong love doing?
 - What can Xu Cong do? What can Xu Cong not do?
 - What would Xu Cong like to do in the club?

同时,教师还可引导学生回顾第三单元所学的邮件格式,借助思维导图梳理邮件包含的要素,如写给谁、主题是什么、邮件组成部分(打招呼、正文、结束、署名)等。师生一起分析2a邮件的结构和内容。如下图:



- (3) 巩固核心句型和表达法。学生结合自身实际情况,用活动2a方框内的语块造句,教师在黑板上记录下来。例如:
 - I love reading / dancing / playing ping-pong / making friends ...
 - I'm interested in nature / cooking ...
 - I'd love to share my ideas with others / go hiking with my friends ...

- I can play the guitar, but I can't dance.
- 5. 完成写作
- (1)写出初稿。学生根据黑板上展示的思维导图, 仿照活动2a中的邮件格式, 结合个人真实情 况,撰写一封申请加入社团的邮件初稿。教师提醒学生使用单元核心句式和目标语言(can表达能力) 进行写作。
 - I'm interested in ...

I love ...

I can ..., but I can't ...

I'd love to ...

- Can I ...?
- (2)修改打磨,确定终稿。教师提供评估量表,从内容的完整性、语言的准确性、句子之间的连 贯性和书写的整洁性等方面进行评价。先在班上讲评一篇学生习作,然后学生依据评价标准,自行修 正一些基本的错误,如语法、拼写、标点错误等。接着同桌间相互交换批改作文、同时教师安排一名 学生在黑板上修改、评价另一名学生的习作。修改结束后,教师和全班一起评价学生在黑板上修改后 的习作,帮助学生进一步掌握修改方法,学会如何评价自己和他人的习作。
- (3)展示交流。学生修改好习作后与小组分享和讨论,并推荐出色的作品在课堂上展示或朗读。 教师对学生的作品进行评价,指出优点并提出修改建议。此外,教师还可以将优秀作文张贴在教室供 全班欣赏,或制作成电子版在班级学习群交流。



🔘 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是让学生成立一个自己的社团。该项目活动让学生体验学校社团从成立到招募 新成员的全过程,包括三个主要环节。活动3a让学生大胆思考,确定自己想成立的一个社团。活动 3b要求学生为自己的社团制作招募新成员的海报。教材提供了一个机器人社团的招募广告作为参考, 并提示学生这类广告中应包含的基本信息: 社团名称、社团成员须具备的能力、活动时间和地点、联 系方式等。除此之外, 前面主篇阅读的广告也是很好的范本。需要注意的是, 广告中列举的社团成员 须具备的能力应该与社团的性质和类型匹配,这是社团广告的重要内容。最后是招募环节,活动3a提 供了招募对话的框架,以及信息记录表格,供招募者记录应招同学的基本情况,并确定是否能加入社 团。除了询问应招者是否具备相应能力,还有必要询问他们是否有时间参与社团活动。整个项目活动 具有开放性和综合性,是对学生综合语言运用能力的挑战,也是对学生动手能力、独立思考能力和创 新能力的培养。

学习目标

- 能够总结社团招募广告的基本要素。
- 能够小组分工合作完成社团招募海报的制作。
- 能够在班级内模拟完成招募社团新成员的任务。
- 能够进一步理解社团活动的意义。
- 能够通过社团设计和招募活动了解其他同学的兴趣和爱好,增进友谊和感情。

🧐 教学建议

1. 明确项目活动的步骤

项目活动的主题是Start your own club, 教师需要引导学生明确项目活动的过程,即确定社团名称 一制作社团招募海报 一 招募新会员。

2. 确定想成立的社团

学生分成若干组,小组讨论成立什么样的社团有意义,且很多学生感兴趣,根据需求或兴趣创建一个全新的社团,完成活动3a。

3. 阅读招募广告范例

- (1) 仔细阅读广告,熟悉广告内容。教师引导学生阅读机器人社团招募广告,分析和思考招募广告所包含的内容。例如:
 - What is it? What club is it?
 - What requirements do new club members need to meet for the club?
 - If you are interested in the robotics club, when and where do you meet? Who do you need to contact?
- (2)结构化梳理广告内容,发展思维能力,完成活动3b。教师引导学生总结招募广告的基本要素:社团名称、社团成员须具备的能力、活动时间和地点、联系方式等。教师在黑板上以表格的形式呈现招募广告的基本要素。

The name of the club	
What club members can do	
Meeting time and place	
Contact information	

4. 制作社团招募海报

(1)填写表格,明确海报内容。各小组讨论升填写黑板上呈现的广告表格。在填写What club members can do这一栏时,教师提示学生,社团成员除了具备与该社团匹配的能力,还可以关注一些 共性的条件,如 sense of responsibility、team spirit等,这样做的目的是激发学生的责任意识和团队合

作精神,起到育人的作用。

- (2)完成海报制作。小组分工合作,教师提醒学生制作海报要注意的事项,如标题的突出处理、 字体、颜色、文字背景、插图的使用等。另外,广告语言应具有号召力和感染力,有很强的互动性。 教师应鼓励各小组充分发挥想象力,设计有特色的标识(logo)和标语(slogan)等,尽量做到图文 并茂。
- (3)全班交流。各组派代表上台展示,呈现海报,用英语介绍自己创建的社团,然后全班以小组 为单位投票选出最佳创意设计,教师及时给予激励性的评价和指导。

5. 招募新成员

各小组利用活动3c提供的社团招新对话框架以及信息记录表格进行模拟招募。招募者在表格中记 录申请加入社团的同学的基本情况,并确定应招者是否能加入社团。可供参考使用的语言有:

- Can you work as a team?
- Can you work well with your hands?
- Can you come at 12:30 p.m. on Tuesdays?

0

教师还可以根据学生的实际情况,适时补充其他表达方式,从而拓展学生的语言知识,并提升他 们的语言表达能力,如 "Do you want to ...?" "Would you like to ...?" "Welcome to our ..." "Please come and join us."等。

模拟招募结束后,教师可邀请各组代表分享招募结果,包括招募了哪些成员,以及招募该成员的 理由。教师针对各组情况给予评价和鼓励。

Reflecting

内容分析

本单元的反思性问题主要从词汇、语法、主题意义等方面引导学生回顾自己的学习过程。在语 言方面,学生学习了不同学校社团的名称,并尝试描述不同社团的相关活动、特别是学习了情态动词 can表示能力的用法,了解了情态动词不同于实义动词的语法特征。本单元还引导学生讨论和探究参 加不同社团的益处。

本单元的价值引领句是 "Our interests make us interesting.",这句话将interest(兴趣)和interesting (有趣的)两个同根词巧妙结合在一起,揭示了兴趣爱好的重要性。心理学家发现,一个拥有良好兴 趣爱好的人对新事物更感兴趣,学习能力也更强。由于他们的学习更多地来自内在动力,他们有更强 的毅力和热情。另外,由于兴趣爱好能陶冶情操、发展才能、丰富生活、丰盈内心,因此它能使一个 人变得更有趣。参加学校社团可以让学生培养兴趣爱好、发展自己的特长和才能,并获得自信,使自 己成为更有趣的人。该价值引领句与单元开头提出的大问题"我们为什么要加入学校社团?"首尾呼 应,进一步深化单元主题内容,提升单元主题意义。

9	教学建议
1. 教	师让学生书

1. 教师让学生书面总结本单元学了哪些社团名称,以及各个社团的活动内容。例如:
I can name many different school clubs and describe what people do in different clubs. For example:
In a nature club, we can
In a book club, we can
·····
2. 教师引导学生总结本单元介绍的情态动词 can 的用法和意义。例如,可以让学生用 can 介绍
自己。
I can talk about people's abilities by using "can". For example:
I can
3. 教师引导学生思考学习本单元的意义,并用自己的语言表达出来。例如:
I think the theme of this unit is important because

四、课文注释

1. I have no idea. 我不知道。

名词idea表示"想法;主意"。"I have no idea."相当于"I don't know.",意思是"我不知道。" 例如:

- A: What's she talking about? 她在说什么?
- B: I've no idea. 我一点儿也不了解。

I have no idea who she is. 我不知道她是谁。

含有 idea 的常见搭配还有: a good / great idea (一个好主意)、a bad idea (一个馊主意)、have an idea(有个主意)等。

- 2. Here's some good news! 这儿有一些好消息!
 - (1) Here's ... 是引出要介绍的内容时常用的句式。例如:

Here's a question for you to think about. 这是让你们思考的一个问题。

Here's my suggestion for your trip. 这是我对你们旅行的建议。

还可以在呈现某物或给某人东西时使用这个句式。例如:

Here's my favourite book. I hope you like it. 这是我最喜欢的书,我希望你喜欢。

Here's the key to the room. 这是房间的钥匙。

(2) 此处news表示"消息;新闻(报道)",是不可数名词。表达"一条消息;一则新闻"需用a piece of news。例如:

Here's a piece of sports news from Sandy Hunter. 下面是桑迪·亨特发来的体育新闻。

Do you want to hear the good news or the bad news first? 你想先听好消息还是坏消息?

3. You name it! 只要你说得出名字!

此句中的name是动词, 意思是"说出……的名字"。这句话在口语中很常见, 后面省略了 "We've got it.", 意思是"凡是你说得出的, 我们都有。"例如:

Carrots, tomatoes, potatoes—you name it! 胡萝卜、西红柿、土豆,凡是你说得出的(我们都有)! Chairs, tables, beds—you name it, they make it! 椅子、桌子、床,凡是你说得出的,他们都做!

4. It's more than just reading. 这里不仅有阅读。

此句中more than表示比所谈事物更有价值、更重要或程度更高, 意思是"不仅; 不止"。例如: Jason is more than a lecturer; he is a writer too. 贾森不只是一名演讲家,也是一名作家。

He's more than a teacher. He's a friend. 他不仅仅是老师,还是朋友。

more than 后面还常接数量,表示"超过;多于"。例如:

He is more than 20. 他超过20岁了。

- 5. Email Ma Xiaohui at maxh.food@happymail.com for more information. 如需更多信息,请发邮件至 maxh.food@happymail.com, 联系人: 马晓慧。
- (1) maxh.food@happymail.com是电子邮箱地址, "email sb at +电子邮箱地址"表示给某人发邮 件到某邮箱。类似的表达还有 "call sb on/at + 电话号码",表示 "拨打(电话号码)找某人"。

Call me at 666-3333. 请拨打666-3333 与我联系。

(2) information 意为"信息;消息;资讯",是不可数名词,表达"一则消息"要用a piece of information。生活中的常见用法还有information desk(咨询处), for information only(仅供参考) 等等。

Unit 5 Fun Clubs

The theme of this unit is clubs that young people enjoy at school. Students will also learn about schools around the world. They will learn how to use "can" to express abilities. This will lead them to creating and promoting their own club. The ultimate aim of the unit is to help students think about, discuss, and be able to answer the Big Question: Why do we join school clubs?

Opening Page

Culture Note	After-school Activities Students can sign up for special classes and after-school activities. These are considered important because they can help students develop skills and qualities such as teamwork, responsibility, and confidence that may not be covered in the traditional regular curriculum. As such they are often called "extra-curricular" activities. Clubs usually offer recreational activities. They are a good place to learn how to do a new sport or activity. Sports clubs are very common and popular. However, after-school clubs can be for a great variety of other things. For example: chess, crafts, computer programming, martial arts, drama, dance, cooking, gardening, photography, and yoga.
Suggested Answers (Look and share)	 They are working on the model. I think they are in a mechanics, robotics, or programming club. I would like to join this club because I am interested in building things or models.

Section A

1a			
Culture Note	Extra-curricular Clubs around the World Extra-curricular clubs are popular in many countries around the world. Sports clubs are very popular, but there are many other choices available. Here are some examples of clubs: chess, arts and crafts, computer programming, rock-climbing, self-defence, theatre and dance, cooking, gardening, photography, yoga, debating and public speaking, book, pottery, history, creative writing, improv (improvisation), electronics, engineering, quiz, spelling, poetry, comedy, and many more.		
	C art club	A science club	<u>F</u> drama club
Answers	<u>D</u> music club	B chess club	E ping-pong club

•		

"To be, or not to be, that is the question."

Culture Note

This is a very famous quote from the play "Hamlet" by William Shakespeare, written between 1599 and 1601. The line is one of the most widely known and quoted lines in English literature. It comes from Hamlet's famous soliloguy, a speech in a play in which a character speaks his or her thoughts alone on the stage. In this, Hamlet is thinking about death and the unfairness and pain of life. It has been performed by many great actors over hundreds of years. When the boy asks Lin Hua to "read these words with feeling", he means to put emotion into the acting performance, to reflect the deep drama of the scene to the audience.

Answers

Name	Club	
Teng Fei	ping-pong club	
Sam	chess club	
Lin Hua	drama club	

Answers

- 1. Teng Fei can play ping-pong.
- 2. Sam <u>can't</u> play Chinese chess.
- 3. Lin Hua can read with feeling.

Pronunciation

Drills

Read the following word pairs and let students decide if the two words in each pair contain the same or different consonant sound. Repeat the word pairs and ask students to see if they can write and spell the words:

Optional Approach

- /p/ and /b/: pay / pay, pay / bay, pit / bit, bit / bit, pat / bat, pat / pat, park / park, bark / bark, path / bath, cap / cap, cab / cap, nip / nib, nib / nib, rope / rope, robe / rope
- /t/ and /d/; tie / die, tie / tie, tip / tip, dip / tip, time / dime, time / time, heart / heart, hard / hard, height / hide, slight / slide, slide / slide
- /k/ and /g/: card / guard, card / card, class / glass, class / class, come / come, come / gum, cold / gold, cold / cold, girl / girl, girl / curl, clue / glue, clue / clue, exam / exam, lock / log, lock / lock, pick / pick, pig / pig
- /f/ and /v/: fall / full, feel / very, finish / village, flag / field, love / four, funny / very, twelve / future, even / every

	Tongue Twisters	
	Paul's purple pencil is in a pink pencil box.	/p/ (spelling p)
	Bob's blue book is in the bookcase.	/b/ (spelling b)
Optional	• The teacher's tape is on Tom's table.	/t/ (spelling t)
Approach	 Dale has a radio under his desk. 	/d/ (spelling d)
	 On Fridays, Frank does fun things with his family. 	/f/ (spelling f)
	In the evening, David loves to watch volleyball on TV.	/v/ (spelling v)

Additional Practice Provide more examples of incomplete plosion for students to practise (better in the form of tongue twisters, chants, humorous conversations, etc., and the content should be related to the unit topic in some way). • ge(t) dressed, ea(t) breakfast, goo(d) morning • A: Wha(t) time do you usually take a shower? B: I usually take a shower a(t) six forty. • I know the early bir(d) catches the worm, but I don'(t) li(ke) to get up early. • Ba(d) habits are like a bed: easy to get into, bu(t) har(d) to get out of.

2a	
	Useful Expressions
	• "Hi there!" is used to greet friends. Friends often greet each other casually, with
	variations on "Hello", such as "Hi", "Hey", etc.
	• "I have no idea." is used to emphasize that we do not know something, in this case,
	that Peter does not know which club he wants to join at all.
	"What about you?" vs "How about you?"
Language Tip	The difference between the two phrases is subtle, and they are for the most part
	interchangeable at this level.
	• "Exactly!" is said as a response to show that the speaker strongly agrees with what
	was said.
	• "I can play the drums." In this sentence, "drum" is a countable noun, the plural
	being "drums". A drummer plays a "drum kit" which is made of several different
*	drums, so they will always say they "play the drums".
Answers	I have no idea; What about you; I'd love to; That's great

_	Name	Ability
	Peter	can play the guitar
Answers	Emma	can sing well
	Ella	can play the violin
	Teng Fei	can play the drums

2c	
	Incomplete Plosion
	Listen to the conversation and direct students' attention to incomplete plosion:
	Wha(t) club do you wan(t) to join?
	• Here's some goo(d) news!

- **Teaching Tip** Our school wants to start a musi(c) club.
 - Do you wan(t) to join?
 - I'(d) love to, but I can'(t) play any musical instruments.
 - Exa(c)tly!
 - Let's go to the musi(c) room after school!

Grammar Focus

3a	
Language Tip	 Modal Verbs The modal verbs are: can / could, may / might, must, shall / should, will / would, etc. They are used as auxiliary verbs before the main verb of the sentence. 1. We use "can" to express ability, that is whether the subject of a sentence is able to do something. For example: Linda can play the guitar. 2. Other uses of "can": For general statements about what is possible or impossible. For example: Yes, we can come to the party. That can't be true. For requests, that is asking someone to do something. For example: Can you turn the music down please? It's very loud! For permission, that is asking if something can be done. For example: Can I open the window, please?
Suggested Answers	The verbs in bold do not change their form because they are used after modal verbs.

3b	
	Fish
	"Fish" is both a countable and uncountable noun, though more commonly
	uncountable. When referring to the creature that lives in water, and the part of the
	creature that we eat as food, we use "fish". For example:
Language Tip	My favourite meal is grilled fish and salad.
	Look at those fish! They're swimming very fast.
	As food, it is always uncountable. However, "fishes" can be used to refer to different
	kinds of fish, particularly when meaning different species of fish. For example:
	The list of endangered species includes nearly 600 fishes.

-	1. A fish can swim.
	2. A duck can fly / swim.
	3. A parrot can speak / fly.
	4. A dog can run fast / swim.
Suggested	5. A cat can climb trees.
Answers	3.5
	More sentences with "can":
	An elephant can lift heavy things.
*	A fox can dig holes.
	A bird can sing.
	A snake can bite.

30

Answers

is, can speak, can't speak, can play / likes to play, likes to play / can play, can even make

3d**Special Abilities** Have students survey the class for interesting or unusual abilities. Ask students to brainstorm abilities on the board. Help them by making suggestions or showing pictures of people showing their abilities. Some suggestions: Interesting abilities: juggle, whistle, moonwalk, close your eyes and write your name, draw a picture with both hands, solve a Rubik's cube, do a handstand, etc. Abilities related to English learning: sing an English song, tell a joke in English, speak with an English accent, etc. Other abilities: ride a bike, play *weiqi*, skip rope, make a birdhouse, etc. Encourage students to mingle and ask each other questions about what they can do. For example: A: What interesting things can you do? B: Well, I can juggle! Students report their findings to the class, and students with interesting abilities can demonstrate them to the class! **Suggested** Answers will vary. Answers

Optional Activity: Find Someone Who Can ...

Purpose	To help students master the target language and expand their vocabulary.
Material required	None.

Procedure

1. On the board:

A: Can you?		
B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.		
Find someone who can		
odo kung fu	sing a pop song	
• tell a funny joke	speak three languages	
 perform a traditional dance 	• tell a scary story	
perform Beijing opera	draw a picture of a dragon	
make a paper airplane		

- 2. Tell students to go around the classroom and find a classmate who can do each of the things on the board.
- 3. Tell students to write down the name of the classmate who can do each thing.
- 4. Model the questions and answers.
- 5. Elicit from students some of the names they have for each item and write the names on the board.
- 6. Invite one or two students to show off their talents by performing for the class.

Section B

Section E	
1a	
Suggested Answers	Alice: acting club, drama club, reading club, book club Lin Hui: hiking club, geography club, biology club, birdwatching club Jack: cooking club
1b	
	Ads
Language Tip	 The "ads" in 1b are advertisements showing which clubs are available. Ads are usually brief and "eye-catching", making them easy to notice and quick to understand. Ads often start with interactive yes / no questions, because they encourage the reader to respond, drawing their attention to the ad even more. The ad will also include all relevant information for the reader, including the time and place of the club as well as contact information.
	Useful Expressions
	 "You name it!" means any food or dish that the reader can think of will be included in the club. Although this may not be strictly true or possible, it is usually said to emphasize the great variety of something on offer. The expression "right under your nose" means something that might be very close
	to you, but that perhaps you have not noticed yet. The expression "fall in love with" in this case means to develop a deep liking for something.
Suggested Answers	Alice should join the book club. Lin Hui should join the nature club. Jack should join the cooking club.

	Club	What to do	Where to meet / go	When to meet	Who to write to
Suggested Answers	Cooking Club	learn to cook Chinese food	Room 303	4:30 p.m. on Wednesdays	Ma Xiaohui
	Book Club	read books, act out stories, talk about books, make new friends	library	Tuesdays after school	Bill
	Nature Club	go hiking, watch birds, take photos, collect plants and insects, visit nature parks	outside, nature parks	every Sunday afternoon	Jenny

1d

Things to Do at Different Clubs

Culture Note

At a cooking club, members might do baking, as it is a good way to practise reading recipes, measuring ingredients, and making food quite simply. Baking is popular in English-speaking countries. They might start by making simple cakes or biscuits / cookies. They may then share them with family or friends, or even sell them to raise money for their school or charity.

At a book club, members often take turns to choose a book for everyone to read. The member who chooses a book might give some information about the book and author. The club might meet every few weeks or once a month to discuss the book and what they think about it. It is a good idea for members to keep notes while they are reading, so they can remember what to talk about!

Suggested Answers

Answers will vary.

2a

Challenge

Teaching Tip

With books closed, write or show the incomplete email in 2a on the board without giving students the expressions in the box. Ask students to brainstorm as many possible answers to complete it as they can and write them on the board. Then let students open their books and find the correct answers to fill in the gaps. How close were their answers?

Language Tip	The Reply Email Structure state the purpose → state your interest/ability → express what you want to learn in the club → confirm if you can join the club or not → farewell Farewell Emails are usually finished with a farewell line or "sign off", either formal or informal depending on the receiver and content of the email. Common informal expressions include "Yours", and "Best" which is a short version of "Best Regards", "Best Wishes", or "All the best". More formal farewell expressions might be "Yours sincerely" or "Yours respectfully". This is followed by the sender's name.
Suggested Answers	I'm really interested in; I love; I can; I can't; I'd love to; Can I

2b **Checklist for Writing the Email** Help students by providing a checklist for their application email: Include your name and any other relevant information. **Teaching Tip** Express your interest in joining the club. Explain why you want to join the club, giving at least two good reasons. Ask any questions you might have about the club to prompt a response. Write a friendly farewell line. Dear Jenny, My name is Wang Yan. I'm really interested in joining your nature club! I want to join the club because I love being in nature. I like to go for walks in the countryside and Sample look at the trees and plants, listen to the birds, and look for different animal tracks. I Writing would love to learn more about nature. I think your club is the best place for that! I look forward to hearing from you. Best regards, Wang Yan

Project

Robotics Clubs

Culture Note

Robotics is the design, construction, operation, and application of robots, so robotics clubs cover all these different aspects. Members learn how to code and program robots to control them, as well as learn the parts and mechanisms that are used to build them.

Language Tip	Useful Expressions • Are you interested in? • Are you good at / with? • Can you? • Would you like to? • Are you busy after school? • Are you free in July? • Why not?
Sample Poster	Are you interested in science? Can you work well with your hands? Can you think up new ideas and work as a team? Why not try the Robotics Club? If you can come at lunchtime on Tuesdays, we will love to meet you! Email ma.li8@happyschool.com for more details.

3c

Abilities vs Interests

Language Tip

Remind students that the club organizer may do an interview to get an idea of the abilities the applicants have so that they can group them considering their abilities. Sometimes you can still join if you can't do the skill in the club, such as the juggling club. You just need to be interested in learning. It depends on what kind of club it is.

Value Statement: Our interests make us interesting.

1	
Language Tip	Develop Your Interests Our "interests" are the things that interest us, for example our hobbies and the things we like to do or read about. Something is "interesting" if it attracts our attention for being special, exciting, or unusual to us. Of course, what one person finds interesting may be very different to what another finds interesting! But the statement suggests that, by exploring and developing our interests, especially by joining clubs with likeminded people with the same interests, we will become more interesting people, and have more interesting lives.
Culture Note	Things You Can Get from a Club Perhaps the best thing we can get from clubs, as well as developing new knowledge and skills, is to make friends with people with similar interests who we may not have the chance to meet otherwise.

Optional Activity: Talking Circle

Purpose	Practise use of "can" for ability.
Material required	None.

Procedure

1. Have students stand (or sit if possible) in a large circle with the teacher in the centre. Elicit the modal verb "can" by asking students which verb we use to express ability.

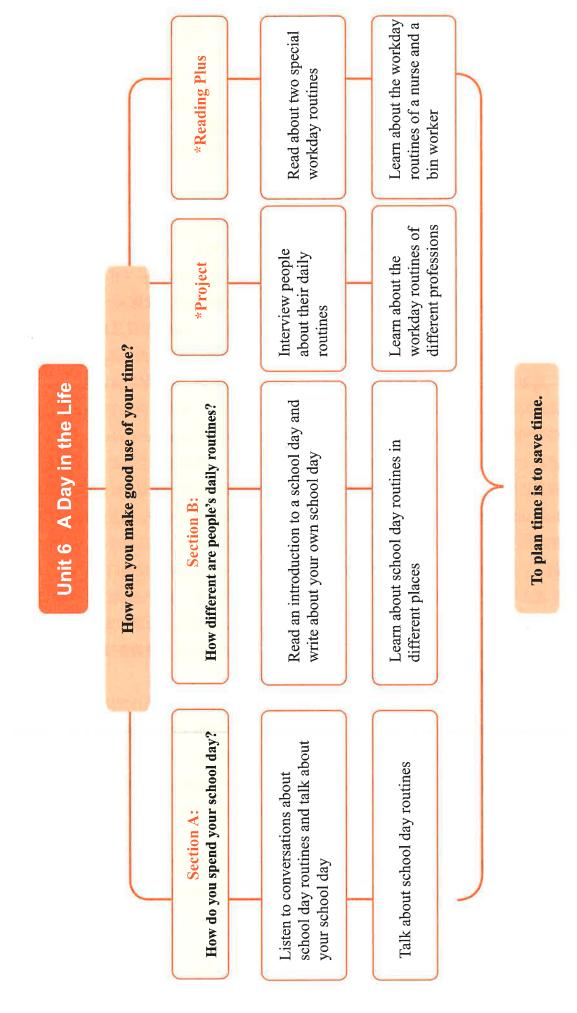
- 2. Moving around the circle, ask each student a question about an ability, e.g. "Can you swim?" Have a list of abilities to help you. Use these examples or your own: swim, speak French, juggle, paint, cook, ride a horse, ride a bike, draw, play chess, sing, knit, etc.
- 3. When the first student has replied to your question, they must turn to the student on their right and ask the same question. That student answers and then turns again to the right, and the question passes like this around the circle. The last student in the circle asks the question back to the teacher. Continue by asking another question to the student to the left of the first student, e.g. "Can you speak French?" Do not ask the questions too quickly, giving the first student a chance to ask the first question and be ready for the second.
- 4. This is a fun and noisy activity and a good ice breaker. This will get students to talk to each other and also challenge them to speak and listen while there are many other voices speaking at the same time.
- 5. When finished, have students take turns to recall abilities that the other student and the teacher have. For example, "Li Huan can skip and paint, but she can't swim!"

*Reading Plus

1	
	About the Vlog
	A "vlog" is short for "video blog", a "blog" being an online page or site where
-	someone posts regularly about topics or events of interest. A "vlogger" is someone
Languaga Tin	who makes vlogs. Alice is the vlogger and is the speaker in the video. She introduces
Language Tip	her drama club.
	When Alice says, "Check out this photo! Mmm Yummy!", she is showing a photo
to the video camera. When	to the video camera. When she says, "Here's a clip from our last show. That's me with
	the blonde hair! I look cute, don't I?", she has inserted that clip in her video.
Answers	1. T 2. NG 3. T 4. F 5. F

4	
	1. Alice really likes her drama club. Although it can be hard, she always has a good
Suggested	time.
Answers	2. I would like to join a drama club, because I love films and drama, and I'd like to
	become more confident speaking in front of other people.

UNIT 6 A DAY IN THE LIFE



一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元围绕"生活日常"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"丰 富、充实、积极向上的生活""多彩、安全、有意义的学校生活""自我认识,自我管理,自我提升" 子主题,以及"人与社会"主题范畴中的"公共秩序"密切相关。本单元不仅聚焦国内学生的日常作 息,同时展示了一个芬兰初中生的上学日的作息,还涉及不同职业的人在工作日的作息安排。通过本 单元的学习,学生将掌握如何正确表达时间,以及如何准确描述自己或他人一天的日程安排。同时, 学生也将与同伴谈论和比较上学日与周末日程安排的异同,一方面积极反思自己的日程安排的合理 性,以便更好地规划自己的时间,养成健康的学习和生活习惯;另一方面了解其他国家同龄人的日常 作息,感知不同文化背景下人们的生活习惯和生活理念,增强跨文化理解和沟通能力。

本单元的大问题 "How can you make good use of your time?" 体现了鼓励学生充分利用时间, 学会 时间管理的价值引导。Section A的引导性问题是 "How do you spend your school day?",该部分从学 生熟悉的上学日切入,让学生听读几个初中生之间的对话,了解他们上学日的日程安排,进而引导学 生梳理自己的上学日日程,并与同学进行交流,互相借鉴更好的时间管理方法。Section B在引导性问 题"How different are people's daily routines?"的引领下,拓宽学生视野,通过介绍一名芬兰中学生星 期二的时间安排,让学生了解不同国家、不同文化背景下同龄人的日常作息情况。教材这样设计有两 个目的:一是介绍外国中学生的作息能够引起学生的情感和心理共鸣,使他们自觉地进行中外文化比 较;二是由于芬兰是地处北极圈的国家,通常有极昼或极夜现象,而极昼或极夜现象会影响人们的日 常生活和活动时间安排,这与世界上大多数其他国家不同。这些不同会增加课文的趣味性和可读性, 拓展学生的文化视野,让他们自然而然地对比异同,促使他们以更客观的态度看待自己的日程安排, 提升时间的利用效率,同时也能正视世界的多元与丰富。

本单元项目活动让学生采访不同职业的工作者,了解他们工作日的日程安排,并完成相关报告。 拓展阅读板块分别介绍了护士和环卫工人两种不同职业工作者的工作日程和生活安排。选择环卫工人 和护士这两个职业,主要是帮助学生认识这两种职业在日常工作时间安排上与大多数职业的不同,比 如护士通常要上夜班,而环卫工人则要早起,当大家还睡梦中的时候,他们已经开始工作了。无论是 护士还是环卫工人,他们都为了人们共同的幸福生活辛苦劳作,这种默默奉献的精神值得人们学习和 尊重。

综上所述,本单元通过呈现不同国家学生的日程安排以及不同职业工作者的生活日常,让学生深 刻认识到在日常生活中应当树立良好的时间观念,珍惜每分每秒,养成健康的作息习惯和积极的生活 态度,收获幸福的人生。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- ➤ 准确描述自己的上学日和周末的日常安排,正确使用 what、what time 和 when 引导的 特殊疑问句询问时间和活动安排,并能灵活使用有关时间点的表达用语展开交流;
- 听辨并准确认读/s/与/z/、/ʃ/与/ʒ/、/tʃ/与/dʒ/、/θ/与/δ/这四组音素,正确读出含有这些音素的常见词汇;能够识别句子中需要重读的单词,能在连贯的语流中正确把握重音变化,突出叙事重点;
- ➢ 将对话文本或个人自述中的日常活动信息整理成日程表;
- ▶ 了解不同国家、地区和文化背景下人们的日常作息安排和学习、生活方式;
- ▶ 自主探究如何合理安排自己的时间,设计属于自己的日程表,学会自我管理,培养良好的生活作息习惯。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

How can you make good use of your time?

🔘 内容分析

本单元的标题是A Day in the Life,即"生命中的一天"。开篇页的主题图展示了清晨一群学生迎着朝阳,面带微笑,边与同学们打招呼边走进校园的场景。"一日之计在于晨",这一熟悉的场景也预示了有规律的校园生活的开始。Look and share 部分的第一个问题要求学生观察主题图,讨论相关的校园日常生活;第二、第三个问题则要求学生联系自身,讨论自己每日的学习与生活,自然导人本单元的主题学习。

开篇页呈现了本单元的大问题 "How can you make good use of your time?",目的是引导学生思考时间管理、自我管理的方法和意义,探究本单元的主题意义。开篇页还列举了本单元的主要学习内容和目标,包括学会用英语表达时间,正确使用 what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句询问人们的日常作息,了解不同人的日程安排,探究如何高效利用时间。

学习目标

- ኲ 能够根据单元标题和主题图预测本单元的主要学习内容。
- 能够识别并简要描述主题图展示的校园场景。
- ▶ 能够简单列举和描述每日的校园日常活动。
- 能够在教师的引导下理解本单元需要学习和掌握的重要内容。

廖教学建议

- 1. 教师用课件呈现单元标题和单元主题图,提出问题 "Look at the title and the photo. What do you think this unit is about?",鼓励学生大胆预测本单元可能谈论的主题内容。
- 2.学生仔细观察主题图,教师先引导学生结合实际,用自己的语言描述主题图,再组织学生讨论 Look and share 部分的三个问题。教师可将第二、第三个问题细化成小问题,请个别学生回答,以便自然过渡到单元主题的讨论中。例如:
 - Where are the students? (At the entrance of a school.)
 - What time do you think it is? (Early in the morning.)
 - What are they doing? (They are arriving at school and greeting each other.)
 - How do you think they are feeling? (They are feeling happy.)
- 3. 学生阅读本单元的大问题和学习内容导引,教师适当解释或说明其中的生词,尤其是 routine 和 tell the time 的意义,确保学生理解本单元的主要学习内容。

Section A

How do you spend your school day?



② 内容分析

文本分析:本单元听力文本包含两个小对话,生动地展现了来自英国的学生Peter在中国的初中生活日常。第一个对话发生在Peter家里,早晨Peter的妈妈叫他起床,提醒他今天要做值日,于是Peter立刻起床并匆忙洗漱。由于时间紧迫,对话中双方使用的句式都比较精练,特别是Peter妈妈的语言,多用祈使句,如"Get up!""Quickly!""Take it to school.""Be safe."等,符合当时的情景,营造出早起上学的紧张气氛。第二个对话发生在校园里,Peter来到学校做值日,遇到了同样早到的同学Han Lin,两人互相询问早到的原因,同时谈到了各自的日常作息习惯。这两个对话包含了一系列有

关日常活动的动词短语,如 get up、get dressed、brush my teeth、do some reading、have breakfast、take a shower等,同时还呈现了有关时间的表达,如a quarter past six、only seven o'clock、half past six等。 只要根据这些时间点梳理相关的活动细节,学生就可以整理出 Peter 早上的作息规律。

除了丰富的内容信息和语言表达,这两个对话所隐含的文化信息也值得学生关注。例如:"做值 日"是具有中国特色的校园文化现象, Peter 忘记做值日也许是因为他以前的学校没有这个要求。再 如: Peter提到他一般会在早上洗澡,而Han Lin和大部分中国学生一样更习惯晚上洗澡,这一细节也 反映了生活在不同国家或地域的人们的生活习惯差异。另外, Han Lin 在早上黄金时间阅读的好习惯 也能给学生一些启发,让他们学会更好地管理自己的时间,养成良好的生活和学习习惯。

活动设计: 活动 la-le是一个完整的听说任务链。活动 la是听前环节,主要让学生学习与时间 相关的语言表达,为后续的听力活动作准备。该活动提供了四张钟表图,呈现了四个具体时刻的语言 表达。这里包含两种常见的时间表达法,即直接表达法和间接表达法。直接表达法是直接用数字表 述,而间接表达法则需要使用to和past。活动1b和1c是听力理解环节。活动1b与Conversation1相关, 要求学生通过听了解Peter早上起床后的活动。该活动提供了一些与日常活动相关的动词短语,供学 生勾选,以降低听力活动的难度。活动1c是针对Conversation 2的听力理解活动。该活动主要让学生 关注 Peter 和 Han Lin 早到校的原因,训练他们对关键信息的获取能力。活动 1d 聚焦两个对话中的时间 表达,要求学生通过听获取与日常活动对应的时间点,巩固前面所学的时间表达法,培养学生对时间 表达的敏感度。活动 le 是听后口语输出活动,此处呈现了由 when 和 what time 引导的特殊疑问句,供 学生互相询问早晨的日常活动,正确使用时间表达法。

学习目标

- 📂 能够正确识别含有时针和分针的钟表图显示的具体时刻,并能用英语正确描述这些 时刻。
- 📂 能够通过听获取有关生活作息的细节信息,包括具体的日常活动以及这些活动的具
- 📂 能够使用what time和when引导的特殊疑问句与同伴相互询问晨间作息,并能使用 正确的时间表达法描述具体时间。
- ▶ 能够结合听力语境中人物的作息习惯来对比和反思自己的日常作息习惯。

教学建议

1. 听前准备

(1)介绍日常作息,呈现时间表达。教师可通过介绍自己的日常作息来导入话题,用课件展示各 种活动(如起床、刷牙、吃早餐、骑车上班、洗澡等)和相关的时间表达(包括带有a quarter、to和 past 的时间表达), 并用完整的句子来讲述。例如:

Activity	Time	Description
get up	10 1 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2	Every morning, I get up at six. Every morning, I get up at six o'clock.
have breakfast	10 1 12 1 2 1 8 7 6 8 4	At six fifteen, I have breakfast at home. At a quarter past six, I have breakfast at home.

教学提示: 教师用自己的作息习惯作为示例或者引子,可以让学生更多地了解教师的情况,拉近师生的心理距离。因而,在教学导入时,教师讲述自身的故事往往会有比较好的效果。

(2)观察并学习时间表达。教师引导学生观察上一步骤列出的日常活动以及不同的时间表达,鼓励他们说出每句话的意思,并要求他们关注具体时刻的表述。学生从教师的日程中找出这些时刻的表述,然后两人一组讨论并总结两种时间表达法的特点及规则。讨论完毕,师生共同总结时间表达的规律。以下表格供参考:

规律	示例	
1. 所有时刻都可直接用数字表述,即"小时+分钟"。	6:10 six ten 8:30 eight thirty	
1. 別有的列仰可且按用数于农业,即一万时。	2:40 two forty	
2. 若所表述的时间在半小时之内,还可用"分钟+	6:10 ten past six 4:20 twenty past four	
past +小时"来表述。	10:25 twenty–five past ten	
3.若所表述的时间超过半小时,还可以用"(相差	10:35 twenty–five to eleven	
的)分钟 + to +(下一) 小时"表述。	9:49 eleven to ten 5:50 ten to six	
4. 若所表述的时间恰好为半小时,可以用"half+	11:30 half past eleven	
past + 小时"表述。	2:30 half past two	

- (3)完成图文匹配。学生自主阅读活动 la的内容,将时间表达与钟表图进行匹配。师生核对答案。
- (4)看钟表报时间。课前,教师准备一个时钟模型或真实的钟表。课堂上,教师邀请一位学生 拨弄时针和分针位置,呈现不同的时间,其他学生用多种时间表达法说出钟表上显示的时间,反复操 练,直至熟练掌握时间表达法。

2. 听力理解

(1)呈现晨间活动短语。教师可用课件集中呈现前面步骤所谈及的各种日常活动短语,让学生

找出属于自己的晨间活动,同时鼓励他们说出更多短语,如wash my face、get dressed、make the bed、 take out the rubbish 等。

- (2) 听录音, 完成活动 1b和 1c。学生先阅读活动 1b和 1c的内容, 明确活动要求和所给选项的意 思。教师播放录音,学生自主完成活动1b和1c。师生核对答案。在核对活动1c的答案时,教师可提 出问题让学生思考和讨论:
 - What does "on duty" mean?
 - What do you usually do before class?
 - Do you think Han Lin makes good use of his time?
- (3)明确活动1d要求,作好听前铺垫。学生阅读活动1d的活动要求和五个不完整的句子,教师 启发学生思考需要填写的内容是什么。当学生说出要填写具体时刻时,教师可提醒学生在具体时刻前 一般使用介词at,因此在听录音时,需要特别认真倾听介词at之后的内容。
- (4) 听录音,记录日常活动的时间。教师播放两个对话的录音,学生边听边记录,自主完成活动 1d。如有必要,教师也可重复播放关键句子或在关键句后暂停几秒,以便学生完整记录信息,同时也 降低学生听的焦虑。
 - (5)核对活动1d答案。教师再次播放录音,学生先两人一组核对答案,然后全班核对答案。
 - (6)分析对话细节。教师可针对听力文本中的一些细节提出问题,供学生进行小组讨论。例如:
 - Why can't Peter take a shower and have breakfast at home this morning?
 - How does Peter feel this morning?
 - How does Han Lin feel this morning?
 - When do you usually take a shower? In the morning or at night? Why?
 - 3. 听后活动
- (1) 结合自身实际列举晨间活动。教师提出问题 "How do you spend your morning?", 并提供表 格让学生自主列出自己的晨间活动以及具体的时间。例如:

My Daily Routine				
	get up	Time:		
	brush my teeth, wash my face	Time:		
Morning	have breakfast	Time:		
	get dressed	Time:		
	go to school	Time:		

学生在填写晨间活动日程表时,教师可要求他们写出多种时间表达。教师巡视课堂,获取反馈并 适时提供指导。

(2)演练问与答。学生阅读活动1e的指示语,明确活动要求。然后,学生两人一组利用上一步骤 完成的晨间活动日程表展开问答。如果学生口语表达能力较强,教师也可鼓励学生增加别的问题,以 丰富对话内容。

(3) 小组对话展示。教师请几个小组在课堂上展示他们的对话,并给予适当评价。

Pronunciation

内容分析

本单元的语音板块包含两个活动。活动1聚焦/s/与/z/、/ʃ/与/ʒ/、/tʃ/与/dʒ/、/θ/与/δ/这四组辅音 音素的发音,主要通过听读练习训练学生准确地发这四组音,并帮助学生初步建立字母、字母组合和 四组辅音音素的对应关系。活动2选取了活动2a的对话文本前四句,让学生通过听录音感受语流中单 词音节的轻重变化,通过观察文中标注重音的单词大致了解单词重读的规律,并尝试在口头交流中灵 活运用这一朗读技巧。

🔱 语音知识

关于句子重音:本册书第三单元已介绍了单词重音的知识。一般来说,每个单词在单独读的时 候,至少有一个音节需要重读,但在连贯的语流中,只有一部分单词是重读的,其余的单词不重读, 这种现象叫句子重音。造成句子重音的主要因素有两个:一是并非所有的词在句子中都有同等的重要 性,一般来说,动词、名词、形容词等表示实际意义的词要重读;二是英语是一种节奏性较强的语 言,英语句子的节奏主要通过轻重音节的交替出现来体现。如在"I 'wandered 'lonely as a 'cloud."这个 句子中, 轻重音节交替形成节奏。

需要注意的是, 重读和非重读是相对而言的。在开展语音练习时, 需要重读的单词应读得更响 亮、更清晰,用时更长。另外,句子重读的规则并非一成不变。除了上面提到的一般规则,当说话人 想强调句子中的某个细节时,例如想要反驳或纠正对方某个观点,或者强调句中细节信息对比时,可 以加重关于该细节的单词读音。

学习目标

- 📂 能够听辨并正确读出四组辅音音素/s/与/z/、/ʃ/与/ʒ/、/tʃ/与/dʒ/、/θ/与/ð/以及含有 这四组辅音音素的单词。
- ≽ 能够分辨句子的重音,并能根据重读规则正确朗读句子或对话,把握句子或对话的 节奏。



- 1.教师播放活动1的录音,学生边听边跟读,同时注意观察四组音素所对应的常见字母及字母组 合,建立发音与字母及字母组合的对应关系。
 - 2. 教师演示四组音素的发音口型及要领,并用熟悉的例词引导学生跟读模仿,形成肌肉记忆。 以下是这些音素的发音要领,供教师参考。

音素	发音要领
/s/(清辅音)	● 舌尖抵住下齿,舌端靠近上齿龈,气流从舌端和齿龈间通过,摩擦成音。
/z/(浊辅音)	● 做出发/s/的姿势,用力振动声带,发出的就是/z/。
/ʃ/(清辅音)	● 舌前部抬起到上齿龈后部,舌身隆起靠近硬腭,形成狭长通道,气流从这
	个通道通过,产生摩擦。
/ʒ/(浊辅音)	● 做出发/ʃ/的姿势,用力振动声带,发出的就是/ʒ/。
/tʃ/(清辅音)	● 先爆破后产生摩擦。舌前部抬起到上齿龈后部,阻挡住气流。然后使气流
	冲破阻碍,从舌尖和上颚的缝隙通过,产出摩擦。
/dʒ/(浊辅音)	● 做出发/tʃ/的姿势,用力振动声带,发出的就是/dʒ/。
/θ/(清辅音)	• 舌尖放于上下齿之间,气流从舌齿间缝隙通过,摩擦成音。
/ð/(浊辅音)	做出发/θ/的姿势,用力振动声带,发出的就是/δ/。

教学提示: 在学习这些辅音发音时,教师需要提醒学生注意以下几点。

- (1) 不要把/z/发成汉语里的"资"音,正确的做法是发/z/音时,上下齿靠拢,但不能咬住。
- (2)破擦音/tʃ/和/dʒ/与摩擦音/ʃ/和/ʒ/的气流产生摩擦的位置一样,但不同的是,发破擦音/tʃ/和 /dʒ/时, 先要做出爆破动作, 然后在硬腭和齿龈后部的位置让气流通过, 产生摩擦。
- (3)/θ/和/δ/对中国学生而言有一定难度,掌握其正确的发音方式需要多加练习。教师可让学 生在家拿一个小镜子观察自己的口型,发这两个音时,应当把舌尖伸到两齿之间,能从镜子里能看 到自己的舌尖, 那么发音就是正确的。
- 3. 教师可将含有这些辅音的其他已学词汇(可参考教材附录中的小学词汇表)呈现在课件或学案 中,要求学生两人一组尝试读出这些词汇,并根据画线部分的辅音字母读音进行分类。学生完成词汇 分类后,师生核对答案。核对答案时,可让小组中一人读出含有清辅音的单词,另一人读出含有浊辅 音的单词。
- 4. 教师带领学生大声朗读上述两个步骤呈现的全部例词,然后当堂检测学生对这几组辅音的掌握 情况。教师依次读出以下每组单词,学生根据听到的发音补全单词。随后师生核对答案。

1oon	_00		5. mou	wi	
2. ri_e	ni_e		6ower	wat	_
3. thi_	the		7oin	oose	
4ip	eep		8air	are	
5ink	ose		9ure	_rue	
参考答案:					
1. soon, zoo	2. rise, nice	3. this, th	iese	4. chip, sheep	5. think, those
6. mouth, with	7. shower, watch	8. join, c	hoose	9. chair, share	10. sure, true

活动り

1. 教师播放活动2的录音,让学生边听边感受句子重音。教师可通过课件呈现句子中的重读单词和非重读单词。例如:

Stressed words (重读单词): Hi, Lu Jiaqi, school, reporter ...

Unstressed words (非重读单词): a, your, so, do, you ...

教师可让学生尝试说出句子中重读单词和非重读单词的规律,然后教师简要总结:一般来说,传 达重要信息的实词需要重读,如名词、动词、形容词、副词等;而起辅助作用的语法功能词一般不用 重读,如冠词、助动词、人称代词、介词等。

- 2. 教师再次播放活动2的录音, 学生边听边跟读。
- 3. 教师用课件或学案呈现 Section A 中的听力文本, 让学生尝试标出句子重音, 然后两人一组练习对话。
 - 4. 教师逐句播放活动1b-1d的听力录音, 师生核对重音标注的单词, 通过跟读感受句子重音。



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的对话文本展现了学生记者 Lu Jiaqi 在校园里进行随机采访的情境:她遇到了学生 Tom,于是询问他一天的时间安排。对话的过程反映了 Lu Jiaqi 作为校园记者的业务能力。例如:作为开场白,Lu Jiaqi 主动向被采访者 Tom打招呼,并介绍自己的名字和身份,然后才询问被访者的姓名,这一表现符合采访场合的基本礼仪。从采访过程可以看出,Lu Jiaqi 还准备了采访提纲,用"What time do you usually get up?""When do you go home?""What do you do after that?""When do you usually go to bed?"这一系列问题来推进话题。同时,她会适时追问("And then?"),也会对被采访人的回答给予反馈,例如用"That's early!"来回应 Tom关于就寝时间的回答,由此引出 Tom进一步的解释。校园采访这一语境的创设,不仅使得本单元的目标结构(what time和 when 引导的特殊疑问句)能够真实自然地在对话文本中呈现,还让学生真切地感受和体会到采访过程中应使用的语言、基本礼

仪和交际策略,这将有利于学生未来在真实情境中实现迁移使用,完成真实任务。

活动设计: 活动2a-2e是包含看、听、读、说四项技能训练的任务链。活动2a让学生通过听获 取与Tom的日常活动相关的时间信息,并用适当的信息填空以完成对话。活动2b是阅读理解活动, 三个问题都着力于培养学生的思维和表达能力,学生需要对所获得的信息进行加工后才能回答。第一 题要求学生整体理解对话文本并概括出内容大意。第二题需要学生基于文中提及的两个不同时间点通 过简单的计算得到答案。第三题则需要学生用自己的话来转述或解释Tom所说谚语的思想内涵。活动 2c要求学生梳理 Tom 一天的活动与时间安排,并以表格的形式呈现,目的是培养学生结构化思维的能 力。活动2d是基于对话文本的角色扮演活动,学生需要运用前面语音板块所学的朗读技巧,正确区分 句子重音,在模仿的基础上做到发音和语调正确、重弱读得当、节奏清晰自然。活动2e是口头输出活 动。该活动列举了各种与日常活动相关的动词短语,作为口语输出的语言支架,供学生对话时使用。 此活动分为两个步骤:第一步,学生利用所给的对话模板询问同伴一天的时间安排,记录相关信息。 第二步,学生将收集的同伴的日常活动及时间信息整理成报告,以第三人称的口吻转述。这一活动既 能让学生灵活运用前面所学语言进行表达,又能帮助学生巩固一般现在时动词第三人称单数形式的用 法,同时还加强了学生口语和书面表达能力的培养。

学习目标

- 能够根据图片所展现的场景及人物细节对人物关系及交际情境进行合理预测。
- 能够通过听读对话概括对话的大意, 获取被采访人的日常作息, 并能整理成时间表。
- 能够分辨 what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句在功能和意义上的区别。
- 能够在朗读和表演对话时合理把握句子重音,做到强弱得当,语言流畅自然。
- 能够与同伴互相询问日常作息时间,并结合自身实际情况描述一天的日常活动。

教学建议

1. 听力理解

- (1)看图预测。教师用课件呈现2a中的图片,鼓励学生针对图中场景和人物进行预测。教师可提 出以下问题启发学生思考:
 - Where are the two students?
 - When do you think this conversation happens?
 - What is their relationship? Are they friends or strangers?
 - What is in the girl's hand? What is she doing?
 - What do you think the boy is doing?

如果学生猜出图中的女孩是校园小记者,教师可呈现生词reporter。同时,教师还可进一步提问 "Imagine you are a school reporter and you want to know about students' daily life. What questions will you ask?", 启发学生回想前面听说活动中学过的疑问句,并仿造核心句式说出更多特殊疑问句,如:

- What time do you usually get up?
- When do you go to school?

- When do you have breakfast?
- What do you do after you go home?

教学提示: 教材中的插图不仅具有美化版面的功能,而且具有一定的教学功能。插图往往是对文本内容的说明或者是文本语境的提示。所以,在教学对话或课文时,引导学生解读插图是十分必要的,这有利于他们更好地理解课文和对话内容。

(2) 听录音,完成2a对话。教师播放录音,学生补全2a对话。师生核对答案后,教师可请两个学生分角色朗读完整的对话。

2. 阅读理解

- (1)归纳对话大意,理解内容细节。学生阅读活动2b的三个问题,教师可提供一些回答句式,以降低问题的难度,使学生能更自信地回答问题。例如:
 - What does Lu Jiaqi ask Tom about?
 She asks Tom about his ______.

 How long does Tom study at school?
 Tom studies at school for ______ hours.

 Why does Tom go to bed early?
 Because he needs to ______.
 Because it is good to ______.

学生在回答这些问题时,教师应适时呈现相关生词,如around、saying、rise、stay等,引导学生在语境中理解这些生词的意思,确保学生理解对话内容。

- (2)整理 Tom 的日常作息。学生再次阅读对话, 教师引导学生边读边在有关日常活动的短语下面画线, 同时圈出相应的时间, 然后根据所标记的信息完成2c的表格。
- (3)核对活动2c的答案。学生完成表格后,两人一组以问答的形式核对答案。教师可提醒学生阅读对话旁的小贴士,并简单说明what time和when在引导特殊疑问句时用法上的细微区别。此外,教师还要提醒学生注意第三人称单数作主语时问句和答句中动词的变化,以及正确的时间表达法。例如:
 - S1: What time does Tom usually get up?
 - S2: He gets up at six forty-five. / He gets up at a quarter to seven.

学生问答完毕,教师可请几个小组展示回答,核对表中余下的信息。

3. 语言操练

- (1)标记句子重音。播放录音前,学生结合之前所学的句子重音的规律,再次阅读2a对话,标记需要重读的词汇。
- (2) 听录音, 跟读对话, 确认句子重音。教师用课件呈现带有句子重音标记的完整对话文本, 播放对话录音, 学生边听边跟读, 同时核对自己的重音标记是否正确。

(3)分角色朗读对话。教师先将全班学生分成两个大组,男生扮演Tom,女生扮演Lu Jiaqi,要求学生大声朗读对话,正确把握句子重音和语气语调。

4. 角色扮演

- (1)学生两人一组基于2a的对话进行角色扮演,完成活动2d。教师可鼓励学生在对话时使用剧情道具或设计一些动作以体现人物的个性。
 - (2) 教师请几组学生在课堂上表演对话,并根据他们的表现给予相应评价。

5. 口语表达

教师可根据学生的实际语言水平结合活动2e的要求进行分层教学设计。以下活动形式供教师参考。

(1)模拟采访。教师可采取挖空的形式,删去2a对话中的人物名字、部分日常活动以及时间信息,同时呈现2e所提供的动词短语,然后让学生两人一组结合自己的实际情况创编对话。最后,学生根据所记录的信息完成同伴的日常作息汇报。例如:

get up	have breakfast	go to school	have class	
play sport	have lunch	go home	do homework	
brush my teeth	have dinner	take a shower	go to bed	
S1: Hi! I'm, a	school reporter. What	t's your name?		
S2:				
S1: So, what t	ime do you usually ge	et up?		
S2: At				
S1: And then?				
S2: I have breakfast at about	Then I	go to school at		
S1: When do you?				
S2: Around				
S1: What do you do after that?				
S2: Sometimes I I Then I				
S1: When do you usually?				
S2: At				

(2)模拟集体采访。学生四人 组开展"答记者问"式的互动活动:一名学生扮演记者, 依次采访组内其他三位学生上学日的日常作息(school day routine), 采访的内容可以参照2e的提示。一位学生被采访时, 其他两位学生也需要记录被采访人的日常作息。最后, 每组选出本组时间管理小达人, 同时根据该时间管理小达人的日常作息整理出报告, 为课堂汇报作准备。

🚨 拓展活动1: 撰写采访报告

教师可根据教材对话文本创设情境,引导学生转述文本内容,训练学生的语言组织能力,完成书面输出任务。教师可提供这样的写作任务:假如你是学校新闻小记者 Lu Jiaqi,请你根据你的采访结果写一段话,介绍 Tom 一天的日常活动。教师可提供开头,如"Today I interviewed Tom about his daily

🤼 拓展活动2: 制作班级的School Day Routine Vlog

教师将全班分成五几大组,每组可选择一个确切的时段作为班级日常活动展示的主要内容,如: 从起床到早读铃声响起、从早读到上午的课程结束、午间时光、下午的课程与活动、从离开学校到晚 上就寝。各组成员需要集思广益,讨论并列出需要展示的日常活动画面、时间点或时间段,撰写视频 脚本,选择拍摄场地和参与拍摄人员,组织拍摄,安排后期剪辑,增加配音配乐等。各组完成视频制 作后,可利用校园文化节或家长会进行展示,让所有学生、家长以及教师一同欣赏。

教学提示: 班级的日程表基本是统一的,日程拍摄是班级文化外显的有趣形式。教师可要求每位学 生至少有一句话的个人独白, 可以鼓励学生勇敢表达, 以此来培养学生学习英语的自信心。关于大 课间和课后活动的拍摄,教师可让学生利用碎片化的时间进行,引导学生加强时间管理,学会劳逸 结合。

Grammar Focus

🤘 内容分析

本单元的语法板块共有四个活动。活动3a列出了五组句子,其中问句的疑问词需要学生在what、 what time、when之间进行选择。这五组句子集中呈现了本单元的核心语法项目:由 what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句及其回答,以及时间表达法。活动3b将 what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句与时间 表达法相结合,通过句子层面的练习帮助学生巩固并掌握这两个句式。活动3c的短文填空属于语篇层 面的综合性练习。短文描述了Sam丰富的周末安排,既包括学习、家务劳动,以及与家人、朋友的相 聚,还包括户外体育活动,由此也将话题从上学日的作息拓展到周末作息。短文填空练习能够训练学 生在复杂语境中运用一般现在时的能力,同时短文本身也提供了语言输入,呈现了一些与日常活动相 关的动词短语和时间表达,这为后续活动3d的口语输出活动作铺垫。活动3d属于开放性的口头表达 活动,要求学生运用本单元所学的核心句式与同伴交流周末的日常作息。此活动不仅给学生提供了语 言支架,还让他们利用表格梳理自己的时间安排,以便在表达时能够更加准确和有条理。另外,让学 牛交流自己的周末作息前先阅读Sam的介绍,目的是让学生比较Sam与自己的周末活动安排,从而得 到启发, 并学会合理安排周末日程, 提升时间管理能力。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够归纳总结出 what、what time、when 引导的特殊疑问句所询问的内容及其意义。
- 能够区分what time和when引导的特殊疑问句的功能和用法上的差异,并能正确运用这些句式询问他人的日程安排,且能准确回答。
- ▶ 能够运用本单元所学的核心语法结构描述自己的周末日程,学会合理安排周末的时间,做到劳逸结合。

囫 教学建议

1. 语法探究

(1) 梳理总结由 what、what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句的用法。教师可利用学案引导学生从本单元已学的部分找出所有 what、what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句及其答语。以下表格供参考:

特殊疑问句引导词	例句	答语
What: 询问事物		
What time: 询问具体时刻		
When: 询问具体时刻或时间段, 答语中可包含笼统时间,如 on Monday afternoons		

然后, 教师可提出以下问题供学生思考并回答:

- what time 和 when 都可以用于询问时间,它们询问的时间有什么不同?
- what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句的回答有什么不同?
- 常用来表示时间的介词有哪些? 它们的用法有什么不同?
- what 引导的问句可用来询问什么?

学生找出所有句子后,两人一组讨论上述问题。教师可先请几个小组代表发表看法,然后与学生 共同总结本单元核心语法结构的用法:

- what time 的询问时间范围较窄,只限于具体时刻,而 when 既可以询问具体时刻,也可以询问时间段。
 - 🍨 what time 引导的特殊疑问句的答语只能是某个具体时刻,而 when 引导的特殊疑问句的答语既

可以是某个具体时刻, 也可以是某一段时间。

- 表示时间的介词有 at、in、on等,at后接具体时刻,in后可接一天中的某个时间段,on后可接具体某一天。
 - what问句可用来询问事物。
- (2)完成活动3a。学生阅读3a的指示语和表中所列句子,在空白处填写合适的疑问词。师生核对答案时,学生应朗读完整的问句和答语,并说明选择该疑问词的原因。

2. 语法练习

- (1)问答练习。学生阅读活动 3b 的指示语和句子,然后两人一组用括号中所给答案开展问答。教师需提醒学生关注主语的单复数与动词的形式,同时要求他们用完整的句子回答问题。
- (2)造句练习。教师引导学生模仿活动3a和3b中的句子围绕一个话题造句,比如询问同伴及其家人的日常活动。以下问句供参考:
 - What time do you get up?

- What time does your father get up?
- When does your mother get up?
- When do you usually have breakfast?
- When do you leave home for school?
- When does your father go to work?

- When ...
- 3. 语言运用
- (1)理解短文内容。学生阅读活动3c的小短文,教师可提出以下问题引导学生获取短文大意和细节信息,如:
 - What's the text about?
 - How many activities are there in the text? What are they?同时,教师可让学生利用上下文推测生词的意义,如restaurant、housework等。
 - (2)完成短文填空。学生独立完成活动3c,随后核对答案。
- (3)制作Sam的周末日程表。教师引导学生将短文中有关Sam的周末活动及相关时间信息整理成日程表。例如:

Sam's weekend			
Weekend activity			
gets up	at 9:00		
makes breakfast for his family			
does his homework		Saturdays	
meets his friends and play football	around 2:00 in the afternoon		
goes to a restaurant	at about 6:30		

Sam's weekend				
helps his mother with housework	on Sunday mornings			
watches a film	in the afternoon			
plays the guitar	after dinner	Sundays		
goes to bed	at about 10:00			

- (4)根据Sam的周末作息创编对话。学生两人一组根据上一步骤完成的Sam的周末作息表,运用本单元核心语法结构创编对话,也可以模仿2a的对话进行校园采访。
- (5)与同伴交流周末安排。学生先参考活动3d的表格完成自己的周末作息表,然后灵活运用本单元所学的核心语法结构,与同伴互相询问并交流各自的周末安排。如果时间允许,教师还可鼓励学生仿照3c的语篇框架,把同伴的周末活动及时间安排整理成口头报告,在课堂上展示。各组可选出本组的最佳周末日程安排,推荐参与班级的"周末之星"竞选。口头汇报参考如下:

Hello, everyone. Let me introduce Lily's weekend routine. On Saturday morning, she gets up at 7:00. Then she helps her mum make breakfast ...

🚨 拓展活动:制作"我的周末作息"手抄报

教师鼓励学生将课堂上描述的周末日常作息制作成带有个人风格的手抄报。教师组织全班学生共 同选出有代表性的优秀手抄报,结集成册或者做成电子相册在班级群展示。

Section B

How different are people's daily routines?



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的阅读文本是来自芬兰首都赫尔辛基的一名中学生Timo Halla的自述,主要介绍上学日的一天时间安排。该文本以放学时间为界限,共分为两段。Timo首先简要介绍了自己的个人信息,然后描述周二这一天的活动轨迹。语篇描述了大量的日常活动及相关时间信息,勾勒出Timo生活的方方面面。从他的日程安排可以看出,这位少年十分自律,且懂得如何合理安排自己的学习和生活。他既能按照学校安排完成学习任务,还能充分利用碎片时间满足自己的兴趣爱好,比如早上听新闻、听音乐,晚饭后与父母阅读等。另外,他还能提前为第二天上学准备好书包,并按时就寝。通过学习该阅读文本,学生不仅能了解其他同龄人的学习生活,学习如何描述自己的日常生活,还可以吸收别人的经验,学会高效地安排时间、规划生活。

该文本蕴含了丰富的文化信息,值得了解和探究。在文章开头,Timo介绍了自己来自北欧国家 芬兰,而 Timo Halla 就是典型的芬兰人的姓名。从他的介绍中,学生可以了解芬兰这一国家的中学课 程安排、班级人数、课后活动等方面的特点。例如,Timo的母语为芬兰语,因此Finnish lesson相当于 我国的语文课。文中提到的 home economics (家政学或家庭经济学)属于芬兰的特色课程。芬兰地处 高纬度,是典型的冰雪国家,冰球是芬兰青少年中广受欢迎的体育项目。从"Now it's December."和 "I usually get home around 4:00. It's already dark outside."这些描述中,学生可以了解地理位置对人们 的作息造成的影响。

活动设计: 该板块包含两条任务链,活动1a—1d是阅读任务链,活动2a—2b是写作任务链。活 动la是读前活动,主要让学生通过观察本页插图,合理推测作者所在地理位置。左图中的少年穿戴 衣物厚重,反映了此时天气较为寒冷,和语篇中所提及的季节吻合;右图所展现的冰球运动,与语篇 中Timo参加课后冰球俱乐部的活动相对应。根据这两点细节,基本可以推测出这名少年来自北半球 高纬度国家。活动 1b 主要关注学生对文章的整体理解,让学生阅读课文并为该文选出最佳标题,这需 要学生用精练的语言概括大意。该活动可以训练学生快速阅读文章获取主旨大意的策略(skimming)。 活动1c通过表格引导学生对文中细节进行结构化处理,梳理Timo这一天的时间安排,以便学生了解 Timo 生活的全貌。活动 1d 主要关注学生对语篇中其他细节信息的理解。最后一个问题是开放性问题, 要求学生根据课文内容进行概括和总结,有理有据地陈述Timo是如何利用好时间的。

写作任务链共分两步。活动2a是写前活动,该活动与前面的阅读语篇紧密相关,让学生先用表 格梳理自己上学日一天的时间安排,为后面的写作活动作铺垫。同时,该活动还要求学生将自己的时 间表与Timo的时间表进行比较,分析两者的不同。这个活动表面是让学生分析"How different is your school day from Timo's?",实际上有更深层次的目的,即让学生通过对比、思考不同时间安排背后的 原因,并进一步思考改善方案和行动计划。探究这一问题,也呼应了本单元的大问题"How can we make good use of your time?"。活动2b提供了一个完整的语篇框架,让学生带着对大问题的思考和理 解,将结构化的信息转化为语篇信息,运用所学话题词汇和单元核心语法结构,描述自己一天的生活。

学习目标

- 📂 能够通过快速阅读获取文本大意,找出最合适的文章标题。
- 📂 能够根据阅读文本所提供的信息梳理出Timo星期二的日常生活轨迹,并制作成结 构化图表。
- ▶ 能够通过阅读了解芬兰中学生的日常作息,尝试进行跨文化比较,理解他们与我国 初中生在课程设置、班级组成、课外活动、早晚作息等多方面的异同。
- 📂 能够深入探讨如何充分利用好时间, 合理规划生活; 能结合自己的实际情况, 运用 本单元所学语言,按照时间顺序描述自己的日常生活作息,并反思自己在时间安排 上的合理性, 树立时间观念。

瘳 教学建议

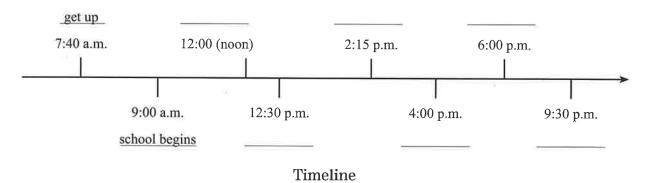
1. 读前准备

观察插图,讨论图中人物。学生浏览活动1b的两幅插图,教师可提出1a中的两个问题让学生讨论,也可将问题细化,引导学生根据图中男孩的相貌、衣着以及喜爱的运动,从而推测他生活的国家或地区。例如:

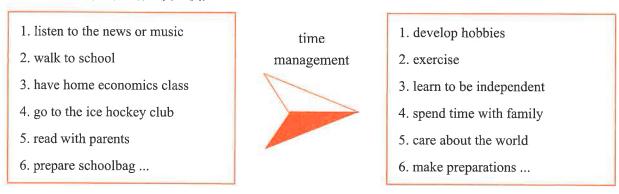
- What do you see in the photos?
- In the first photo, what is the boy wearing?
- In the second photo, what sport is the boy doing?
- Where do you think the boy comes from?

2. 阅读理解

- (1)快速阅读课文,获取内容大意。学生先浏览活动1b的指示语以及三个标题选项,明确活动目的和要求。教师要求学生限时阅读(一分钟),然后让他们根据对文章大意的理解选出合适的标题。师生核对答案时,教师应让学生简单说明另外两个标题不合适的原因。
- (2)完成日程信息图表。学生再次阅读课文,一边读一边圈出文中的时间表达以及对应的日常活动,然后将相关信息填写在1c表格中。除了教材提供的表格外,教师还可采用其他结构化视图帮助学生梳理细节信息,如时间轴或流程图。教师可提供部分信息,学生填余下信息。



(3)获取其他细节信息。学生先浏览活动1d的问题,然后再次阅读课文,找出问题的答案。针对最后一个问题,教师可让学生开展小组讨论,列出Timo合理利用时间的细节证据,并说明这些细节反映了Timo怎样的生活态度。例如:



(4)内容要点与篇章结构分析。教师指导学生对阅读文本进行整体分析,让学生归纳出内容要点,分析不同要点之间的衔接逻辑。这一活动主要为了提升学生的语篇意识,通过细致人微的篇章分析,理解语篇建构逻辑以及行文中的衔接逻辑。例如:

- Introduce yourself: name, age, home country
- Choose a day to describe: which month, which day
- Activities before school begins: get up, have breakfast, walk to school
- Activities at school: breaks, lessons in the morning and in the afternoon
- Activities after school: club activities
- Activities at home: have dinner, read, prepare schoolbag, go to bcd 衔接句:
- Now it's December. Every Tuesday, ...
- My school begins at 9:00. There are ...
- After that, I have lunch at 12:00. The afternoon lessons ...
- I usually get home around 4:00.
- (5)赏析经典句式。学生从文中找出自己喜欢的短语或句子,摘抄在好词好句本上。教师请几个学生分享自己选择的句子,并要求说明理由。教师还可补充说明相关句式的意义和用法,拓宽学生的知识面。
- (6) 朗读课文,关注句子重音。教师让学生朗读文本,并预测句子重音,提醒学生重音应放在传 递重要信息的单词上。然后,教师播放课文录音,学生边听录音边跟读,并对照录音核查自己预测的 句子重音是否正确。

3. 写前准备

(1)对比日常作息。教师可利用课件或学案将活动1c和2a的表格拼接在一起,供学生填写自己的日常作息,并与之前完成的Timo的信息表进行对比,找出异同。例如:

Time	Timo's activity	Time	My activity
7:40 a.m.	get up	6:30 a.m.	get up

在分析对比的过程中,教师可引导学生找出反映文化差异的细节,鼓励学生思考存在差异的原因,并适时补充文化背景知识,加强学生的跨文化理解能力,使他们能以积极开放的心态关注世界,了解不同地域和文化背景下青少年学习和生活方式的异同。

(2) 拓展表达。如果学生的语言能力较强,教师可让学生在上一步骤的表格后增加一栏 My opinion 或 My feeling,简述这些日常活动安排的理由。

教学提示: 教师鼓励学生简单陈述活动安排的理由,这一活动步骤基于文本又超越了文本,能帮助学生更深入地思考如何更好地利用和管理自己的时间,做时间的主人。

(3)明确写作要点。学生浏览活动2b的指示语和写作框架,归纳出写作的内容要点。例如:

- Self-introduction
- Morning lessons
- Afternoon lessons and activities

- Morning activities
- Lunch time
- After-school activities

4. 写作训练

- (1)学生完成初稿。学生根据之前完成的日常作息表和活动2b的篇章支架独立撰写初稿,描写自 己一天的生活,并适当增加自己的感受和观点。
- (2)同伴互评。学生两人一组交换初稿,并进行互评,提出修改意见或建议。学生根据同伴的反 馈进一步修改文章。
- (3)写作成果分享与评价。学生完成写作后,可进行小组评价,推选最优作品在班级分享。教师 可选取几篇学生习作在课堂上进行点评和赏析,以便学生从同伴的作品中汲取有益的经验,完善自己 的习作。

教学提示: 教材提供的活动 2b 是填空式的控制性写作,教师在具体教学中可以依据学情进行灵活处 理,如适当增删语言支架,提供更多开放的表达空间等。

拓展活动:写给Timo的信

如果学生的写作能力较强,教师可让学生给Timo写一封信,信中需要包括以下内容:

- Which part of Timo's life interests you most?
- What else do you want to know about his life? What questions would you like to ask?
- How is Timo's day different from your day?
- Would you like to make friends with Timo?



🝳 内容分析

本单元的项目活动主要让学生通过采访了解不同职业从业者一天的作息。活动3a提供了几个职业 作为参考,活动3b则列出一些问题供学生在采访时使用。由于采访内容与不同职业的日常作息相关, 双方交流时自然而然会使用询问日常活动和描述具体时间的语言表达。活动3c要求学生将采访中所 获得的信息整理成报告,然后向全班汇报。由于采访报告需以第三人称的口吻描述,学生在报告中需 要灵活运用一般现在时动词第三人称单数形式的用法。此处的项目活动不仅有助于学生巩固本单元所 学,提升自己的书面和口语表达能力,更重要的是能够提升学生对单元主题的认识,引导他们将视野 从学校生活转向更广阔的社会生活,从不同职业人员的作息时间了解他们的社会生活节奏以及需要面 临的挑战,以增进学生对社会的了解,并能对不同职业人员繁忙的生活节奏表示理解和尊重。

学习目标

- 能够通过采访了解并记录被采访者的日常作息。
- 能够运用本单元所学的时间表达法介绍被采访者的日常生活。
- 能够从他人的生活日常中发现有利于时间管理和身心健康的想法和做法,并从中受到启发和教育。
- ▶ 能够理解不同职业从业者的工作特点和不同作息,并能尊重他们的生活方式。

参数学建议

- 1.课前布置任务。在开展项目活动前一节课上,学生阅读活动3a—3c的指示语及所列的参考内容,教师可适当解释或说明,确保学生理解活动的步骤和要求,然后布置课后作业,让学生采访自己的父母或其他亲人,了解他们的职业,记录他们的日常作息,完成3b信息表格,为下节课的项目活动作准备。
- 2. 师生模拟采访。教师邀请一名学生基于活动 3b 表格所列问题 与自己开展模拟采访,其他学生则记录教师在回答时提供的时间信息。例如:
 - S: Ms / Mr ..., can I ask you some questions about your workday routine?
 - T: Of course, go ahead.
 - S: What time do you usually get up?
 - T: I usually get up at six o'clock.
 - S: That's so early. When do you have breakfast?
 - T: Well, I have breakfast around ...

Question	Ms / Mr's routine	
What time do you usually get up?	6:00 a.m.	
When do you have breakfast?		

- 3. 开展采访对话。学生两人一组开展采访对话,一方询问另一方父母的职业以及他们的日常作息,另一方结合之前完成的表格信息回答,然后两人交换角色进行问答。例如:
 - S1: Hi, ... Can you tell me about your father's / mother's workday routine?
 - S2: Sure.
 - S1: What does your father / mother do?
 - S2: He / She is a ...
 - S1: What time does he / she get up?
 - S2: He / She usually gets up at ...

•••

在采访过程中,询问方需要记录职业和日常作息。教师可巡视课堂,获取反馈并适时提供指导。

- 4. 梳理汇报思路及关键句式。教师引导学生提炼出报告的内容要点以及可套用的句式。例如:
- ...'s father / mother is a ...
- Every day, he / she gets up at ...
- Then he / she has breakfast at ...
- After that, he / she goes to work at ...
- At ..., he / she has his / her lunch ...

5.课堂汇报。学生完成报告后,教师请不同的学生分别汇报不同职业从业者的日常作息,然后引 导学生发现不同职业从业者的工作作息的异同,探讨其背后的原因以及这些职业的工作特点等。教师 可提出以下问题引导学生讨论:

- What is his / her job?
- Why does he / she get up so early / late?
- How many hours does he / she work every day?
- Do you think it is an easy job?

Reflecting

内容分析

本单元的反思板块主要从四个方面启发学生进行自我反思和评价:时间表达法的正确运用,以 what time 和 when 引导的特殊疑问句的功能、意义和用法,日常作息习惯的描述,以及合理利用时间 的方法。

本单元通过价值引领句 "To plan time is to save time."(合理规划时间就是节约时间)点明本单元 的主题意义。与小学阶段相比,初中生的学习任务更多,生活节奏更快。因此,保持张弛有度的学习 和生活节奏,学会做时间的主人,合理规划日常的活动安排,营造健康的生活方式,培养良好的学习 和生活习惯,对丁初中生而言尤为重要。

教学建议

- 1. 教师引导学生阅读Reflecting部分的内容,让学生说出每个句子的意思,确保理解正确无误。
- 2. 学生根据本单元的学习情况进行自查,完成表格的勾选。教师进行巡视,获取反馈。如果学生 的语言能力较强,教师可提供一些填空题帮助学生完成自评。例如:
 - I can tell the time using time expressions such as ______
 - To talk about my daily routine, I can say ______

To ask about people's daily routines, I can use wh-questions such as		
ask about		
I learned some new things about	For example,	
 My favourite part of the unit was 	because	
 I think the topic of this unit is important because 		
I can make good use of my time by		
3. 学生完成反思评价表后,教师可请几个学生汇打	B 自评结果,并针对学生反映的疑难问题提供一	

些学习建议或补充方案。

三、课文注释

1. I often listen to the news or music. 我经常听新闻或音乐。

listen to 是固定搭配, 意为"听", 介词 to 后而接听的内容或对象。例如:

Listen to me carefully. 认真听我说。

I like to listen to music. 我喜欢听音乐。

动词 listen 除了可接介词 to 之外,还可以接其他介词或副词。listen for 表示"留心听(某种声音, 如门铃、电话等)"; listen up 也表示"注意听、留心听",用于有要事要讲而让人注意听。例如:

She shouted on the mountain top and listened for the echo. 她在山顶上大声喊,然后聆听回声。

Please listen up! I'm going to tell you some important news. 请注意听! 我将告诉你们一些重要消息。

2. Then I prepare my schoolbag for the next day. 接下来,我会准备好第二天的书包。

prepare 既可用作及物动词, 也可用作不及物动词, 意思是"准备;把……准备好"。prepare (sth/sb) for sb / sth 是常见搭配, 意思是"为……作准备"。例如:

We must prepare a room for our guest. 我们必须为客人准备一个房间。

She is preparing for the maths exam next week. 她正在为下周的数学考试作准备。

Can you help me prepare for the party? 你能帮我为聚会作准备吗?

3. At 9:30, it's time for me to go to bed. 我九点半上床睡觉。

此句中 "it's time for sb to do sth"表示"到某人做某事的时间了"。例如:

It's time for us to have lunch. 到我们吃午餐的时间了。

It's time for everyone to act. 是每个人行动的时候了。

与此类似的一个结构是"It's time for sth",表示"到……的时候了;该……了"。for后面接名词 或名词短语。例如:

It's time for lunch. 到吃午餐的时间了。

It's time for music class. 该上音乐课了。

UNIT 6 A Day in the life

The theme of this unit is the daily life of students and people. Students will learn how to ask about daily routines using question words and how to describe these routines with common collocations and by giving times. They will learn about different people's routines around the world, and conduct interviews to know about different people's daily life, cumulating in consideration of the big question: How can you make good use of your time?

Opening Page

Teaching Tip	A Day in the Life Discussion Ask students what they understand by the title. What do they think the unit will be about? What kind of language do they think it will include to describe this? "A day in the life" is a way to see the routine of daily life, giving a snapshot of the ordinary (and extraordinary) moments that shape someone's life experience.
Suggested Answers (Look and share)	 I can see students coming through the gates to their school. I study for 8 hours at school every day. I usually study and do homework for 1.5 hours after school. Answers will vary.

Section A

1a	
	Telling the Time
Teaching Tip	There are two types of clocks, analogue (as shown in 1a) and digital (as shown on p.80). There are two ways of telling the time with a digital clock: using the 12-hour clock or 24-hour clock. With the 12-hour clock, we use 1–12 for the hours and add "a.m." for morning and "p.m." for the afternoon / evening. With the 24-hour clock, we use 0–23, and can just state the time as it reads: "It's 17: 40." When saying the time, there are a few points to remember: "o'clock" is only used for precise hours. For example: It's three o'clock. We say "half past", but never "half to". For example: It's half past four. For times 15 minutes before or after the hour we use "quarter to", or "quarter past". When reading the time from a 24-hour clock, we never use the above expressions when the time is greater than 13:00. (1:00 p.m.)
Answers	 C one forty-five / a quarter to two A eight / eight o'clock D six fifteen / a quarter past six B four thirty / half past four

1b	
	Daily Activities and Routines
	Elicit from students the daily morning activities and routines that students already
	know. For example:
	have / take a bath / shower
-	make the bed / breakfast
	tidy your room
Teaching Tip	do the laundry / ironing
	clean / brush your teeth
	brush your hair
	eat your breakfast
	go to sleep / school
	eget up / dressed / ready
	• catch the bus
Answers	✓ brush his teeth ✓ get dressed

1c	
Answers	1. Peter A. do some reading before class 2. Han Lin B. on duty

1d	
Teaching Tip	Writing Numbers and Times Encourage students to write the times in words to help practise writing. They can also be encouraged to write alternative ways of saying the time, e.g. half past six / six thirty.
Suggested Answers	 Peter's school begins at <u>eight o'clock / 8:00 a.m</u>. Peter usually gets up at <u>half past six / six thirty / 6:30</u>. Peter usually has breakfast at <u>ten to seven / six fifty / 6:50</u>. Peter usually takes a shower in the <u>morning</u>. Han Lin usually takes a shower at <u>night</u>.

1e	
Sample Conversation	 S1: What time do you usually get up? S2: I usually get up at 7 o'clock, but sometimes I get up at 6:30. S1: When do you take a shower? S2: I usually take a shower when I get up. It helps wake me up! S1: What time do you get to school? S2: I always get to school before 8 o'clock. S1: When do you get home from school? S2: I get home from school at about 5 o'clock, because I go to a sports club after school

ronunciation

1	
	Tongue Twisters
	Read the tongue twisters aloud to students, and then let them practise reading them
	aloud.
	/s/ Six sausages slowly sizzle in the sun.
Ontional	/z/ Whose shoes are those shoes?
Optional Approach	/ʃ/ Should she shut the shoe shop?
	/ʒ/ John usually enjoys college.
	/tʃ/ Charles chooses cheese for each lunch.
	/dʒ/ Jane and Jack love large oranges.
	/θ/ Nothing, anything something, everything.
	/ð/ Is it this, that, these, or those that they want?

2	
Teaching Tip	Sentence Stress The pattern of stressed and unstressed words in a sentence usually shows the words that are more important. The unstressed words are often quiet and merge with the words around them. For learners this can be difficult for understanding, because they might try to understand every word, and if they get "stuck" on one they don't understand, they then might not hear the following. By showing stress and getting students used to hearing it, teachers can remind students that actually they can focus more on stressed words to understand and get the target language. In conclusion, it is not necessary to understand every word! Before listening, read Lu Jiaqi's first sentence without stressing any words: "Hi. I'm Lu Jiaqi, a school reporter. What's your name?" Then read it again with the stressed words as marked in the Student's Book. Ask students: What do you notice about the difference?
Optional Approach	Peter! Get up! You're late! Use the recording of the first conversation in 1b to give students another chance to analyse for sentence stress. Copy the script or have students turn to page 89 in the Student's Book. Play the conversation again and ask students to mark the the stressed words in the text. If necessary, play and pause the recording after each sentence, and ask students to repeat it aloud to help show the words with stress. Students can underline the stressed words or put a circle or dot above them. Follow up by discussing which words are stressed, e.g. exclamations, times, actions.

2a	
Culture Note	About the Saying A "saying" is a well-known phrase or statement that expresses something about life that most people believe is wise and true. The full saying Tom is referring to is: "Early to bed and early to rise makes one healthy, wealthy, and wise."
Suggested Answers	ten past seven / 7:10, five / 5:00, half past six / 6:30, half past nine / 9:30

Suggested **Answers**

- 1. Jiaqi asks Tom about his day, for example, what time he usually gets up and goes to bed.
- 2. Tom stays at school for about 9 hours.
- 3. Tom goes to bed early so he can wake up early.

	Time	Tom's activity
	6:45 a.m.	gets up
	7:10 a.m.	have breakfast
	7:50 a.m.	go to school
Answers	5:00 p.m.	go home
	before dinner	play basketball
	6:30 p.m.	have dinner
	after dinner	do homework
	9:30 p.m.	go to bed

2e	
Teaching Tip	Better Daily Habits After students have talked to each other about their daily routines, introduce them to the idea of good and bad habits. A habit is a thing we do often and without always thinking about it, so our daily routines are full of things we do by habit. What could students do to change their habits and daily routines to make better use of time? Encourage students to come up with three small ways they could change their routine in a positive way.
Sample Report	This is Liu Heng's school day routine. He gets up at 6:30 a.m. He has a shower and brushes his teeth. Then he eats breakfast and leaves the house at 7:15. He gets to school at 7:45. After school he goes to ping-pong club at 4:15 p.m. He gets home at 5:30. He has his dinner at 6:00, and then he does his homework and plays his guitar until 8:30. He reads a little before he goes to bed at 9:00 p.m.



-	Ю	ж
-	Z:	. 6

Suggested
Answers

What time / When do you usually get up?	I usually get up at 6:30 a.m.
What time / When does Tom usually go to bed?	He usually goes to bed at 9:30 p.m.
When do they go to the music club?	They go on Monday afternoons.
What do you do after dinner?	Sometimes I read books or do my homework.
What does Peter do before breakfast?	He brushes his teeth and takes a shower.

3b

Time Prepositions

Using the correct prepositions can be difficult for learners as there are many different rules, so bringing these to students' attention will help them as they study. We use the prepositions at, in, and on when talking about time.

- We use at with clock times and mealtimes.
 - I get to school at 8 o'clock.

We get a short break at lunchtime.

- We also use at with other phrases.
 - at night

Teaching Tip

- at the weekend (in AmE, they say on the weekend) at Christmas / Chinese New Year (and other festivals)
- We use *in* with parts of the day and longer periods of time.

in the morning / afternoon / evening

in January / December

in the spring / summer / autumn / winter

in 2008 / the 20th century / the 90s

in the past / future

- We use on with days and dates.
 - on Monday / Sunday
 - on my birthday / New Year's Day

on 30th July

Suggested **Answers**

- 1. Mike usually gets to school at 7:30 a.m.
- 2. They have lunch at 12:10 in the afternoon.
- 3. My maths class is at 1:45 p.m.
- 4. Lisa does her homework after dinner.
- 5. David plays basketball on Thursdays.

3e	
Teaching Tip	 Write the Questions Ask students to write three questions about the passage using what, what time, and when. For example: What does Sam sometimes do on Saturday afternoon? What time does Sam go to bed on Sundays? When does Sam often help his mother with housework? Then in pairs (with books closed) ask students to test each other by asking them the questions. Make sure students pay particular attention to the verb endings in the third person.
Culture Note	Weekend Activities Around the world, people's weekend routines are often filled with regular activities of many types. For example, in the UK, playing football on a Saturday morning is popular. These are often local town clubs and teams who practise and play against other clubs. Of course, the weekend is a great time to explore a wide variety of different sports and hobbies, relax, and to spend time with friends and family.
Answers	gets, makes, does, meets, play, goes, helps, watches, plays, goes

3d	
Sample Conversation	A: What time do you usually get up at weekends?B: I usually get up at 7:30. It's early, but I like to make the most of my days off!A: What do you usually do on a Saturday morning?B: I always go swimming in the morning with my dad. At 11:30, we go for lunch at a local restaurant.

Optional Activity 1: Race Against Time

Purpose	To help students use the target language correctly.	
Materials Required	Board markers or chalk.	

Procedure

- 1. Write a series of digital clock times spaced out on the board. For example:
- 6:45 10:10 5:55 8:30 2:15 3:40 12:00 9:35 1:11
- 2. Put students into two teams. Ask one student from each team to stand and give each a board marker or chalk. (Alternatively, individual students could take turns to see how quickly they can circle the times you call out, and each student's name and time is recorded on the board. Who is the fastest?)
- 3. Call out one of the times on the board. Students must race to the board and circle the correct time first.
- 4. Be sure to say the times in different ways, e.g. 8:45 can be "eight forty-five" or "quarter to nine".
- 5. Make the game more challenging by giving tricky clues such as "an hour before 9:45". You can also introduce times using the 24-hour clock if students know it.

Optional Activity 2: A Perfect Day

Ask students to consider what a "perfect" day would be like for them. When would they wake up? What would they do and when would they do it? Have students write a short passage describing their perfect day with time expressions.

Section B

1a

Suggested Answers

The boy looks like he is from somewhere that is cold, so perhaps Canada or a country in Northern Europe like Sweden. I would like to know where he is from and what his daily routine is like there.

1b

Finland

Finland is a country in Northern Europe and is part of Scandinavia, a geographical region, along with Sweden, Norway, and Denmark. The capital city is Helsinki. Around 70% of Finland is covered by forests, and the country is also known as the "land of a thousand lakes".

Popular Sports in Finland

Culture Note

Due to the climate and geography, sports based on snow and ice are of course popular, such as ice-hockey, skiing, and skating. However, other common global sports are also popular, such as football, basketball, and athletics.

Factors Influencing Daily Routines

Around the world, people's daily routines are influenced by many different factors. Climate, weather, geography, and environment are particularly important. For example, in the far north, some places have limited sunlight during winter months, which has a great effect on human physiology. People living in big cities have a different experience from those living in the country where life moves a little slower.

Answer

Teaching Tip

В

Quiz Pairs

After reading and completing the timetable, ask students to take turns to quiz each other on Timo's day in pairs. For example:

S1: What does he do after school?

S2: He goes to the ice hockey club.

S1: That's right!

S2: When does he have dinner?

S1: He has dinner at ...

Rewriting Text

Ask students to rewrite the text in the third person singular. For example:

His name is Timo Halla, He is 13 years old. He lives with his parents in Helsinki ...

	Time	Timo's activity
	7:40 a.m.	gets up
	9:00 a.m.	school begins
	12:00 p.m.	has lunch
*	12:30 p.m.	lessons begin (again)
Suggested Answers	2:15 p.m.	lessons finish
Allowers	after school	goes to ice hockey club
	4:00 p.m.	gets home
	6:00 p.m.	has dinner
	after dinner	reads with his parents
	9:30 p.m.	goes to bed

1d

Time Management

Time management can be a difficult thing for everyone, students and teachers alike. Write Timo's line on the board: "I prepare my schoolbag for the next day." Ask students why they think he does this, and what the benefits might be. Do any students also do this? How else do they make their mornings a little easier? Put students into small groups and ask them to brainstorm ways of making the most of their time before having a class discussion and choosing the top five time management tips. Here are some suggestions for good time management:

Optional Approach

- Make a to-do list. Put important things at the top. Do them in order!
- Take regular breaks. It helps keep out mind fresh and focused.
- Make routines, e.g. a dedicated study time each day.
- Set reminders with your phone.
- Prioritize one thing at a time.
- It's OK to say "No" to things, such as hanging out with friends.
- Be realistic. Don't try to do too much.
- Little and often is more effective than cramming.
- Get enough sleep. We can't be effective if we are too tired.

Suggested Answers

- 1. Timo has one Finnish lesson and two home economics lessons every Tuesday morning.
- 2. Each lesson at his school lasts for 45 minutes.
- 3. Timo goes to the ice hockey club.
- 4. Timo makes good use of his time by listening to the news and music in the morning and going to club after school. He also reads and prepares his schoolbag for the next day before he goes to bed.

ĸ,	Т	3	
	A	a	1
	7	4	ı

Suggested **Answers**

Time	My activity	
6:30 a.m.	get up, brush teeth, eat breakfast, get dressed	
8:45 a.m.	school begins	
12:30 p.m.	lunch & break time	
4:00 p.m.	get home	
6:00 p.m.	dinner time	
9:30 p.m.	bed time	

2b

Sample Writing

My name is Yang Xin. I'm 12 years old. I live in Beijing. Every school day, I usually get up at 6:30. Then I eat breakfast, brush my teeth, and get dressed. My school begins at 8:00. On Tuesday I have English, maths, Chinese and history in the morning. After that, at 12:30 p.m. I have lunch and break time. In the afternoon, I have geography, music and PE. I usually get home around 5 o'clock. Then I play football with my friends until dinner time at 6 o'clock. I usually do some reading after I finish my homework. At 9:30, it's time for me to go to bed.



-		
55	ı	
100		м

Other Professions

Teaching Tip

Brainstorm with students more professions and write them on the board, e.g. factory worker, banker, painter, shop worker, builder, taxi driver, cook / chef, model, fisherman, business owner.

Suggested Answers

Answers will vary.

Professions with Unusual Schedules

Culture Note

A person's profession or job has a great effect on their daily routine. For example, some people work at night, while many of us are asleep. Therefore their routines are almost the opposite of everyone else's. They are getting up and ready for work as we are relaxing at the end of a long day. Here are some examples of these professions:

- Security guards are paid to keep an eye on properties at nighttime.
- Cleaners or janitors often work at night to clean shops and offices ready for the following day.

				次ん
Culture Note	for the Para peop Truc have	ght attendants: Many flights happen at night, and staff on board must be awake the whole flight. ramedics, doctors or nurses: Hospitals have to always remain open, and the ople that work there must be available to help at all hours. ack drivers: In order to get deliveries to their destination on time, drivers often we to drive through the night, often sleeping in their trucks. To other unusual professions can students think of? What routines would those there have?		
		Question	My uncle's routine	
		What time do you usually get up?	5:50 a.m.	
		When do you have breakfast?	8:00 a.m.	
		When do you go to work?	5:50 a.m.	
Suggested Answers		When do you have lunch?	12:20 p.m.	
Answers	13 WEIS	What time do you get off work?	5:00 p.m.	
		What time do you have dinner?	6:00 p.m.	
		When do you exercise / study / rclax?	After dinner	
		When do you go to bed?	10:00 p.m.	

к	T	
•	4	

Suggested Answers

My uncle is a farmer in a small village. Every day, he gets up at 5:30 a.m. and works for two hours in the field. Then he has breakfast at 8:00 a.m. After that, he goes back to work for another four hours. He's always very busy in the morning. Lunchtime is at 12:00 p.m., and he starts work again around 2:30 p.m. He goes home at 5:00 p.m. After dinner at 6:00 p.m., he watches TV or talks with his neighbours. He usually goes to bed at 9:00 p.m.

Optional Activity: An Unusual Profession

Purpose	To let students use the target language.		
Materials Required	None.		

Procedure

- 1. Brainstorm with students strange or unusual jobs on the board, e.g. deep-sea diver, astronaut, circus clown, food tester.
- 2. Ask students to choose one profession and research that job. They should try and find out about what the job entails and how an average day might be.
- 3. Students produce another report about a fictional person with that profession. How does his or her routine differ from people with more usual professions?

Value Statement: To plan time is to save time.

Language Tip

The statement is about managing our time well. If we don't plan something, then it may take more time to do it, whereas if we spend time thinking about it advance, it will help us later when we start. In relation to the unit theme, it suggests that having a plan each day can help us make the most of our time.

*Reading Plus

Bin Worker

Culture Note

In British English, "bin" is short for "dustbin", which is the large container outside homes where people put all their rubbish. These bins are collected by large trucks every week or two. There are different coloured bins for different types of waste. Black bins are for general waste, blue for recycling (paper, cardboard, plastic, etc.), and green for organic garden waste. In the US, the equivalent word is "trash can" or "garbage can".

Suggested Answers

Wenwen's mother					
6:30 PM	10:00 PM	8:00 AM	9:00 AM	10:30 AM	
eats dinner with Wenwen	starts work	finishes work	arrives home	goes to bed	

	Colin's father					
4:00 AM	5:00 AM	3:00 PM	4:30 PM	6:00 PM	8:30 PM	
gets up	empty rubbish bins at the first house	work ends	picks Colin up from school	has dinner with family	goes to bed	

2

Suggested Answers

- 1. Their parents' routines are different from my parents, because my parents work on usual office hours from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.
- 2. Many jobs have special routines. For example, security guards must work through the night to protect properties in places such as shopping malls.

UNIT 7 HAPPY BIRTHDAY!

一、单元概览与目标设计

单元内容概述

本单元围绕"庆祝生日"这一主题展开,该主题与课标要求的"人与自我"主题范畴中的"丰富的生活、自我认识、理性消费"子话题,以及"人与社会"主题范畴中的"人际交往"子话题密切相关。过生日是学生感兴趣的主题。在学习本单元主题内容的过程中,学生将和同学、朋友交流与生日有关的话题,增进彼此的了解,加强与家人、朋友的情感纽带,还能够了解世界不同地区的人们庆祝生日的方式,深入探究生日的意义,了解更多有意义的庆祝生日的方式。

本单元 Section A围绕 "How do we celebrate birthdays?" 这个引导性问题展开,呈现了关于生日日期、聚会的时间、生日礼物的选择、庆祝生日的方式、为生日聚会购物等内容,让学生通过听力理解和对话模仿,能够就生日庆祝交流想法和观点,增进彼此的了解和感情。在 Section A 的基础上,Section B 进一步引导学生探讨 "How do you make your birthday meaningful?"这个重要问题。本部分阅读篇章采用论坛交流形式,展现了不同国家和地区的人们庆祝生日的不同方式,让学生了解中外庆祝生日的传统习俗和主人公的一些个性化的庆祝方式,目的是让学生在提高语言能力的同时,扩大国际视野,提升文化素养。写作部分让学生描述自己过生日的方式,思考过生日的意义。本单元两个部分的引导性问题"人们怎样庆祝生日"和"怎样让生日过得更有意义"层层递进,指向本单元的大问题,即"我们为什么要庆祝生日?"(Why do we celebrate birthdays?)。本单元引导学生思考人们庆祝生日的原因和过生日的意义,每个生日都是生活的馈赠,在年龄增长一岁的那一天,我们回顾过往、珍惜现在、感恩父母、珍惜友情,对未来生活进行展望并表达祝福。

本单元的项目活动让学生寻找与自己同月出生的同学,并共同为某月出生的同学设计一场集体生日会。学生做项目活动时不仅需要灵活运用本单元所学语言,还需要思考如何让集体生日过得更有意义。拓展阅读板块呈现的三张生日卡分别是父亲为儿子、女儿为妈妈、朋友为朋友写的生日祝福,表达了对亲人和朋友的深厚情感,再次呼应了本单元的大问题,即生日是表达爱与祝福的日子。

总而言之,本单元围绕"庆祝生日"这个主题以及"Why do we celebrate birthdays?"这个大问题,安排了相关话题内容和语言活动,由浅人深地引导学生探究本单元的主题意义,让他们理解纪念和庆祝生日的意义,同时,庆祝生日也是亲人和朋友之间表达祝福和爱的方式,增进与他人的人际关系。本单元还引导学生发现更多有意义的度过生日的方式,丰富自己的生活。教材还将个性化的庆祝生日方式拓展到不同地区和文化背景下传统的生日庆祝习俗,以此拓宽学生的视野,培养他们的文化意识,提高他们跨文化理解和沟通交流的能力。

单元学习目标

通过本单元的学习, 学生能够:

- ▶ 借由生日的主题语境,学会正确使用月份名称和序数词表达日期,谈论生日或聚会 的时间:
- 讨论庆祝生日的方式和生日礼物的选择等,提高人际交往和沟通能力;
- > 正确使用数词谈论物品的数量和价格,并用英语进行日常购物会话,提高对理性消 费的认识,培养健康的消费习惯;
- 利用社交媒体简单介绍自己过生日的方式,并从不同角度思考庆祝生日的方式,提 升自己对生日意义的认知:
- ➤ 听辨并准确认读音素/h/、/r/、/l/、/m/、/n/、/ŋ/、/w/、/j/; 掌握英语中升、降调的基 本规则,初步理解语调可以用来表达情感和态度;
- ▶ 通过阅读了解不同国家和地区庆祝生日的传统习俗,以及不同方式所蕴含的意义, 提高学生跨文化理解、沟通与交流的能力:
- ▶ 理解和探究人们庆祝生日的原因,真诚地表达对家人和朋友的生日祝福,增进彼此 的感情。

二、单元内容分析与教学建议

Opening Page

Why do we celebrate birthdays?

内容分析

本单元标题 Happy Birthday! 是人们过生日时最常使用的一句生日祝福语。开篇页的主题图展示的 正是一个庆祝生日的场景:一家三代人围在一起为小女孩庆祝生日。房间里布置了彩旗和气球,女孩 头上还戴着象征生日的"皇冠",一派喜庆气氛。小女孩正遐想着自己即将要许下的甜蜜愿望,一家 人脸上都洋溢着幸福的笑容,画面温馨甜蜜。Look and share部分的前两个问题引导学生观察主题图, 分析图片场景和人物活动,第三个问题关联学生自身庆祝生日的方式,让学生结合自身情况进行交 流, 引导学生进入本单元的主题学习。

开篇页还呈现了本单元的大问题"Why do we celebrate birthdays?",引导学生思考生日的意义,

并探究人们庆祝生日的行为背后所蕴含的多层意义。开篇页还列举了本单元的主要学习内容和目标, 包括谈论和生日主题有关的内容,用英语表达日期和购物,探究人们庆祝生日的方式和原因等。

学习目标

- 能够通过观察图片和单元标题获取本单元"庆祝生日"的主题信息。
- 能够通过对主题图的讨论,熟悉单元主题语境,激活与生日庆祝相关的背景知识。
- ▶ 能够明确本单元的主要学习目标和任务。

🧐 教学建议

- 1. 导入单元话题。教师可以跟学生自然交流,通过问题导入单元话题。例如"In our lives, each of us has a special day to celebrate. Do you know what it is?"。学生回答出birthday后,教师再问几个学生"When is your birthday?"。
- 2. 学生浏览开篇页,观察并讨论主题图。学生仔细观察主题图,教师提出问题,引导学生描述主题图。例如:
 - How many people can you see in the picture?
 - Who do you think they are?
 - What's the little girl doing?
 - What are the other people doing?
 - Whose birthday is it?
 - How are they feeling?
 - How do you feel on your birthday?
 - How do you celebrate your birthday?

celebrate 是个生词,也是本单元重要的话题词,出现频率比较高,教师可以给出例句,或给出英文释义,让学生通过上下文猜测该词的意思。例如:

- I eat a birthday cake to celebrate my birthday.
- People usually watch dragon boat races and eat zongzi to celebrate the Dragon Boat Festival.
- When we celebrate, we do something special to show a day or an event is important.

教学提示:生词可以区别对待。对于影响理解又多次出现的高频核心词,教师可以通过几个例句帮助学生理解,但要考虑学生的能力,不宜用过难或者学生不理解的词汇。教师还可以提供简明的英文释义,让学生猜测词义,从而培养学生通过语境猜测词义的能力。同时,例句和释义对于学习者来说也是很好的语言输入。

- 3. 教师读本单元的大问题"Why do we celebrate birthdays?",引发学生思考,提醒学生这是个开放性问题,不用着急给出全面的回答,学完这个单元后会讨论这个问题。
- 4. 学生阅读本单元的学习内容导引,明确本单元的主要学习活动和内容。教师提醒学生,这些内容都是相关联的,例如,谈到生日一般会谈到具体的日期,谈日期就会用到序数词,序数词也是本单元的一个语言学习目标。

Section A

How do we celebrate birthdays?



🥝 内容分析

文本分析:本单元的听力文本包含三个对话,分别为三个不同场景,都围绕"生日"这一主题展开。在第一个对话中,Fu Xing向Helen表达生日祝福,Helen也借机询问Fu Xing的生日和年龄,并邀请她参加自己的生日聚会。在第二个对话中,Teng Fei不知道给父亲送什么生日礼物,于是向 Ella征求意见。在第三个对话中,Peter向 Meimei 询问 Ms Gao 的生日,想在她生日这天为她表演节目。这三个对话都包含了本单元的核心目标语言:when 引导的询问日期和时间的特殊疑问句,以及日期的表达法,同时复习了how old 引导的询问年龄和 why 引导的询问原因的特殊疑问句。这三个对话分别从生日日期、聚会时间、生日礼物、庆祝方式等不同方面引导学生听并讨论这些与生日主题相关的内容。

这三个对话还呈现了庆祝生日的三种方式,即举办聚会、送生日卡、为寿星唱歌弹吉他。对话中话轮的推进还体现出说话人良好的沟通和人际交往能力。例如,在第一个对话中,Fu Xing 能记住好友Helen的生日,并送出生日祝福,体现了对朋友的关爱。Helen收到祝福后,立刻询问Fu Xing 的生日,并发出聚会邀请,显示出她对Fu Xing 的友好、关注和礼貌。在第二个对话中,Teng Fei 能记住父亲的生日并准备礼物,显示出他对父亲的爱。在第三个对话中,Peter作为留学生,能够积极地为中国班主任高老师筹划生日庆祝活动,体现出他对班主任的喜爱和感谢。这三位主人公在人际交往中展现出来的积极态度和良好行为值得学生学习。另外,三个对话还体现了对话应遵循的"礼貌原则",例如: Fu Xing 对 Helen 说"Happy birthday!"后,Helen 立即表达感谢(Thank you, Fu Xing!);听到Helen发出的聚会邀请,Fu Xing 欣然接受(I'd love to come!);听到 Teng Fei 说要给父亲准备生日礼物,Ella给出肯定的回应(Oh, that's sweet, Teng Fei!);听到 Ella 的建议,Teng Fei 也积极回应(That's a good idea!);听到 Peter 为 Ms Gao 庆祝生日的点子后,Meimei 表示认可(Great idea!)。关于如何礼貌地回应对方,这些表达用语和对话策略值得学生关注。

活动设计:活动1a—1e是一个完整的听说任务链,其中1a让学生听月份和日期,学习和巩固月份和表达日期的序数词的读音,建立音形之间的联系,这些月份名称和日期序数词为后面对话作好词

汇上的铺垫。1b─1c是主要的听力活动。活动1b让学生听后获取对话中提到的生日信息,考查他们获 取关键信息的能力。需注意的是,听力对话中的日期采用的是英式英语的读法。在英式英语中,8月2 日写作2nd August或2 August,即日期在前,月份在后,读作the second of August。美式英语日期的写 法有所不同,如8月2日写作August 2nd或August 2,即月份在前,日期在后。教材以"小贴士"的形 式解释了这一区别。活动1c分别对三个对话提出了一个问题,考查学生获取对话中其他细节信息的能 力。活动1d是听后口语输出活动,提供了对话中会用到的目标语言"How old ...?""When is ...?", 让 学生互相询问个人信息,增进彼此的了解。

学习目标

- 能够准确读写12个月份的英文词汇和1—31的序数词。
- 🌬 能够准确获取听力中的生日日期信息,并了解美式英语和英式英语关于日期表达的 差异。
- 能够在日常交流中就年龄和生日日期进行问答。
- 能够邀请友人参加生日聚会,并就生日礼物的准备、为他人庆祝生日的方式交流想法。

教学建议

- 1. 学习月份单词和表达日期的序数词
- (1)教师播放活动1a关于月份的单词录音,让学生跟读。值得注意的是,12个月份单词中有六 个是多音节词, 教师应提醒学生注意重读音节, 可提问学生 "How many syllables are there in the word "January / February / September / October / November / December"?"。教师把这些发音较难的单词写在 黑板上,标出音节中的主体(即元音)和重音。例如:

'January

'February

Sep'tember

Oc'tober

No vember

De'cember

可以看出, January和February有四个音节,重读都在第一个音节, September、October、 November、December各有三个音节,重读都在第二个音节。

教学提示: 多音节单词的学习是难点,弄清楚音节有助于学生建立元音字母及其组合与发音的对应 关系,这是学习和记忆单词的一条重要途径。

(2) 教师播放活动 1a关于序数词的录音, 让学生跟读。教师用课件呈现比较特殊的序数词的完整 形式,然后请几个学生在每个序数词后写出其简写形式,以及对应的基数词。最后,教师通过歌谣和 全班学生一起总结基数词变序数词的规律。例如:

基变序, 有规律, 一、二、三,特殊记,th从四记。 八去t, 九去e, ve要用f替, ty变成tie; 几十几,要牢记。首数用基,尾用序。

教师应多鼓励学生,让他们不要被这些变化规则吓倒,可以把这些词当作生词,生词用得多了就 熟悉了,最重要的是多练。教师需提醒学生序数词结尾的-th的发音要领,即伸出舌头,上下牙轻咬 舌尖。

(3) 听前热身。教师拿一本台历,逐一询问学生"When is your birthday?",学生翻到台历中自己 的生日月份,并指着自己生日的那一天,回答"My birthday is on ... (date) ... (month).",通过这种方式 引导学生练习月份单词和序数词。

2. 听力理解

- (1) 朗读日期,熟悉日期读音和写法。在播放录音前,教师让学生熟悉活动1b中的四个日期,让 学生两人一组,一个学生读日期,另一个学生写下听到的日期。这种训练可以帮助学生建立英文日期 的音形联系,还可帮助学生掌握日期读法,同时也可为接下来的听力任务作准备。
- (2)听活动1b录音,完成人物及其生日的匹配。教师播放录音,要求学生合上书,准备纸笔,边 听录音边记笔记。这三个对话的关键信息就是主人公的名字和生日。为了便于学生作记录,教师可以 教授12个月份的英文缩写形式,即Jan(一月)、Feb(二月)、Mar(三月)、Apr(四月)、Jun(六月)、 Jul(七月)、Aug(八月)、Sep / Sept(九月)、Oct(十月)、Nov(十一月)、Dec(十二月)。月份缩 写一般截取月份单词的前三个字母,May没有缩写形式。在记笔记时,学生只需要写出月份的缩写形 式,日期则可以直接用阿拉伯数字代替。教师可提醒学生日期在英式英语和美式英语中有不同的写法 和读法。注意:表示序数词的最后两个字母"st、nd、rd、th"在书写时可以省略,但在口头表达时要 读出序数词的词缀。

教师引导学生两人一组采用问答形式核对答案,教师在黑板上写下关键句型。例如:

When is Helen's birthday?

On 3rd December.

When is Fu Xing's birthday?

On 22nd August.

When is Teng Fei's father's birthday?

On 9th January.

When is Ms Gao's birthday?

On 12th June.

- (3)听活动1c录音,回答更多细节问题。教师让学生先浏览1c活动中的问题,让他们带着问题 再次听录音,完成1c活动。教师可以设计更多问题让学生回答。例如:
 - How does Helen want to celebrate her birthday?
 - When is Helen's birthday party?
 - In which month do you think Teng Fei and Ella's conversation happens?
 - Why does Peter want to know Ms Gao's birthday?
- (4) 再次听录音, 关注对话中的礼貌回应。教师给学生解释, 为了让对话在友好的气氛中顺利进 行,对话者需要认真倾听对方所说内容,然后得体礼貌地回应。教师让学生找出对话中表示积极回应

的表达。例如:

Expression	Polite response
Happy birthday, Helen!	Thank you, Fu Xing!
So can you come to my birthday party?	Sure!
At 6 o'clock this evening.	I'd love to come!
I want to give my father a birthday gift.	Oh, that's sweet, Teng Fei!
You can make a card for him.	That's a good idea!
Because I want us all to give her a surprise.	Sounds fun!
Let's sing a song for her. I'll play the guitar.	Good idea!

教学提示:礼貌的回应包含多个方面的内容,例如,对别人给自己的祝福或邀请表示感谢、对别人提出的观点表示赞赏、对别人行为表示鼓励等,这些回应一般都是比较积极、肯定的表达。在对话教学中,教师需要时常提醒学生关注如何礼貌、得体地回应对方说的话,并在交流中运用这些技巧和表达法,做一个礼貌的对话者。

(5) 听录音, 跟读对话。教师再次播放录音, 让学生跟读对话, 提醒学生注意重音、语调和节奏, 并把自己代入角色中, 有感情地朗读对话。待学生熟悉对话内容后, 让学生分角色扮演对话。

3. 口语表达

- (1) 教师把学生分为小组,布置1d的任务,小组成员需要明确自己的职责,如由谁记录生日,谁负责最后汇报等。教师与一位学生互动,为全班展示活动1d的对话,并提示学生回答生日日期时发音要清晰响亮,教师示范如何记录该学生的生日日期。
- (2)小组成员开展有关生日的调查,可以采用开火车的方式,即学生A问,学生B答,学生B接着提问,学生C回答。记录员记录组内成员生日,并按年龄从小到大排序。
- (3)各组汇报员向全班汇报,如"There are ten students in my group. Li Ming is the youngest. He is 13 years old and his birthday is on …"。

🚨 拓展活动: 猜月份游戏

活动形式: 结对活动

活动目的: 巩固12个月份的英文表达法,包括读音和写法。

活动步骤: 学生两人一组,轮流描述一个月份,让对方猜自己描述的月份,并拼写出该单词。

示范1

S1: Which month comes before February?

S2: January, J-A-N-U-A-R-Y. Which is the third month of the year?

S1: ...

示范2

S1: Which month is New Year's Day in?

S2: January. ...



② 内容分析

本单元活动1为音素学习内容,本部分呈现了余下的八个辅音音素: /h/、/r/、/l/、/m/、/n/、/n/、/n/、/n/、/w/、/j/,除了/h/是清辅音,其他都是浊辅音,其中/m/、/n/、/n/是鼻音。活动1通过听读训练,帮助学生认识这八个辅音音素的音标,并建立音形联系,掌握这八个辅音音素的发音。本单元的朗读技巧聚焦两个最基本的语调,即降调和升调。活动2是一个幽默对话,契合本单元生日主题,重点训练这两个语调,让学生能在听读和模仿中体会这两个语调的特点和所表达的含义,并在以后的交流中能正确运用这两个语调。

🕛 语音知识

1. 英语音素总结

至此,本书已介绍了英语的全部音素,包括20个元音音素和24个辅音音素,见下表。

元音	单元音	前元音: /iː/ /ɪ/ /e/ /æ/ 中元音: /ɜː/ /ə/ /ʌ/ 后元音: /uː/ /ʊ/ /ɔː/ /ɒ/ /ɑː/
双元音		合口双元音: /eɪ/ /aɪ/ /ɔɪ/ /əʊ/ /aʊ/ 集中双元音: /ɪə/ /eə/ /ʊə/
辅音	清辅音	/p/ /t/ /k/ /f/ /s/ /θ/ /ʃ/ /tʃ/ /h/
柵目	浊辅音	/b/ /d/ /g/ /v/ /z/ /ð/ /ʒ/ /dʒ/ /r/ /l/ /m/ /n/ /ŋ/ /w/ /j/

2. 英语语调

英语的语调就是说话时调门的上升或下降、声音的高亢或低沉。语调影响说话人所要表达的意图,可以表达说话人的态度、感情和情绪。语调能赋予句子各种不同的含义和感情色彩:是亲切还是冷淡,是客气还是唐突,是断言还是商榷,都可以从语调中听出来。学习英语口语时,要特别注重语调,因为人们会使用不同的语调来表达话语的意思、态度、情感、情绪或言外之意等。有时语调错误比单词发音不准所造成的后果更为严重。同样一句话,如果用了不同的语调,表达的意思可能大不相同。例如:

\Yes. 是的。(表示肯定)

/Yes? 是吗? (或"嗯,什么事?")

You're going to Jane's party, \ aren't you?(说话人比较确定对方会去参加简的聚会)

You're going to Jane's party, Jaren't you?(说话人不太确定对方会去参加简的聚会)

英语有两种基本的语调,即降调和升调。降调的基本意义就是"确定"(certainty)和"完结 (finality)",常用于陈述句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句的后半部分、附加疑问句中的提问部分、表示 命令或建议的祈使句、感叹句等。例如:

Let's go and buy something for the \ party.

What's your \ name?

It's a nice day, \isn't it?

升调的基本意义是"不确定(uncertainty)"和"未完结(non-finality)",通常用于一般疑问句、 表示请求的祈使句、用陈述句形式表示疑问的各类句子,以及表示意思未完结的情况。例如:

Can I help / you?

Your birthday is in July, *∫* isn't it?

Our store has / apples, / pears, / oranges, and \ more.

学习目标

- ▶ 能够了解八个辅音音素/h/、/r/、/l/、/m/、/n/、/g/、/w/、/j/的发音特点,并能准确 读出这些音, 以及含有这些音的单词。
- 能够了解降调和升调的特点和基本意义,正确朗读这两个基本语调,并能根据语境 判断使用恰当的语调。

教学建议

- 1. 学生听活动1的录音,体会这八个辅音的发音特点。教师提出问题引导学生思考:哪些音是清 辅音?哪些音是浊辅音?通过仔细听辨,学生可以听出只有发/h/时,声带没有振动,因而这个音是 清辅音,其他音都是浊辅音。
- 2. 教师示范发音,分析发音特点。学生认真听并体会教师的发音,同时把手放在声带上,感受自 己发辅音时声带是否振动。下面呈现的是本单元学习的八个辅音的发音要领,供教师参考。

音素	发音要领		
/h/(清辅音)	气流从口腔逸出时不受阻碍,只是在通过声门时形成轻微的摩擦。		
/r/(浊辅音)	舌尖向上齿龈接近,微微上翘,舌身前部微凹,双唇微突出。		

音素	发音要领
/l/(浊辅音)	舌尖紧抵上齿龈,舌前端向硬腭抬起,气流从舌的两侧逸出。
	鼻音发音的共同特点:软腭下垂,口腔通道完全阻塞,气流从鼻腔出来。
/m/, /n/, /ŋ/	发/m/时,双唇紧闭,舌身平放于口腔之中;发/n/时,舌尖紧贴上齿龈,形成阻
(浊辅音)	碍,双唇不闭;发/ŋ/时,嘴张得比/n/大一些,舌后部用力向软腭上靠,软腭下
	垂,堵住口腔通道,使气流从鼻腔逸出。
	/w/只用在元音的前面。发这个音时,双唇收圆,舌头做出发/ʊ/的姿势,然后立
	即转到发后续元音的部位。
/w/, /j/	/j/同样只用在元音的前面。发/j/时,舌头做出发/n/的姿势,然后立即转到发后
(浊辅音)	续元音的部位,扁唇。舌前向硬腭抬起,气流从抬起的舌身与硬腭通过。
	/w/和/j/可放在元音前,具有辅音的特征;另一方面,发这两个音时气流在口腔
	没有受到阻碍,具有元音的特征,因而也被称为半元音。

<mark>教学提示:</mark>在教学本单元的辅音音素时,教师需要认识到一部分学生可能存在发音困难的问题。由 于受到地域方言等的影响,有的学生可能很难分辨一些相似音,比如/l/和/n/、/r/和/l/、/n/和/n/等; 还有的学生可能习惯性将辅音读得过重或不自觉地在辅音后增加元音,比如把/h/读成"喝"、把/m/ 读成"么"等。针对这些问题,教师一方面应给予耐心的指导与示范,另一方面要有意识地利用各 种教学环节,为学生提供更多朗读和操练机会,坚持不懈地帮助学生提高发音的准确性和口头表达 的流利度。

- 3. 教师再次播放活动1的录音,让学生跟读。学生跟读时,教师应提醒他们注意自己的发音是否 符合这些音的发音要点。
- 4. 对于学生容易发错的音,需要多设计练习,让学生巩固正确发音。如给学生呈现下面成对的 词,教师示范读音,让学生跟读。学生熟悉后,可开展听辨音的小游戏,即教师读成对单词中的一个 单词,学生指出听到的单词是哪一个。

line — nine lead — need light — night low — know sin — sing thin — thing win — wing ran — rang vet — wet vest — west rock — lock read — lead

活动2 ------

- 1. 听对话,感知语调特点。在学生听活动2的录音前,教师设计几个问题,如"这个对话用了几 种语调?""这些语调听起来有什么特点?",让学生带着问题听录音。
- 2. 了解语调的特点和功能。前面语音知识部分已详细介绍了语调的核心内容。对于初学者,教师 只需要给学生简要介绍语调的基本意义和功能,如降调和升调是英语最基本的语调,两种语调各自表 达的核心意义是什么,以及各用在什么类型的句子中。

教师再次播放活动2的录音,让学生跟读模仿。教师提醒学生:语调一般体现在句子最后一个重

读单词的重读音节上。这个幽默对话只有第一个问句是一般疑问句,用升调,其他三个问句是特殊疑 问句,用降调。

特殊疑问句和一般疑问句同为问句,为什么特殊疑问句一般用降调,而一般疑问句用升调?这 是因为决定语调的不是标点符号,而是说话者的预设。如果预设是确定的,则用降调。说话人使用特 殊疑问句,表明说话人确定想从对方那里得到信息,如想知道地点就用where,想知道时间就用when 等。而说话人使用一般疑问句,表明说话人的预设是不确定的,希望得到对方肯定或否定的确认。

3. 语调巩固训练。教师可补充一些情境丰富的对话或儿童诗歌,让学生练习语调。例如:

Papa: Little / Johnny?

Johnny: \Yes, \Papa.

Papa: Eating / candies?

Johnny: \ No, \ Papa.

Papa: Telling a / lie?

Johnny: \Sorry, \Papa.

这个简短的父子对话用了不同的语调,爸爸用的升调表示疑问,而儿子用的降调则表示肯定,最 后爸爸还是委婉地点破儿子的谎言, 儿子觉得不好意思并真诚地道歉。教师可让学生表演这个对话, 把父子之间不同的语气和语调表演出来。



内容分析

文本分析:本单元示范对话部分展示的是主人公Teng Fei和Peter为给双胞胎姐妹Emma和Ella准 备生日惊喜派对,到商店购物的情境。对话在Teng Fei、Peter与售货员之间展开。对话呈现了购物 时一些常用的表达。例如,售货员招呼顾客的用语 "Can I help you?" 和顾客的应答 "Yes, please."; 售货员向顾客推销的表达 "We have a sale today ... It comes with some candles."; 售货员询问顾客购 买物品数量的问句 "How many / much ... do you want?"; 顾客询问价格的问句 "How much ...?"; 顾 客付款时的表达 "Here you are."; 购物结束时售货员与顾客的告別用语 "Thank you! Have a nice day!" "Thanks. You too."。Teng Fei和Peter采购了生日聚会需要的几样食物: 生日蛋糕、水果、酸奶 等。其中水果的价格是以重量计算,是 six yuan a kilo,而作为不可数名词的 yogurt是以瓶为单位计 算,价格是five yuan a bottle,这些都是日常购物中常使用的计价方法和表达法。对话体现了真实自然 的购物场景和完整丰富的交际语言,为学生使用英语进行日常购物提供了示范。

活动设计:活动2a-2e是包含听、读、说等技能训练的任务链。活动2a让学生听后填写常用的 交际用语,一方面能提高他们的听力理解能力,另一方面有助于提升他们关注语用的意识,即如何礼 貌地回应对方的话语。活动2b采用表格的形式,帮助学生梳理对话中有关物品名称、价格和数量的信 息,并计算这几样食物花费的总价。该对话体现了Teng Fei和Peter对物品价格的关注,并能根据购物 需要理性消费,自然融入了对学生财商意识的培养。2c是基于对话语篇的角色扮演活动,学生需要回

顾前面语音板块介绍的句子语调的朗读技巧,在模仿对话时注意采用合适的语调。活动2d和2e是口 头输出环节,活动2d让学生制作一份购物清单,为筹备生日聚会作准备。该活动首先让学生将物品分 类列人购物清单,然后思考生日聚会还需采购哪些物品,一并列人到清单里。列购物清单是日常生活 中的常见活动,目的是明确购物目的,且能节省时间,提高效率,还可以避免不必要的计划外消费。 另外,此活动可为2e的口语输出活动作好词汇上的准备。活动2e提供了对话的开头,学生可以运用 前面所学的购物语言和有关物品数量和价格的表达法,模拟购物对话,该活动可以考查学生的综合语 言表达能力。

学习目标

- 能够听录音记录购物对话中典型的日常交际用语。
- 📂 能够列购物清单,并运用常见购物用语开展模拟真实场景的购物对话,完成自己的 购物计划。
- 能够运用正确的语音和语调朗读和表演购物对话。
- 能够在生活中关注商品价格,在购物时树立节俭意识和一定的财商意识。

教学建议

- 1. 听录音,补全对话
- (1) 教师引导学生观察2a对话的配图,让学生预测对话的语境,并让学生进行头脑风暴活动,进 一步预测对话会用到的词汇,如birthday cake、how much、sale、total等。
- (2)听录音,完成活动2a。听录音前,教师可以把所填部分的上句或上下句呈现出来,让学生预 测对话中会用什么表达。接着,教师播放录音,学生补全对话。听前教师提出几个问题,让学生带着 问题听对话。例如:
 - Where are the people?
 - What are they talking about?
 - Are they buying a birthday cake? Why are they buying it?
 - 2. 阅读对话, 梳理信息
- (1)快速读对话,填写活动2b的表格。学生完成后,教师提供关键句型,让学生两人一组,通过 问答形式核对答案。例如:

S1: What do they buy?

S2: They buy ...

S1: How much is it / are they?

S2: It's / They're ...

S1: How many ... do they buy?

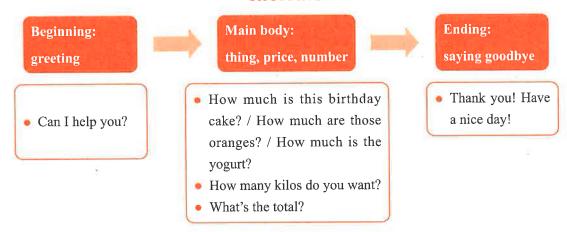
S2: They buy ...

S1: How much are they in total?

S2: They're ... in total.

(2) 梳理购物对话语言。教师引导学生读对话,找出购物对话中用到的典型表达,如双方如何 开启、推进、结束对话。教师将对话的主要组成部分写在黑板上,让学生找到各部分的关键表达。

SHOPPING



教师让学生关注购物语境中比较关键的两个问句,即"How much ...?"和"How many ...?",思考这两个问句的用法和意义有什么不同。教师可以提供更多例句。例如:

A: How much water / milk do you drink every day?

B: Three or four bottles.

A: How much is this bottle of water / milk?

B: It's three / five yuan.

A: How many apples / pears do you need?

B: Three kilos.

A: How much are these apples / pcars?

B: Twenty yuan in total.

接着, 教师和学生一起总结这两个问句的用法和意义。如下所示:

- "How many …?"和 "How much …?"都可以问数量,不同的是,how many问的是可数名词的数量,how much问的是不可数名词的数量,这与many和much后接不同类型的名词的规则一致。
- how much 可以用来问物品的价格,实际上,这里省略了不可数名词 money,即"How much (money)…?"。
- 用 "How much ...?" 问价格时,问句中be动词的单复数取决于句子中的主语。如果主语是单数,则用is;如果是复数,则用are,如"How much is this card?""How much are these cards?"。

教师可提醒学生不用死记这些规则,关键是多用多练,培养语感。

3. 操练对话, 分角色扮演

学生再次听录音,并逐句跟读模仿录音中的对话,注意句子中哪些词应该重读,哪里可以稍作停顿,哪里可以连读,用什么语调等。在学生进行角色扮演前,需要给学生充足时间操练。为了加强操练的趣味性,可以采用游戏的方式,如"逐渐消失的对话"(disappearing dialogue),该游戏还能锻炼学生根据语境完成对话的能力。学生操练熟练后,再将学生分组,分别扮演对话中的不同角色表演对话,完成2c的口语输出活动。

4. 口语输出

(1)制作购物单。教师展示鸡蛋、面条、气球等物品的图片,并提问"What is it?",以此来复习旧单词,导入新单词。教师接着问"Would you like to buy these things for a birthday party? If so, what group do they belong to?",让学生将物品分类,填入2d的购物单中。教师还应提醒学生补充其他需要的东西,一并填入购物单中。

- (2)复习购物用语。教师把前面梳理的购物用语呈现给学生,并根据学生情况适当补充其他常见 的购物表达,然后让学生按说话人的不同角色将这些表达分类,如下所示:
 - Can I help you? / What can I do for you? / Good morning. Welcome to our store!
 - I'm looking for ...
 - Could you please bring me ...? / May I have ...? / Please give me ...
 - Anything else? / Would you like anything else?
 - How about this one?
 - Do you have this in a bigger size?
 - How much is this / are these?
 - How many / much ... do you want / need?
 - Is this on sale? / Do you have anything cheaper?
 - This one is on sale right now.
 - Wow, that's cheap / expensive!
 - I'll take it.
 - Here you are.
 - It's / They're ... (price) each / a kilo. / The total is ... (price).
 - Scan the QR code here, please.
 - That's all. Thank you for your help.
 - Thank you! Have a nice day!

Shop Assistant	Custome	er
Can I help you?	I'm looking for	G.
	*	

(3)分角色表演购物对话。学生两人一组,一名学生为商店店员,另一名学生为顾客,依据2d中 完成的购物清单,参照上面分组的购物表达,表演对话。教师巡视全班并提供必要的帮助,最后请几 组学生为全班展示对话。为了让其他学生认真听,教师可以在学生表演对话之前提出要求,如"What would your classmates like to buy? How much are the things in total? Please note down the items and total price."。几组对话展示完毕,教师可以和学生一起对他们的表现作出点评。

Grammar Focus

🔘 内容分析

该单元语法板块的主要内容是复习本册出现的特殊疑问句。活动3a以问答形式呈现了本单元学习 的几个特殊疑问句及其回答,要求学生观察这些句式,并重点关注特殊疑问词的用法。活动3b是单句 层面的练习,让学生先用特殊疑问词补全问句,再将问句与答语匹配,目的是让他们掌握不同特殊疑 问词的含义和用法。活动3c让学生阅读短文,并在文中找出莎士比亚和南丁格尔的生日,复习日期的 表达法。该短文介绍了这两位名人的生日和这两个日期的特殊意义,将单元话题从身边的人的生日拓 展到特殊的节日,开阔学生的文化视野。活动3d是口头输出活动,要求学生进一步谈论一些特殊的节 口和日期,包括在这些日期的庆祝活动,从而巩固本单元所学目标语言,并将生日的含义从个体扩大 到社会生活中有特殊意义的日子,如国庆节、党的生日、建军节、建校日等。

学习目标

- 能够理解和辨析特殊疑问词 when、where、what、who、why、how、how old、how much / many 等所表达的意义。
- 能够运用上述特殊疑问词引导的特殊疑问句询问日期、年龄、数量、价格等信息, 并能正确回答。
- 🔪 能够了解和探究中西方重要纪念日,包括其意义和庆祝方式。

教学建议

- 1. 探究特殊疑问句的形式特点和所表达的意义
- (1)教师让学生浏览活动3a中的句子,圈出疑问词。接着,教师让学生思考这些问句询问的是哪 些方面的信息。例如:
 - T: What does the first question ask about?
 - S: It asks about the date.
- (2) 教师让学生说出更多特殊疑问句,并将其写在黑板上。教师引导学生观察这些问句,并提出 如下问题让学生思考:
 - 什么是特殊疑问句? 它和一般疑问句有什么区别?
 - 特殊疑问句是怎样构成的?
 - 常见的特殊疑问词有哪些?它们分别对什么信息提问?
 - 如何回答特殊疑问句?
 - 特殊疑问句一般用什么语调?

教师先让学生讨论这些问题,然后和学生一起探讨特殊疑问句的结构特点、用法和意义,总结 如下:

- 特殊疑问句是指用特殊疑问词提问的问句,因多数特殊疑问词以wh-开头,不少语法书把特殊 疑问句称为wh-问句。一般疑问句是指用Yes或者No回答的问句,也被称作Yes/No问句。
- 特殊疑问句由"特殊疑问词+助动词+主语+谓语动词"构成。可以看出,该句子要用疑问句 语序。需要注意的是,如果特殊疑问词在句子中作主语,就不用疑问句语序。比较:

Who do you want to invite?

Who wants to go shopping with me?

• 常见的特殊疑问词有 who、what、where、when、why、whose、which、how等,此外,还有由 这些特殊疑问词组成的特殊疑问词短语,如what colour、what class、what time、how old、how many、 how much等。关于这些特殊疑问词或短语提问的信息,教师可以作为课后作业让学生自行总结。 例如:

疑问词	询问信息	例句
who	people	Who is your English teacher?
what		
what time		
(***)		

- 特殊疑问句不能用yes或no来回答,要根据特殊疑问词所询问的信息来回答。
- 特殊疑问句一般用降调,降调放在句末的重读音节上。

2. 巩固特殊疑问句的用法

教师让学生快速浏览活动3b的要求、框内疑问词和下面的问句及答语。学生独立完成活动3b. 然后两人一组以问答的形式核对答案。根据学生完成情况,教师适当指导学生如何选择特殊疑问词。

3. 复习日期表达法

- (1)学生默读活动3c的短文,并按照活动要求将文中的生日和节日日期画线。完成后,全班核对 答案。
- (2) 教师询问学生对莎士比亚和南丁格尔的了解情况,根据学生的反馈,可适当补充两位伟人的 信息。在此基础上,还可以让学生说出其他与伟人生日相关的节日或纪念日。

4. 创编对话,实践运用

(1)教师准备一些简要资料,或者提前将开放性活动3d布置成作业,鼓励学生查阅信息,了解 3d中所列节日的相关信息,如CPC Founding Day(中国共产党建党纪念日)、PLA Day(中国人民解 放军建军节)、School Founding Day(建校日),也可以鼓励学生增加更多的特殊日期,并用表格形式 呈现。

Special Days	Date	Activities
National Day		
CPC Founding Day		
PLA Day		
School Founding Day		
3.00		

(2)根据表格内容,学生两人一组开展对话练习。待学生熟练后,教师请几组学生为全班展示对话。师生共同就对话的内容、语言的准确性、语音语调等方面作出评价。

Section B

How do you make your birthday meaningful?



② 内容分析

文本分析:该部分的阅读文本是生日主题论坛上的两篇发帖,两篇帖子都围绕"生日庆祝"这一主题展开。该语篇在版式设计方面具备新媒体语篇的一些典型特征,比如,包含折叠界面、发帖人的姓名、发帖时间和日期等典型元素。在内容方面,两篇帖子都介绍了主人公的生日日期和庆祝生日的方式,帖子最后邀请读者分享庆祝生日的有意义方式。这两个语篇分别体现出不同文化背景下人们庆祝生日的传统习俗。第一个发帖人Yu Xiaoming过生日吃长寿面和鸡蛋,这是中国人庆祝生日的传统方式。跟帖人 Judy Clark过生日时吃蛋糕、唱生日歌、许愿、吹蜡烛,这是西方国家过生日的传统方式。这两位发帖人还分享了自己个性化的庆祝方式,例如,Xiaoming每年生日都在村里的大树前照家庭合影,今年他想做一件不一样的事——在生日这天种一棵树,他希望与小树一同成长。每年生日,Judy的母亲都为她做最爱的巧克力蛋糕,她的父亲在门框上刻上她的身高变化。尽管世界各地庆祝生日的方式不同,但生日庆祝背后都蕴含着大家相同的情感追求:表达祝福和爱,纪念成长。这正是我们庆祝生日的意义所在。Judy在帖子的最后提到:"Next time, I also want to do something different. Any good ideas?",表达了她也想在生日那天做点不一样的又有意义的事情,同时请求大家为她提供一些好的建议。这不仅呼应了该板块的核心问题"How do you make your birthday meaningful?",同时也为后续的写作任务提供了语境关联。语篇同时也传递了更深层次的理念:世界文化是多元的,但人类的情感是共通的,这些共通的情感为不同文化背景下人们互相理解和沟通创造了基础。

活动设计:该板块包含两条任务链,活动1a—1d是阅读任务链,活动2a—2b是写作任务链,阅读任务链是后面写作任务链的基础。活动1a是读前环节,此处列举了中外庆祝生日的常见活动,为下面的阅读活动铺垫话题词汇。活动1b—1d是阅读理解环节。活动1b让学生读后选择文章大意,考查

学生对语篇的整体理解和概括能力。活动1c通过表格的形式帮助学生梳理两位少年的生日庆祝活动, 考查他们对语篇重点细节信息的获取能力。活动1d的前四个问题针对语篇细节信息,最后一个是开放 性问题,要求学生在理解语篇的基础上提供更多有意义的庆祝生日的方式,回应Judy并给她提建议。 该问题有助于学生提高创新思维能力,同时为下面的写作任务提供要点和思路。

写作任务链分为两个步骤。活动2a将写作内容要点以思维导图的形式呈现,要求学生结合自身情 况梳理与生日庆祝相关的信息。活动2b提供了回帖的结构框架与半开放式的语言支架。学生可以结合 活动2a列出的信息,完成活动2b,最后形成一篇完整的回帖。

学习目标

- ▶ 能够在把握网络发帖的文体特征和语言特点基础上,理解帖子主要信息,体会发帖 人表达的情感意义,了解庆祝生日的不同方式。
- 📂 能够通过阅读帖子理解生日庆祝活动背后的含义,体会不同地区的生日文化,并学 会欣赏文化差异性,理解文化的共通性。
- 📂 能够通过思维导图整理写作要点,做好写作准备,并能够通过回帖的方式向对方提 供如何过有意义的生日的建议,同时分享自己庆祝生日的方式。

教学建议

1. 读前活动

- (1)教师展示自己或家人过生日时的一些照片或视频,让学生说出照片或视频中一些生日庆祝活 动,利用此环节讲授一些新词或短语,如long noodles、a symbol of long life、make a wish、blow out、 meaningful等。
 - (2) 学生在活动 la 中勾出自己过生日时做过的活动,然后两人一组交流答案。例如:
 - S1: What activities do you do on your birthday?
 - S2: I ... What about you?

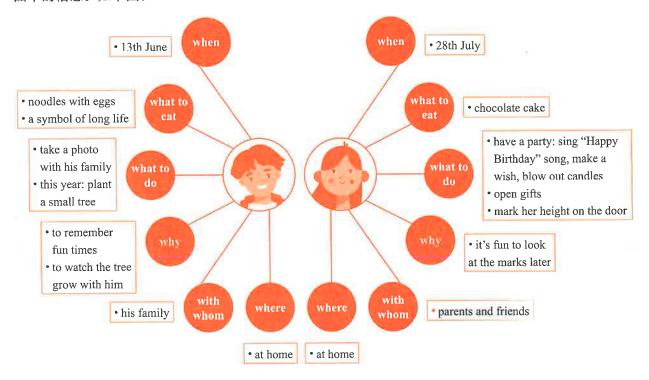
S1: ...

2. 阅读理解

- (1)让学生观察文章插图和版式特点,预测文章内容。教师可以提问让学生讨论。例如:
 - What is the topic of this forum?
 - Look at the two passages. Where can you see them, in a magazine or on the internet?
 - Who posted the posts? Are they from different countries? Why do you think so?
 - What is the date and time of the posts?
- (2)快速阅读,了解帖子大意。教师让学生快速浏览活动1b的要求和选项,然后通读全文,选出 两篇帖子的中心思想,准确把握语篇大意。核对答案时,教师可向学生说明:虽然帖子中都提到了跟 who 和 where 相关的信息,但这些只是辅助信息,主要内容还是跟 how 有关,即发帖人主要讲述如何

庆祝生日。

(3) 再次阅读, 抓住关键细节。学生细读文章, 关注发帖人生日日期和庆祝生日的方式, 然后填 写活动1c的表格,并回答活动1d的前四个问题。教师也可以采用思维导图形式,让学生补全思维导 图中的信息。如下图:



核对答案时,教师先采用问答形式与一位学生完成一两处信息的填空,作为示范,然后请几组学 生利用思维导图中的特殊疑问词与同伴进行问答,教师把学生的回答填到思维导图中。例如:

- T: When is Yu Xiaoming's birthday?
- S: His birthday is on 13th June.
- T: What does he usually eat on his birthday?
- S: He usually eats long noodles with eggs.

完成思维导图后,教师可引导学生对比中西方生日文化的不同,例如,中国主人公通过吃长寿 面、吃鸡蛋、拍照和种树来庆祝生口,而外国孩子通过举办派对、吃生日蛋糕、吹蜡烛、拆礼物等方 式庆祝生日。随着文化交流的影响,吃生日蛋糕这种庆祝方式在许多国家和地区都很普遍,然而在不 同国家和地区还有各种各样的庆生方式。因此,教师可鼓励学生课后搜集相关信息,积累与活动相关 的表达,为后续的写作或项目活动作准备。

- (4) 学生听录音并跟读, 然后大声朗读课文。教师也可让学生采用与同伴互读的方式, 即两人一 组,一名学生朗读,另一名学生听,听到对方读得不准确的地方及时纠正,一人读完后互换角色。同 伴互读互助, 共同进步。
- (5)复述文本内容。教师可让学生尝试复述 Yu Xiaoming 和 Judy Clark 的帖子,提醒学生以上面的 思维导图为语言支架,回顾文章大意,创造性地使用重点语块组建新句子,形成一段有逻辑的表述。 例如:

Yu Xiaoming's birthday is on 13 June. He always has long noodles with eggs on his birthday because long noodles are a symbol of long life. His family takes a photo ...

<mark>教学提示:</mark>复述是非常实用的教学活动,学生不仅需要理解复述的内容,还要将语言组织成语义清 楚、连贯,逻辑顺畅的短文。教师在听力、对话、阅读教学后均可以采用这个活动,让学生复述听 力对话、示范对话或阅读语篇的主要内容。如果对话或语篇是以第一人称讲述,复述时可变换为第 三人称,这种在语境中训练人称变化的方式比机械地重复语法规则更有意义,也更有效。

(6)关注语篇衔接。教师可针对阅读文本中的一些有特点的句式结构设计问题,以培养学生的语 篇意识。例如,教师让学生再次读第一个帖子,同时思考: on that day、every year、this year为什么放 在句子开头?如果放在句子末尾,衔接的效果是否会受影响?教师先让学生说出自己的看法,然后与 学生一起分析: on that day放在句首,它与上一句 on 13 June衔接更紧密,因其指代 on 13 June;如果 放在句末,它会影响两处的衔接,一是影响与上一句 on 13 June 的衔接,另一处是影响此句中 birthday noodles with eggs与下一句long noodles的衔接。同理,every year和this year放在句子开头更合适,除 了衔接因素,这些表时间的短语放在句首还有对比和排比修辞的效果。

关于第二个帖子,教师可以提问:帖子第一句的功能是什么?帖子中的主要内容是举办生日聚 会,生日聚会的细节叙述按什么逻辑组织?衔接标记词有哪些?在学生讨论并分享自己的看法后,教 师可以简要总结:帖子第一句是对前面发帖人过生日的方式的评价,表示这是一个回应的帖子。生日 聚会的细节是按时间顺序组织的,标记词有 and then、next等。教师可建议学生阅读时关注语篇内部 的句子衔接,这不仅能提高学生的阅读技能,还对学生写作时如何组织句子有帮助。

3. 读后活动

探讨单元主题意义。结合两个帖子中呈现的中外学生庆祝生日的不同方式,教师可以设计一些开 放性问题,和学生一起探讨。例如:

- Do you think Yu Xiaoming's and Judy's birthdays are meaningful?
- Can you give Judy some ideas about how to spend a meaningful birthday?
- Do you think your birthdays are meaningful? Why?
- Can you share a story about your most meaningful birthday?
- What do you want to do to make your birthday more meaningful?

教师需要给予学生充足的时间独立思考问题,再让他们以小组为单位讨论分享。教师也需要保持开 放的态度,让学生充分表达自己的想法,并引导学生学会倾听与分享。最后教师总结,对学生有创意且 积极向上的想法给予肯定和鼓励,通过讨论和总结,让学生对如何有意义地庆祝生日有更深刻的理解。

4. 写作准备

- (1) 学生独立完成活动 2a 的思维导图,针对生日庆祝话题,回答 when、what to prepare、where to go、with whom、what to do、how I feel 六个核心问题。
 - (2) 学生完成2a后, 教师可让他们与同伴互相问答, 还可以互相纠错或提建议。
 - (3) 教师引导学生讨论 "What do you usually do on your birthday? What activities can you do to make

your birthday meaningful or interesting?",并把学生谈到的活动写在黑板上。接着,教师让学生再次寻读活动1b的两篇帖子,找到与生日庆祝相关的语言表达,教师把这些语言表达也写在黑板上,或用课件呈现,让学生在写作时参考。例如:

Birthday activity	Key sentence structure
buy or make a birthday cake	It's a good idea to on your birthday.
put up balloons	My birthday is on
have noodles with eggs	On that day, I always eat
invite close friends to my home	9 I love / It's my favourite
sing songs / dance	Every year, my family and I
play fun games	First, Next, Then,
share a birthday cake	It's fun to
read birthday cards from friends	But this year, I want to
• watch movies	

视学生情况,教师还可以简单分析一篇好文章的特点。以第一篇帖子为例,这篇帖子句式比较丰富,帖子中有短句、有长句,长短句交错;有的句子以主语开头,有的句子以状语开头,且主语比较多样,如 my birthdays、long noodles、my family and I、I等;另外,帖子中还有不少细节描述。这些方法可以让写作变得生动,学生在写作时可以借鉴。

5. 完成写作

- (1)完成初稿。教师让学生独立完成2b的写作任务,提醒学生充分利用2a中思维导图的信息,还有黑板上的更多语言表达和关键句型,组成一篇回帖,谈论自己的生日庆祝方式。教师还应提醒学生使用不同句式,避免句式过于单一。
- (2)小组评价。学生完成后,让学生四人一组分享自己的作品,小组成员给予评价及修改意见。 教师应引导学生从文章的内容、结构、语言、语法、书写等方面进行评价。
 - (3)修改初稿。学生根据组内成员意见修改个人作品,完善初稿。
- (4)展示交流。每小组推选一份作品进行展示,小组之间进行评价,教师给出完善意见。学生根据收集的意见再次修改自己的习作。最后,教师将学生完善后的习作放在个人学习档案袋内,让全班传阅欣赏,或张贴在教室内,让大家欣赏交流。

🚨 拓展活动: 生日大不同

活动形式: 小组活动

活动目的:调查不同国家的生日习俗,复习生日庆祝活动的表达法,促进读后语言生成,同时归纳生日文化信息,提升文化意识,促进学生对多元文化的理解。

活动步骤:

(1)学生以小组为单位查找资料,调查不同国家的生日习俗,并提供不同生日习俗背后的文化意义。学生可先在组内完成如下的信息表,作为汇报提纲。

(2) 各组整合好信息后,选出一名代表向全班汇报。

Country	Activity	Meaning
China		_
America		
France		
Japan		



🥨 内容分析

本单元的项目活动是让学生策划一场集体生日会。活动3a让学生运用本单元的目标语言,即 when 引导的特殊疑问句,调查组内同学的生日,并在月份栏里记录人名和日期。活动3b让学生统计 在本月出生的同学。活动3c通过问题引导学生讨论如何策划一场有意义的集体生日。活动3d是学生 汇报方案和评选的环节,可以考查学生的综合语言运用能力,评选活动也是对学生汇报的方案进行反 馈,帮助学生反思方案的合理性和需要改进的地方,提高他们的思辨能力。

学习目标

- 📂 能够准确运用本单元的核心句型调查他人的生日日期,熟练使用12个月份的词汇及 序数词表述自己和他人的生日。
- 📂 能够积极参与小组合作,设计有意义、有创意的生日庆祝方案,包括时间、地点、 人员、庆祝方式等。
- 能够通过调查同学的生日并组织策划集体生日活动,增强同学之间的理解和友谊。

教学建议

1. 热身活动

教师引导学生复习十二个月份单词及需要特殊记忆的序数词,巩固日期表达法,可预先准备正反 面中英文单词卡,采用随机问答的方式练习。教师随机抽出某个月份的汉字卡片,随机选一名学生, 让该学生说出该月份的英文名称,教师随后出示背面的正确答案。需要注意的是,比较特殊的序数词 1st、2nd、3rd、11th、12th、13th、21st、22nd、23rd、31st要反复操练多次,教师还要特别关注之前 易犯错的学生,多给他们机会练习。

2. 调查生日日期

教师将学生分组,让小组成员明确各自的角色,如调查员、记录员、设计员、汇报员等。调查员 询问组内成员的生日日期,记录员将生日信息填入3a所示年历中,并标注成员姓名。该步骤能帮助学 生了解彼此,加深友谊。接着,小组根据调查结果确定集体过生日的成员,完成活动3b。

3. 制作汇报方案

- (1) 搜集信息。学生以小组为单位,讨论活动3c的问题,并将达成一致意见的讨论结果记录下 来,包括聚会的时间、地点、邀请名单,以及聚会上的游戏或有意义的活动等。为了让生日庆祝更有 仪式感,各小组还可以制作生日邀请卡片。生日邀请卡的制作可参考本单元英文部分的范例。
- (2)梳理信息。小组合作组织语言,汇总成一篇小短文,设计员负责设计海报,最后全组共同讨 论,修改并完善各部分内容,统一语言风格和体例。

4. 汇报方案

各小组成员在课堂上合作演示,完成项目活动3d。为了鼓励更多学生参与,教师可以设置不同 类别的多种奖项,如"最受欢迎提案"(the most popular proposal)、"最有创意提案"(the most creative proposal)、"最佳表现奖"(the best performance)等等。

Reflecting

🥨 内容分析

本单元反思板块从语言功能、主题内容和意义等维度设计问题,让学生反思的主要内容有:是否 能用英语表达日期、是否能用英语进行购物、是否能描述庆祝生日的方式、是否能表述如何过生日更 有意义。这些问题的目的是引导学生回顾本单元所学内容,并反思自己的学习体验和效果,提升对主 题意义的理解。

本单元的价值引领句是 "Every birthday is a gift of life.", 意思是 "每个生日都是生命的馈赠。"这 句话揭示了本单元的主题意义: 生日不仅意味着欢乐的聚会、美味的食物或精美的礼物, 生日还是生 命的纪念日,它提醒我们要珍视生日,同时也要珍惜生命。本单元希望学生通过讨论庆祝生日的方 式,感受庆祝仪式背后亲朋好友的祝福与爱,在特殊的日子收获爱心和成长,同时学会关爱身边的 人, 关注身边人的生日, 并对他们的爱心存感恩。

教学建议

1. 教师引导学生总结本单元学习的日期表达法,包括月份的单词和表达日期的序数词。教师可先 让学生口头说出来,然后再写下来。例如:

The months of the year in order are:	
• To number things in a series, we can use ordinal numbers. For example,	

2	教师引导学生总结特殊疑问词用法,可让学生完成下面的句子填空。		
	To ask questions about age, we can use how old. For example, How old are you?		
0	To ask questions about, we can use		
	For example,		
3.	教师引导学生复习购物的英语表达。		
0	When a shop assistant greets you, he / she could say "Can I help you?"		
0	When you want to know the price of an item, you could ask "?"		
0	When the shop assistant wants to know the quantity you want to buy, he / she could ask "?"		
0	I know other shopping expressions:		
4.	教师引导学生反思过生日的意义和怎样有意义地庆祝生日,并让他们用自己的语言表达出来。		
0	I think we celebrate birthdays because		
0	To make our birthdays meaningful, we can		

三、课文注释

1. It's 85 yuan, and it comes with some candles. 它(生日蛋糕)85元,还赠送一些蜡烛。

此句中介词with表示"伴随;和·····一起",与come一起组成短语come with,表示"附送;包 含"的意思。例如:

You don't need to order soup because your chicken comes with one. 您不用点汤,因为您(点)的鸡 肉附送一份(汤)。

This coat comes with a belt. 这件大衣配有腰带。

2. What's the total? 总价是多少?

根据对话的上下文,我们可以推测出the total指的是总价格。total在这里作名词,意为"总数; 总额"。例如:

The school has a total of 845 students. 这个学校总共有845 名学生。

Sam has lived in China for seven years in total. 萨姆总共在中国待了七年。

total还可以作形容词,放在名词前进行修饰,意为"总的;全体的"。例如:

the total weight 总重量

the total number 总数量

3. Next time, I also want to do something different. 下一次过生日时,我也想做些不同的事情。

句中something是不定代词,表示不明确指代的人或事。常用的不定代词还有everything、 anything, somebody (someone), anybody (anyone), everybody (everyone), nobody (no one), nothing等。当形容词修饰不定代词时,形容词放在不定代词后面。例如:

Is there anything new in today's newspaper? 今天的报纸上有新的内容吗?

You can find something interesting in this small park. 在这个小公园里你能找一些有趣的东西。

4. Any good ideas? (你有)什么好主意吗?

这是一个省略句, 完整句是 "Do you have any good ideas?"。在英语口语中, 人们常把句子的某 些部分省略,使语言更加简洁。例如:

Time to go. (= It's time to go.) 该走了。

Glad to see you. (= I'm glad to see you.) 很高兴见到你。

Who's next? (= Who is next?) 下一个是谁?

This way, please. (= Come this way, please.) 这边请。

Unit 7 Happy Birthday!

The theme of this unit is birthdays: Everybody has one! Students will learn how to talk about birthdays, using the months of the year and ordinal numbers to express dates. They will also learn how to ask about birthdays, moving on to how to plan and buy things for a birthday party. They will revise question words and the form of wh-questions and then look at other special dates in the national and international calendar. After discussing how we celebrate and make our birthdays meaningful, and learning different customs in different countries, they will co-ordinate and organize their own joint birthday events.

Opening Page

Suggested Answers (Look and share)

- 1. The people are celebrating a birthday.
- 2. It's the girl's birthday.
- 3. I usually have a meal with some parents to celebrate my birthday.

Section A

	0	Я	
	n		

Sing the Year

Teach students this chant / song to help them remember the months of the year.

January, February, March, April,

May, June, July,

August, September,

October, November,

December; the year goes by.

How time flies! How time flies!

Repeat the song / chant multiple times, for example, at the start of each lesson. Vary the song by singing it quietly, loudly, slowly, quickly, etc.

Teaching Tip

There are many other month chants and rhymes online, so you can also choose one you like to play to students.

Which months do you like?			
I like January!	I like June!		
February is nice.	April is nice.		
March is fine.	May is fine.		
But January is festival time.	But June is holiday time.		
I like September!	I like December!		
July is nice.	October is nice.		
August is fine.	November is fine.		
But September is birthday time.	But December is party time.		

	Print or write out the months of the year and the ordinal numbers on pieces of paper. Put students into small groups and have them race to put them in the correct order. Use a stopwatch to see which group is the quickest. Repeat with the ordinal numbers written in words (first to thirty-first) on pieces of paper, and repeat the game.
-	Days in Each Month
Teaching Tip	In the UK and US, most children are taught a poem to help them remember how many days there are in each month: Thirty days has September,
	April, June and November, All the rest have thirty-one,
	Except February, twenty-eight days clear, And twenty-nine in each leap year.
_	A "leap year" happens every four years, where an extra day is added to the month of February. An astronomical year lasts slightly less than 365 1/4 days, so adding a day to February every four years balances this out.
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

1b			
Teaching Tip	Ordinal Numbers Write the ordinal numbers (1st–31st) on the board. Circle or underline the endings of the numbers. Encourage students to notice the different endings as follows, and also how to write the short forms. 1st, 21st, 31st end in "-st" 2nd, 22nd end in "-nd" 3rd, 23rd end in "-rd"		
Culture Note	Writing and Saying Dates in BrE and AmE In British English, people tend to say and write the date first, then the month. When speaking, people would say "My birthday is the second of August." When writing, people often leave out the prepositions. For example, My birthday is 2nd August. The order for writing a full date is Day / Month / Year such as 21/08/2010.		
Answers	1. Helen B. 3rd December 2. Fu Xing C. 22nd August 3. Teng Fei's father D. 9th January 4. Ms Gao A. 12th June		

1c	4-
Culture Note	Gift Giving Gift giving for birthdays is very common and popular. The value and type of gift depends on who is giving and receiving. Common gifts in Western culture include chocolate, flowers, and food. With friends or work colleagues, the gift may not have great value, but may be something funny or something that the receiver likes. Birthday Cards Encourage a discussion about the photograph. Which elements do students recognize? Which do they not? What do they think of the birthday card? Birthday cards are very common in the West, and almost always accompany a gift. Why do students think people give cards to others at these times? What is on the front of the cards? What do people write inside? Do people buy or make the cards? Elicit some answers and reactions on the board. Then ask students what they would write in a card to a close friend or relative.
Suggested Answers	 Helen is 15 years old. Teng Fei can give his father a birthday card. Peter wants everyone to sing a song for Ms Gao's birthday and he wants to play his guitar.

1d	
Teaching Tip	Making Lines Repeat the line up activity with different criteria, for example, by month or date. For example, students line up with those born in January first, then February, etc. For students born in the same month, the date will count. Then students can line up based on their birth date, so someone born on the 1st goes first, etc.
Culture Note	Asking for Age In the West, asking someone's age, especially when you do not know them very well, is a cultural taboo, particularly with women. However, this only really applies with adults, and more and more so as they get older. Generally, the dynamics of the circumstances will dictate whether it is appropriate or not, e.g. if it is a formal or informal situation. If one has to ask someone's age, people often make the question more polite, for example, "Would you mind if I asked how old you are?" or "May I ask your age please?" By doing this, we are acknowledging that the person may not want to reveal how old they are, and giving the option to refuse if they wish.
Sample Conversation	S1: How old are you? S2: I'm thirteen. S1: When is your birthday? S2: It's on the 10th of August. S1: In which year were you born? S2: In 2012. S1: You are older than me. I will stand in front of you.

Optional Activity: What Would You Like for Your Birthday?

Purpose	To help students practise the target language correctly.	
Materials Required	Pens, paper.	

Procedure

1. Write the table on the board and ask students to copy it.

Name	Birthday	Gift
Ben	6th July	a video game

- 2. Write the conversation below on the board too. Practise it with one student and write the answers on the first line of the table on the board. Alternatively, have a student ask you the questions.
 - S1: When is your birthday?
 - S2: It's on
 - S1: What would you like for your birthday?
 - S2: I would like ______, please!
- 3. Have students mingle and fill in their tables by asking their classmates the questions. Make sure every student's details are recorded.
- 4. Elicit the answers on the board for all students. Ask students questions about the results: Which month has the most birthdays? What is the most popular gift?

ronunciation

1	
	Tongue Twisters
s s	/h/ Harry the hungry happily eats ham in his huge house.
	/r/ Round and round the rocks the red rabbit runs.
	/l/ Lovely little lions love licking lemons.
	/m/ My mum makes me muffins on Mondays.
Optional	/n/ Naughty Nina never naps at night.
Approach	/ŋ/ The ringing, swinging, singing singers sang winning songs.
	/w/ If two witches watch two watches, which witch would watch which watch?
	/j/ Jolly Jack and joyful Jill jumping down the jagged hill.
	Read the tongue twisters aloud to students, then have them repeat them several times before trying to write them down by ear.

Teaching Tip

Functions of Intonation
Falling intonation is when words gradually fall in tone to the end of the sentence. This is usually for these functions:
Comments or statements
Questions with "wh-" words
To express low energy emotions such as boredom

sentence. This is usually for these functions:

Questions with Yes / No answers

Teaching Tip

- When asking to clarify something
- To express high energy emotions such as happiness

Of course in natural speech, intonation will rise and fall sometimes in the same sentence, for example, when offering a choice, or reading a list.

Rising intonation is when words gradually rise in tone towards the end of the

Predicting

Teaching Tip

lead into a recording. Play the first part of the conversation up to when Peter says: "Let's go and buy something for the party." Then pause the recording. Ask students to guess what Peter and Teng Fei will buy for the party. Do they know all the words in English? Let students look up any words they do not know. Play the recording and see who was correct.

Having students try to predict what they are about to hear (or read) is a good way to

Ways to Ask the Price

There are several different ways to ask the price of something. Of course, it is always polite to add "please" when asking someone a price.

Culture Note

How much	is this / that / it, please? are these / those, please? does this / that / it cost, please? do these / those cost, please?		
What's	the price, please? the cost, please?		

Answers

Good idea; Yes, please; Sure; Here you are

Answers

Thing	Price	Number		
Birthday cake	85	1		
Oranges	six yuan a kilo	5		
Yogurt	five yuan a bottle	10		
Total: <u>165</u> yuan				

2c

Changing Intonation

Teaching Tip

Intonation is the rise and fall of the voice when speaking, especially as this affects the meaning of what is said. After role-playing the conversation, encourage students to role-play it again, but with different emotion. Model this with a student to show what it sounds like when the speaker is, for example, happy, sad, angry or annoyed. What is the difference in intonation?

100

Suggested Answers

Sample

Conversation

Shopping List			
Food	Drinks	Other things	
eggs	juice	balloons	
noodles	milk	candles	
apples	soft drinks	birthday hats	
chocolate	tea		
oizza			
candies			
cookies			
bread			
crisps / chips			

2e

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, please. How much are these cookies?

A: They are 9 yuan.

B: Great. I'll take two packs.

A: Here you are. What else would you like?

B: Do you have any balloons, please?

B. Do you have any bandons, please?

A: Yes, there they are. They are 3 yuan a pack. B: I need lots. I'll take three packs!

A: Anything else?

B: Hmm. Oh yes, the cake! Do you have any birthday cakes?

A: Yes, we have some over there.

B: That one's nice. How much is it?

A: It's 98 yuan.

B: OK, that will do nicely, thank you. How much in total, please?

A: 125 yuan, please.

Grammar Focus

3a

Answers When How old What How much How many

3h

Wh-Question Functions

Teaching Tip Write the question words on one side of the board and the functions on the other side,

then elicit from students which matches which:

		What	for particular inform	nation	
		Where	place		
		When	time		
		Why	reason		
Teaching Tip		Who / Whom	person	1	
5 8		Which	choosing from a selection		
		How	the way things are	the way people feel	
		How much / many	quantity		
	Ask students to write a question for each question word and ask it to a partner.				
	1. <u>When</u> is	s your mum's birthday?		F: It's on 15th July.	
	2. <u>How ma</u>	any ballons do you want?		D: I want 10.	
	3. <u>What</u> do	do you want for a birthday gift?		A: A new pair of shoes.	
A	4. <u>How old</u>	How old is your father?		G: He's 45 years old.	
Answers	5. How much are the birthday card and the doll?		H: 55 yuan.		
	6. <u>Who</u> do	6. Who do you celebrate your birthday with?		B: With my parents.	
	7. Where i	s Mrs Green from?		E: She's from Australia.	
	8. <u>Why</u> do	8. Why do people eat noodles?		C: To wish for a long life.	

3c

William Shakespeare (1564–1616) was an English playwright, poet and actor, and is widely considered the greatest writer in the English language. As well as poetry, he wrote 39 plays that have continually been performed around the world for over 400 years. They are classified as tragedies, comedies or histories. His influence on the English language is perhaps greater than any other writer, through introducing new words and phrases (over 1,700), but also by helping to standardize grammar and spelling, as his printed works spread and became popular.

Culture Note

Florence Nightingale (1820–1910) was an English social reformer who is considered the founder of modern nursing. She trained nurses during the Crimean War (1853–1856), where she significantly reduced death rates by raising nursing standards, for example by improved hygiene and cleanliness in hospitals. She is also known as "The Lady with the Lamp" from when she would visit injured soldiers at night to check on them.

Answers

23rd April, 12th May

5	х	-	
e	9		

TT 4		The state of
Ilsin	σ	Dates
	~	Dates

Teaching Tip

When speaking about special days, we use the following:

Over National Day	is on	the first of October /
Our National Day	takes place on	October the first.

	When writing dates, we often omit "the" and "of", i.e. 1st October / October 1st. Special Days			
		e popular special days celebrate	ed around the world:	
	Month	Special day	Date	
	January	New Year's Day	1st January	
Teaching Tip	March	Women's Day	8th March	
	April	April Fool's Day	1st April	
	May	May Day / Labor Day	1st May	
		Mother's Day	the second Sunday in May	
	_	Children's Day	1st June	
	June	Father's Day	the third Sunday in June	
Suggested Answers	Answers will	vary.		

Section B

1a	
Teaching Tip	Birthday Brainstorm If possible, bring or show some photos of people celebrating birthdays to class. On the board, brainstorm words and things related to birthdays with students. There can be things to do, things to eat or even feelings, emotions, and actions. For example: • play party games, dress up in costumes, sleep over, karaoke • crisps, biscuits, cookics, ice cream • happy, laughing, excited, grateful
Culture Note	Happy Birthday Song "Happy Birthday to You" (also known simply as "Happy Birthday") has been sung across the English-speaking world (and also in many other languages) for over a hundred years. It is widely considered the most recognized song in the English language. The tune is attributed to American sisters Patty and Mildred Hill, and was published in 1893. The song is now in the "public domain", meaning it can be freely used by anyone. The song's structure is: Happy birthday to you, Happy birthday to you, Happy birthday, dear (name), Happy birthday to you!
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

16

Teaching Tip

Predicting the Post Writer

Before reading the passages, ask students to read the names of the post writers. Yu Xiaoming and Judy Clark. Can they predict how they celebrate, who they celebrate with and where they celebrate their birthdays?

Birthday Celebrations

In the West, children look forward to having their birthday party. Particularly when they are younger, they start by giving invitations to their friends, with information about the party, such as which date it is on and where it is. At the bottom it says "R.S.V.P.", which is actually French, and stands for "répondez s'il vous plaît". In English, that means "please reply", encouraging the receiver to reply so the organizer knows how to prepare for the party.



Culture Note

Birthday parties often happen at somebody's house, but it is also very popular to celebrate them in other places such as restaurants, parks, leisure centres, cinemas, and other places where there is some kind of entertainment.

Gifts are sometimes opened in front of guests, but today more and more people do not do this, opening them later privately. After, children often send "thank you" notes or cards to people to thank them for their presents. During the celebrations the lights are turned down and someone brings the birthday cake to the table. It often has small candles on it, often the same number as the age of the person. Everyone sings "Happy Birthday", then the person makes a birthday wish and blows out the candles in one go.

Answer

A. How to celebrate birthdays

Write the Questions

Teaching Tip

Ask students to write four additional questions based on the forum posts and not included in 1d. Encourage them to use different wh-question words. For example:

- Why does Yu Xiaoming like taking photos on his birthday?
- Where does Judy's father mark her height?

	Name	Birthday	Activity
Yu Xiaoming 13th June	eat noodles with eggs, take a photo under the big tree in the village, plant a tree		
THIS WOLD	Judy Clark	28th July	have a party with friends, have a chocolate cake and sing "Happy Birthday", mark height on the door

1d	
Teaching Tip	Third Person Rewrite Ask students to rewrite the posts on the forum in the third person to practise verb forms from the first to third person. For example: Yu Xiaoming's birthday is on 13th June Judy thinks planting a tree for Yu Xiaoming's birthday is a great idea
Suggested Answers	 Xiaoming eats birthday noodles on his birthday because long noodles mean a long life. Xiaoming and his family take a photo together under the big tree in his village every year. Judy likes the idea of planting a tree on his birthday. Judy's mother makes a chocolate cake for her birthday because the chocolate cake is her favourite and they can put candles on it to blow out. Judy should celebrate with her friends and family by going to a different place, such as a theatre or a restaurant.

2a	A Section 1997
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

26

Sample Writing

I think it's a good idea to spend time with your family on your birthday. My birthday is on the 16th March. I usually go to my favourite local restaurant to celebrate it. I do this because I like to sit around a big table with my family and enjoy the food together. But this year, I want to do something meaningful on my birthday. I want to save up some money and donate it to a library. The library can use the money to buy books for children. It will be a nice way to help others and make my birthday even more special.

roject: Celebrate your birthdays together

3a	
Suggested Answers	Answers will vary.

3c	
Teaching Tip	Encourage students to read the questions and think of something that they all can agree would be a good activity.
Sample Report	There are five people in our group. Our birthdays are all in June. We would all like to celebrate our birthdays on the 15th of June. We would like to celebrate with a big picnic at the local park. Of course, everyone can come! We want to have a picnic and play party games. After that we can share a big cake. Every guest can bring something to eat and an idea for a game we can play.

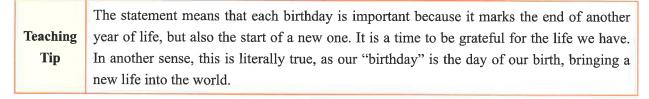
Optional Activity: Party Invitations

Purpose	To practise how to write an invitation card.
Materials Required	Cards, things that can be used to design the card.

Procedure

- 1. Following on from the project activities, students make individual invitations to give out for their joint celebration. Students stay in the same groups as the project is grouped by birthdays.
- 2. Show students an example of a party invitation, as below or online. Elicit from students the information contained:
 - name of the birthday person
 - the date of the birthday party
 - what time the party starts and finishes
 - where the party is
 - what is happening at the party
 - R.S.V.P = who to reply to (phone number, etc.)
- 3. Encourage students to then make individual designs that reflect their personality, or the theme of the party to complete their invitations.
- 4. Have students hand out the invitations to their classmates. Then put students in pairs to ask questions about the invitations they have received. For example:
 - Whose party are you invited to?
 - When / What date is the party?
 - What time does it start and finish?
 - Where is the party?
 - What is happening at the party?

Value Statement: Every birthday is a gift of life.





*Reading Plus

	-	,
P		

Suggested

Answers

- 1. The father says he wouldn't change a thing about his son because he loves him so much.
- 2. Tina's friend is often happy and doesn't worry much about things.
- 3. Amy describes her mother as a beautiful and kind woman, who loves and takes care of Amy every day.
- 4. People write birthday cards to send their best wishes to the person and give them a short message telling them how much they love them and appreciate them.

Sample

Writing

Dear Dad,

You are my hero, my role model, and the man I always look up to and dream to become. Thank you for always being there for me! I know what love is from you.

Happy birthday, Dad!

Your son,

<u>James</u>

附录一: 视频教学建议

Unit 1 You and Me



Pre-watching

- 1. Ask students if they have a friend from another country. Follow up by asking where their friends are from, how old they are and what they like, etc.
- 2. Draw three columns on the board. Write the three countries (Brazil, Canada, Italy) at the top of each column. Ask students: What do you know about these places? Elicit things the students know and write them in the relevant columns. For example:

Brazil:	Canada:	Italy:

3. Encourage them to think of different things such as famous places, people, food, or other cultural elements.

While-watching

- 1. Tell students that they will watch introductions from three children from these countries. Write their names next to their countries. (Brazil: Lucas, Marisa: Canada, Marco: Italy) Then, ask students to listen for answers to the following questions:
 - Who is the oldest? (Marco.)
 - Who has two sisters? (Lucas.)
 - Who likes skiing? (Marisa.)
 - 2. Play the video and then check answers with the students.

Post-watching

1. Draw the following profile grid on the board or make copies to hand out to students. Have students listen again and complete the profile. Play as many times as necessary and write any difficult words on the board.

Name		
Age		
Country		
City		
Favourite sport		
Favourite food		

- 2. Elicit from the students which question to ask for each answer in the profile. For example:
- Name: What is your name?
- City: Which city do you live in?
- 3. Have the students role-play a conversation in pairs, where one student is one of the children from the video, using the profiles to help them. Encourage students to continue the conversation with further questions. (e.g. What language do you speak? What other places / food are famous from your country?)

Unit 2 We're Family!



Pre-watching

Ask students what they will talk about if they want to make a vlog about their family. Elicit from students the key points they may cover.

*** While-watching

- 1. Ask students to listen for the main idea. After playing the video, ask: What is the video about? (Susan and the people in her family.)
 - 2. On the board, write:
 - How many people are in Susan's extended family? (14, including Susan.)
 - Does Susan's sister have a husband? (No.)
 - How many cousins does Susan have? (Two.)
 - 3. Play the video again, and afterwards, check answers.
 - 4. Play the video a third time, stopping after each sentence so students can repeat what they heard.
 - 5. Stop the video at the end so Susan's entire family tree is projected onto the screen.

♦♦♦ Post-watching

340

1. Have students get into pairs and use Susan's family trees to take turns making sentences about

Susan's family.

2. Have fast finishers make additional sentences using the sentence structure they did not use. For example, additional sentences should use "Susan has".

Unit 3 My School



*** Pre-watching

- 1. Show students a map of the world or a globe and elicit the names of the seven continents: Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Europe, and Australia. Ask students to indicate where the continent of Africa is. (If time allows, elicit the location of each continent, finishing with Africa.)
- 2. Write "Kenya" on the board and elicit any facts known, such as the capital city, and also its location in Africa. You can also show the Kenyan flag or other pictures, such as the Maasai people with their distinctive dress and weapons as appear on the flag. Alternatively, you can show students the flag of Kenya and elicit the country. Ask students which continent the country is in, then what other things they know about the country. For example:
 - Capital: Nairobi
 - Flag details: shield and spears of Maasai people, indigenous people of Kenya

While-watching

- 1. Tell students they will watch a video about a special school in Kenya. While they watch the video, write the answer options ONLY on the board. For example:
 - A. girls only
- B. boys only

C. girls and boys

A. 200.

B. 30.

C. 300.

A. Yellow.

B. Blue.

C. Red.

- 2. When the video has finished, ask students what the accompanying questions might be and write them above the answers.
 - 3. Ask students to raise their hands to choose the right answers. For example:
 - (1) The school is for

A. girls only

B. boys only

C. girls and boys

(2) How many students went to the school at first?

A. 200.

B. 30.

C. 300.

(3) What colour is the school uniform?

A. Yellow.

B. Blue.

C. Red.

♦♦♦ Post-watching

- 1. Have the students watch the video again. Put them into an even number of small groups and ask them to write five questions about the video. Help them with question phrasing and give question suggestions if necessary. They can watch the video several times if necessary.
- 2. Have each group ask their questions to another group. The group with the most right answers win. Here are some possible questions and answers:
 - How many classroom buildings can we see in the video? (Two.)
 - How do students know when a class begins? (A student rings a hand bell.)
 - What is Kakenya Ntaiya's title? (Dr.)
 - How is Kakenya described in the video? (Founder and president.)
 - How many classrooms did the school have at first? (One.)
 - Kakenya's goal is to have a school from what to what? (From kindergarten to 12th grade.)

Unit 4 My Favourite Subject



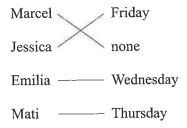
♦♦♦ Pre-watching

Tell students they will watch interviews with students from four countries: Italy, Poland, Vietnam, and Brazil. Ask students these question:

- What do they know about these countries?
- Do they study the same subjects as you do?

While-watching

- 1. Play the video and ask students to finish this matching activity:
 - Match the students with their favourite day at school.



- 2. Play the video again and check the answers.
- 3. Show the following chart to students and ask them to watch the video again. Ask students to take notes about the classes the students have each day.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Emilia					
Mati					
Jessica					
Marcel					

- 4. Play the video again and let students complete the chart.
- 5. Check the answers.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Emilia	science		science, music, English		science
Mati				PE, maths, science	÷
Jessica		art			Art, reading, English, maths
Marcel	maths	maths	maths	maths	

Post-watching

Have students get into pairs and discuss how they feel about the subjects mentioned in the video.

Unit 5 Fun Clubs



Pre-watching

1. Draw three columns on the board and these three countries: South Korea, the UK, Australia.

the UK	Australia
	the UK

2. Ask students to call out any information they know about these countries. Help them by prompting and asking questions. (For example: What is the capital city? What food do they like?)

3. Ask students to think of sports and activities that might be popular in these countries and write them on the board too.

While-watching

- 1. Ask students to watch the video and find out what these words and phrases mean: Duke of Edinburgh, cricket, Taekwondo, volunteering, guitar, etc. Read the words with students first to familiarize them with how the words sound.
 - 2. Have students listen again and complete the table.

Speaker	Country	Club
Park Min-jun	South Korca	Taekwondo
Amy	United Kingdom / England	Duke of Edinburgh Award
Ethan	Australia	cricket

♦♦♦ Post-watching

Ask students to discuss which club they would most like to join from the ones mentioned in the video. They can choose any mentioned or seen in the video, not just the ones chosen. Encourage them to discuss why they think they would like those clubs.



Pre-watching

- 1. Write the words "Beijing Opera" in the middle of the board.
- 2. Tell students they are going to watch a video about Beijing Opera. Ask them what words they think might be mentioned. Elicit answers and write the words on the board. (Possible answers: costume, dance, club, sing, performance, paint, character, fun, practise, colourful, etc.)

♦♦♦ While-watching

- 1. Ask students to watch the video and to listen to see if any of the words on the board are mentioned.
- 2. Elicit answers from the class and circle the words on the board that were mentioned. Ask students if they remember any other words from the video. Elicit answers and add these words to the board as well.
 - 3. Tell students they will watch the video again. Write the following questions on the board:
 - (1) Why does Liu Jiaxin like Beijing Opera?
 - (2) What are the four basic skills of Beijing Opera performance?

- (3) What is different about the five character types?
- (4) What part of the costume can be painful?
- 4. Play the video. Have students discuss the questions in pairs. Elicit answers. (Suggested answers: (1) Liu Jiaxin likes the costumes, the singing, and the performances. (2) Singing, speaking, acting, and martial arts. (3) They each have a different style of face paint. (4) Wrapping up the head.)

Post-watching

Tell students they are going to complete a poster for a Beijing Opera club at their school. Provide them with the following template.

Beijing Opera Club	
Do you like	?
Are you interested in	?
We are looking for new members who can:	
•	
When:	
Where:	

If time allows, have students create full-size posters, adding colour and illustrations.

Unit 6 A Day in the Life



Pre-watching

Show students the start of the video (only up to 00:00:22) that shows the two students, AJ and Lara. Can students name the places behind AJ and Lara? What countries are they from? Using a world map or globe, elicit where those countries are in the world. Ask students what they know about those countries. Can they come up with three facts about each? Can they guess what young students' daily routines might be like in those countries?

♦♦♦ While-watching

1. Have students watch and just write down the numbers in the order they hear them.

7, 8, 6, 7, 9, 8, 9, 9, 4, 5, 6, 9

- 2. Have students watch the video and then match these sentences to either AJ or Lara. Sentences can be written on the board or read to students.
 - I have got 6 lessons each day. (Lara)
 - I'm at school from 9 to 4. (AJ)
 - At 5 o'clock I have dinner with my family. (AJ)
 - I have breakfast first. (AJ)
 - Sometimes we have dinner at my grandma's house. (Lara)
 - I go to bed at 9. (Lara)
 - 3. Have students watch the video again, then read the following sentences. Are they True or False?
 - (1) AJ gets up after Lara does. (True)
 - (2) AJ has dinner after Lara does. (False)
 - (3) Lara goes to school by school bus. (False)
 - (4) Lara's mum helps her with her homework. (True)
 - (5) AJ watches TV if he doesn't have much homework. (True)

Post-watching

Ask students to discuss in pairs the similarities and differences between AJ and Lara. For example: Lara gets up at 7, but AJ gets up at 8 ... They both go to bed at 9 p.m.

Unit 7 Happy Birthday!



Pre-watching

- 1. Pause the video on the first frame, with Salome's face and name. Ask students: What do you know about what she does and where she lives and works?
- 2. Let students look up her profession and encourage them to find the Galapagos Islands on a map or globe. Then ask them to think about the questions: How do you think people celebrate their birthdays in Ecuador? What traditions do they have?

Tell students three options and ask them to choose one they think is correct before watching the video:

- People push the persons face into their birthday cake. √
- The person is lifted in the air by others the same number of times as their age.
- The people pull the earlobes of the person whose birthday it is.

While-watching

- 1. Play the video and let students find out the answer to this question: How old do you think the boy is who blows out the candles in the video? (Probably 10 as there are 10 candles on the cake.)
 - 2. Play the video again. Ask students to number the following phrases in the order they appear:

3	push your face into the cake
1	blow out the candles
5	have a lot of fun
4	share the love
2	bite into the cake

Post-watching

- 1. Ask students to think about the questions and then share with the class.
 - How do students celebrate their birthday?
 - Do they have any unusual traditions in their family or hometown?
- 2. Have students research different birthday traditions around the world using the internet. Have them tell the class about the interesting and unusual traditions. Alternatively, teachers can ask students to find a photo or design a cake for their birthday before displaying them in class.



Pre-watching

1. Write the question "What birthday traditions do you know?" on the board, and two columns: China / Other Countries.

China	Other Countries

- 2. Ask students: What birthday traditions do you know from these places?
- 3. Write their answers on the board in the corresponding column. (Birthday noodles, longevity peaches, birthday cake, Happy Birthday song)
 - 4. Ask students to predict which traditions they might see in the video based on the ideas shared

earlier.

While-watching

- 1. Put students into groups of 3 or 4. Ask them to draw a T-chart: one column to say "Mentioned in class" and the other "Not mentioned in class".
- 2. Explain to students that while watching the video, they should pay attention to the different birthday traditions mentioned. Write the ones we already discussed in class in "Mentioned" column, and the ones not mentioned in class in "Not mentioned" column.
 - 3. After watching the video, give students time to discuss and complete their T-charts.
- 4. Ask the groups to share the most interesting tradition from their "Not mentioned" column, including the answers to the questions: Is it from China or another country? Why is it interesting?

Post-watching

- 1. Begin a class discussion by asking these questions to students:
- What similarities did you notice between different cultures' birthday traditions?
- What differences stood out to you the most?
- How do these traditions reflect the values of each culture?
- Which tradition from the video would you like to incorporate into your own birthday celebration? Why?
- 2. Get students to ask follow-up questions to deepen their understanding of birthday traditions.

附录二: 单元参考译文

Starter Unit 1 Hello!

Section B, 1b

Conversation 1

滕飞: 早上好! 能告诉我你的名字吗?

埃玛: 早上好! 我的名字叫埃玛·米勒。

滕飞: 你的名字怎么拼?

埃玛: E-M-M-A, 埃玛。M-I-L-L-E-R, 米勒。你可以叫我埃玛。

滕飞: 很高兴见到你, 埃玛。我的名字叫滕飞。

埃玛: 我也很高兴见到你, 滕飞。

Conversation 2

海伦: 嗨, 王亚明! 你好吗?

亚明: 嗨,海伦。我很好,谢谢! 你怎么样?

海伦: 很好,谢谢!

亚明:哦,上课铃响了。我们去上课吧。

海伦: 再见!

亚明: 再见!

Starter Unit 2 Keep Tidy!

Section B, 1b

Conversation 1

埃拉:妈妈,我找不到我的新帽子了。

妈妈: 你的新帽子? 它是什么颜色的?

埃拉:红色的。

妈妈: 在你的书包里吗?

埃拉:没有,不在书包里。

妈妈:哦,在这儿。它在你的书桌下面。你需要保持房间整洁。

埃拉:好的。抱歉,妈妈。

Conversation 2

爸爸: 我找不到我的新眼镜了。埃玛, 你看到了吗?

埃玛: 它是什么颜色的, 爸爸?

爸爸: 棕色的。

埃玛: 没有, 我没看到……哦, 等一下! 现在我看到了! 爸爸, 眼镜就在你头上呢!

爸爸:哦,谢谢你,埃玛。

埃玛: 不用谢。

Starter Unit 3 Welcome!

Section B, 1b

瞧! 这是我叔叔的农场。农场很大,绿草如茵。你能看到很多种动物。他(我叔叔)有猪、马、 奶牛、鸭子、绵羊和鸡。我叔叔有多少只鸭子呢?让我数一数。一、二、三、四、五……【四只鸭 子! 啊,不对。看那里! 大树后面还有一只鸭子呢。

你看到那栋房子了吗?那是我叔叔的家。房子很漂亮。你喜欢我叔叔的农场吗?

Unit 1 You and Me

Section B, 1b

结交新朋友

2小时前 保利娜・李

嗨、我叫保利娜・李、今年14岁。我和我的大家庭住在新加坡。我有一只宠物鸟、是一只鹦鹉、 名叫可可,它还会说一点中文呢!我最喜欢的运动是网球。放学后,我经常和朋友们一起打网球。你 想成为我的朋友吗?

3小时前 彼得・布朗

嗨, 你好! 我叫彼得·布朗, 今年13岁。我来自英国伦敦, 现在我和我父母一起住在北京。我最 喜欢的食物是北京烤鸭。我最喜欢的地方是长城。我喜欢音乐,在学校乐队弹吉他。你愿意和我交朋 友吗?

Unit 2 We're Family!

Section B, 1b

嗨,我叫莉莉,来自爱尔兰。我爱我的大家庭。这是我们的一张照片,我就是戴粉色帽子的那个女孩。

左边这位是我爸爸弗雷德,他非常帅气。他经常和我一起打网球。我的小弟弟萨姆坐在他的膝盖上。萨姆今年七岁,他非常喜欢国际象棋。右边是我妈妈简,她美丽又善良。每天晚上她都会给我读故事。中间是我爷爷杰克和奶奶莎拉,他们是我爸爸的父母。他们有一条狗,名叫奥斯卡。

我的爷爷奶奶有三个孙儿:萨姆、堂妹露西和我。他们经常说我是他们最喜欢的孙儿,但我觉得他们对我们每个人都这么说!

Unit 3 My School

Section B. 1b

芙罗拉:

你好!谢谢你的邮件。现在我来回答你的问题——我的新学校很棒!它非常漂亮,有许多现代化的建筑。

教职工楼旁边有一个大运动场。早上,全体学生都会去那里一起做操。真是太棒了!每周一,我们都会在那里举行升旗仪式,以一种特别的方式开始新的一周。

教学楼在运动场的后面。我们大部分时间都在班级教室里度过。教室宽敞又整洁。我们每周都会 换座位。这周,我坐在我最好的朋友韩林旁边。

食堂在运动场对面。那是我最喜欢的地方,因为那里有各种各样的食物。我特别喜欢那里的中国菜,他们做的饺子特别好吃。

你的学校怎么样?

你的,

彼得

Unit 4 My Favourite Subject

Section B, 1b

麦克・戴维斯

10月19日晚上7:09

@musicfan

我是一名加拿大的学生。今年我很忙。我学习数学、音乐、法语、历史、英语、信息技术、科学,还有体育课。我最喜欢的科目是音乐,因为音乐课很有趣,而且我们学唱很多新歌曲。音乐总是让我感到快乐。我的音乐老师非常出色。他让我们演奏各种有趣的乐器。我希望将来能成为一名歌手。你(们)呢?你(们)学习什么(科目)呢?最喜欢哪门课?为什么?

| 附录二: 单元参考译文 | 351

10月19日晚上8:12

吴斌斌

@mathswhiz

我来自中国。这个学期,我学习的科目有语文、历史、数学、英语、体育和信息技术等。我喜欢 所有的科目,但我最喜欢的是数学。我喜欢数学是因为我很擅长数字计算。在课堂上,我们学习如何解 决数学问题,感觉就像变魔术一样,非常好玩。数学在我们的生活中非常有用。我想将来成为一名科 学家。

Unit 5 Fun Clubs

Section B, 1b

我们需要你!

烹饪社

你喜欢中国菜吗?你会烹饪吗?加入我们的烹饪社吧!让我们一起学习制作你最喜欢的中国菜。 麻婆豆腐、牛肉面、饺子、包子……只要你说得出名字!很快你就能为家人做饭了。我们每周三下午 4:30 在 303 教室见面。

如需更多信息,请发邮件至maxh.food@happymail.com,联系人:马晓慧。

读书社

你喜欢读书吗?加入我们的读书社吧!这里不仅有阅读,我们还会表演故事,讨论书籍,并结交新朋友。书籍可以启迪心灵,激发思考。每周二放学后来图书馆,与书结缘吧!

如需更多信息,请发邮件至billwhite@happymail.com,联系人:比尔。

自然社

你热爱大自然吗?你擅长摄影吗?每周日下午,与我们一同踏上远足之旅吧!我们一起观赏鸟 类、拍摄照片、采集植物和昆虫。我们还会参观自然公园,探索你眼皮子底下的野生生物!

如需更多信息,请发邮件至jenny66@happymail.com,联系人:珍妮。

Unit 6 A Day in the Life

Section B, 1b

我叫蒂莫·哈拉,今年十三岁。我和父母住在芬兰的赫尔辛基。现在是十二月。每周二,我通常在七点四十分起床。我经常听新闻或音乐。早餐后,我步行去学校,只需十分钟。学校儿点开始上课。我们班上有十八名学生。每节课四十五分钟,课间有休息时间。上午,我上一节芬兰语课和两节

家政课。之后,我十二点吃午餐。下午的课从十二点半开始,到两点十五分结束。然后,我去冰球俱 乐部。

我通常在四点左右回到家里,此时外面天已经黑了。我经常在六点吃晚餐。之后,我与父母一起 看一个小时的书,这是我日常生活中很重要的组成部分。接下来,我会准备好第二天的书包。我九点 半上床睡觉。

Unit 7 Happy Birthday!

Section B, 1b

生日庆典

作者: 于晓明

时间: 6月8日下午5:07

我的生日是 6 月 13 日。这一天,我总是吃鸡蛋长寿面。长长的面条象征着长寿。每年,我和家 人都会在村里的一棵大树下照张合影。我喜欢拍照,因为照片能让我记住和家人共度的快乐时光。今 年,我想在14岁生日时种一棵小树。我想看着它和我一起成长。你的生日是什么时候?你是如何庆 祝的呢?

作者:朱迪・克拉克 时间:6月9日晚上7:54

为自己的生日种一棵树是个好主意!我的生日是7月28日。我通常会和朋友们一起举办聚会来庆 祝。我妈妈总会给我做我最喜欢的巧克力蛋糕。所有人一起唱"生日快乐"歌,然后我许下愿望,吹 灭蜡烛。接着,我们享用蛋糕,我打开所有的礼物。我爸爸每年在门上标记我的身高,以后再看到这 些标记会感觉很有趣。下一次过生日时,我也想做些不同的事情。你有什么好主意吗?

*Reading Plus

Unit 1

在学校结交新朋友

嗨,大家好! 你们喜欢在学校结交新朋友吗? 喜欢吧? 下面是我的一些建议。

首先,不要害羞! 试着和你所有的同班同学交谈。微笑着说:"你好! 你叫什么名字?"如果你 没有听清楚名字,可以说:"对不起,请你(为我)重复一遍好吗?"然后报上你的名字,说:"很高 兴认识你!"就这么简单!准确记住别人的名字很重要。如果你记错了,他们可能会不开心。

其次,多问问题!问一些关于学校、体育、音乐以及其他方面的问题!一边听,一边想出更多 问题来问。这样,当你的同学停止说话时,你就可以插人另一个问题!但是要记住,在提出好问题之 前, 你得先做一个好的倾听者。

最后,不要忘记分享!告诉你的同学一些你自己的趣事。这样,你的新朋友也能了解你!很快, 你们就会成为最好的朋友!

我希望我的建议对你们有所帮助!现在去结交几个新朋友吧!

Unit 2

姓名中的家族纽带

你好!我叫艾伦,来自英国。在这里,大多数人都有一个前名、中间名和后名。我的全名是艾 伦·卢克·伍德。艾伦是我的前名,卢克是我的中间名,伍德是我的后名。我们也称后名为"家族 名"或"姓氏"。

我的爷爷也有三个名。他的全名是乔治・查尔斯・伍德。我爸爸的名字和我爷爷的一模一样。你 能猜到原因吗?这样做是表示对我爷爷的敬意。人们叫我爸爸小乔治·查尔斯·伍德,叫我爷爷老乔 治・査尔斯・伍德。

我妈妈的名字原先是琳达・格兰特, 但她现在的名字是琳达・伍德。这是为什么呢? 因为在英 国、妇女通常会将自己的姓氏改为丈夫的姓氏。但是,有时候,女性的姓氏和男性的姓氏连在一起。 这样,两个姓氏都可以延续下去。

姓名是家族纽带的体现。你觉得呢?

Unit 3

我的漂流学校

我叫萨迪亚·哈顿,来自孟加拉国。在这里,雨季时,有些道路难以步行。那我怎么上学呢?很 简单! 学校会来到我身边! 我在一所"漂流学校"上学。

我的漂流学校集"校车"和教室于一体。每天一大早,船会来接我。我们的教室也在船上。河上 同时有好几条船。每条船上有一位老师和一个班级。这位老师教我们所有的科目。

船又长又宽。我们坐在木制的课桌旁。大大的窗户带来充足的阳光和新鲜的空气。前面有一块黑 板。旁边有一台电脑、电力来自太阳。放学时、船会载我回家。

我在学校里学到了很多东西,也过得很开心。我爱我的漂流学校!

Unit 4

表演合唱团

跟着欢快的歌曲节奏,学习唱歌跳舞吧。在本学期末,以团队形式举行一次大型表演。这也是结 交新朋友的好方法!

年龄: 不限

地点:音乐工作室

时间:每周三和周五,下午4:00-5:00

所需物品:无

简易木工

你的动手能力强吗?快来学习如何制作(一张)桌子、(一把)椅子,或者(一个)鸟屋吧。在这门课上,你将学习如何安全地使用各种工具。

年龄:14岁以上

地点: 4号教室

时间:每周一,下午3:30—4:30

所需物品:安全眼镜

播客人门

播客是培养你的演讲和电脑技能的绝佳方式。来学习如何制作简短而有趣的视频吧。主题由你选择!

年龄: 不限

地点:信息技术室

时间:每周五,下午4:30-5:15

所需物品: USB 闪存盘

瑜伽与你:

你想放松却不知道方法?那就和我们一起上瑜伽课吧。学会如何像一棵树、一座山那样站立,甚至更多!瑜伽让你睡得更香,并能塑造好身材。

年龄: 不限

地点: 健身房

时间: 每周四, 中午 12:00 一下午 12:45

所需物品: 毛巾和垫子

Unit 5

爱丽丝的视频博客: 我的话剧社

大家好! 我叫爱丽丝。欢迎来到我的话剧社!

这是我们的话剧老师福特先生。福特先生非常和蔼,他总是有很多好想法。他对我帮助很大!

这是我在话剧社的朋友们。我们总是过得很开心!练习结束后,我们经常一起吃比萨。看看这张 照片! 嗯……太好吃了!

我的父母经常来看我们的演出。他们会把演出录下来,之后我们会在电视上观看。这是我们上次 演出的片段。金色头发的那个就是我!我看起来很可爱,对吧?

在话剧社里,我得记住很多台词,这会很难,但是这能让我更多地了解剧目。我通常很害羞,但 是当我参加演出的时候,就不再感到胆怯了。现在,我敢在很多人面前讲话,甚至唱歌。

我爱我的话剧社——它永远不会让我感到无聊。

Unit 6

雯雯的妈妈(中国)

我妈妈是一家医院的护士。她上夜班时,我们晚上六点半一起吃晚饭,然后她就去上班了。她从 十点开始工作。她每三个小时杳看一次病人。她第二天早上八点下班, 九点前回到家里。然后, 她十 点半上床睡觉休息。她工作非常忙碌,但一有空闲时间,我们就会一起去公园逛逛,享受快乐时光。

科林的爸爸(英国)

我爸爸是一名垃圾清理工。我通常早上看不到他,因为他早上四点就起床了。他吃点东西,然 后就去上班了。五点之前,他已经到达第一户人家那里,把垃圾桶里的垃圾倒进卡车里。(他)在下 午三点左右结束工作。接着,他四点半来学校接我,我们回家路上聊个不停。晚饭是在六点。晚饭 后,他看一会儿电视。然后,他八点半就早早上床睡觉去了。晚上我们会尽量保持安静,这样他才能 睡好。

Unit 7

亲爱的儿子:

看着你长大真是太美好了。我喜欢每大看到你的笑容!谢谢你给这个家带来了欢乐。有时候,你 把音乐放得很大声,让我非常恼火,但我从来不愿意改变你的任何一点。我非常爱你。生日快乐!

爱你的,

爸爸

亲爱的佩妮:

你总是笑容满面,无忧无虑——我的朋友所期望的一切你都有。永远不要改变!保持你现在的样子就很棒,我亲爱的朋友。永远记住,如果你跌倒了,我会扶你起来。生日快乐,天天开心!

你永远的挚友,

蒂娜

致我的好妈妈:

祝您生日快乐! 非常感谢您每天照顾着我,给我关爱。您是一位美丽而善良的女性。我长大后想要成为您这样的人。

深爱您的女儿,

艾米

| 附录二: 单元参考译文 | 357

